



Lexmark<sup>TM</sup>

# **CX532, CX635, XC2335, XC2342 MFPs**

---

User's Guide

# Contents

|                                                               |            |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| <b>Safety information .....</b>                               | <b>6</b>   |
| Conventions .....                                             | 6          |
| Product statements .....                                      | 6          |
| <b>Learn about the printer .....</b>                          | <b>11</b>  |
| Finding information about the printer .....                   | 11         |
| Finding the printer serial number .....                       | 12         |
| Printer configurations .....                                  | 13         |
| Using the control panel .....                                 | 15         |
| Colors of the indicator light.....                            | 15         |
| Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass .....   | 16         |
| Selecting paper .....                                         | 16         |
| <b>Set up, install, and configure .....</b>                   | <b>28</b>  |
| Selecting a location for the printer.....                     | 28         |
| Attaching cables .....                                        | 29         |
| Setting up and using the home screen applications.....        | 31         |
| Setting up and using the accessibility features .....         | 38         |
| Setting up the printer to fax .....                           | 46         |
| Configuring the email SMTP settings.....                      | 54         |
| Loading paper and specialty media .....                       | 66         |
| Installing and updating software, drivers, and firmware ..... | 79         |
| Installing hardware options .....                             | 85         |
| Networking .....                                              | 98         |
| <b>Secure the printer.....</b>                                | <b>102</b> |
| Locating the security slot.....                               | 102        |
| Erasing printer memory .....                                  | 102        |
| Erasing printer storage drive .....                           | 102        |
| Restoring factory default settings.....                       | 103        |
| Statement of Volatility.....                                  | 104        |
| <b>Print .....</b>                                            | <b>105</b> |
| Printing from a computer .....                                | 105        |
| Printing from a mobile device .....                           | 106        |
| Printing from a flash drive .....                             | 107        |

|                                                 |            |
|-------------------------------------------------|------------|
| Supported flash drives and file types .....     | 109        |
| Configuring confidential jobs .....             | 109        |
| Printing confidential and other held jobs ..... | 110        |
| Printing a font sample list .....               | 111        |
| Printing a directory list .....                 | 111        |
| Placing separator sheets in print jobs .....    | 111        |
| Canceling a print job .....                     | 111        |
| Adjusting toner darkness.....                   | 111        |
| <b>Copy .....</b>                               | <b>112</b> |
| Making copies .....                             | 112        |
| Copying photos .....                            | 112        |
| Copying on letterhead .....                     | 112        |
| Copying on both sides of the paper .....        | 112        |
| Reducing or enlarging copies.....               | 113        |
| Collating copies .....                          | 113        |
| Placing separator sheets between copies.....    | 113        |
| Copying multiple pages onto a single sheet..... | 113        |
| Copying cards .....                             | 114        |
| Creating a copy shortcut .....                  | 114        |
| <b>Email .....</b>                              | <b>115</b> |
| Scanning to email.....                          | 115        |
| Creating an email shortcut .....                | 115        |
| <b>Fax .....</b>                                | <b>116</b> |
| Sending a fax .....                             | 116        |
| Scheduling a fax.....                           | 116        |
| Creating a fax destination shortcut.....        | 116        |
| Changing the fax resolution .....               | 117        |
| Adjusting the fax darkness .....                | 117        |
| Printing a fax log .....                        | 117        |
| Blocking junk faxes .....                       | 117        |
| Holding faxes .....                             | 117        |
| Forwarding a fax .....                          | 118        |
| <b>Scan .....</b>                               | <b>119</b> |
| Scanning to a computer .....                    | 119        |
| Scanning to an FTP server .....                 | 121        |
| Creating an FTP shortcut .....                  | 121        |

|                                                 |            |
|-------------------------------------------------|------------|
| Scanning to a network folder.....               | 121        |
| Configuring a network folder destination.....   | 121        |
| Creating a network folder shortcut .....        | 122        |
| Scanning to a flash drive.....                  | 122        |
| <b>Use printer menus.....</b>                   | <b>124</b> |
| Menu map .....                                  | 124        |
| Device .....                                    | 125        |
| Print.....                                      | 143        |
| Paper.....                                      | 155        |
| Copy .....                                      | 159        |
| Fax .....                                       | 163        |
| Email .....                                     | 181        |
| FTP.....                                        | 188        |
| USB Drive .....                                 | 193        |
| Network/Ports.....                              | 199        |
| Security .....                                  | 218        |
| Cloud Services .....                            | 226        |
| Reports.....                                    | 226        |
| Troubleshooting.....                            | 228        |
| Forms Merge.....                                | 228        |
| Printing the Menu Settings Page.....            | 230        |
| <b>Maintain the printer .....</b>               | <b>231</b> |
| Checking the status of parts and supplies ..... | 231        |
| Configuring supply notifications .....          | 231        |
| Setting up email alerts.....                    | 231        |
| Printing printer reports and logs .....         | 232        |
| Ordering parts and supplies .....               | 233        |
| Replacing parts and supplies .....              | 237        |
| Cleaning printer parts.....                     | 273        |
| Saving energy and paper .....                   | 280        |
| Moving the printer to another location.....     | 281        |
| <b>Troubleshoot a problem .....</b>             | <b>283</b> |
| Print quality problems.....                     | 283        |
| Printer error codes .....                       | 284        |
| Printing problems .....                         | 295        |
| The printer is not responding .....             | 323        |

|                                                                    |            |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| Unable to read flash drive .....                                   | 324        |
| Enabling the USB port.....                                         | 324        |
| Indicator light is alternating between blue and blinking red ..... | 324        |
| Clearing jams .....                                                | 324        |
| Network connection problems.....                                   | 334        |
| Hardware options problems .....                                    | 336        |
| Issues with supplies .....                                         | 337        |
| Paper feed problems.....                                           | 339        |
| Emailing problems.....                                             | 340        |
| Faxing problems.....                                               | 341        |
| Scanning problems .....                                            | 343        |
| Color quality problems .....                                       | 348        |
| Contacting customer support .....                                  | 351        |
| <b>Recycle and dispose.....</b>                                    | <b>352</b> |
| Recycling Lexmark products .....                                   | 352        |
| Recycling Lexmark packaging .....                                  | 352        |
| <b>Notices .....</b>                                               | <b>353</b> |
| Product information .....                                          | 353        |
| Edition and legal notices .....                                    | 353        |
| Specifications .....                                               | 357        |
| Environmental and sustainability notices .....                     | 360        |
| Notices for fax products .....                                     | 364        |
| Notices for wireless products .....                                | 367        |
| Class A device notices .....                                       | 370        |
| Class B device notices .....                                       | 372        |
| Other regulatory notices.....                                      | 374        |

# Safety information

## Conventions

**Note:** A *note* identifies information that could help you.

**Warning:** A *warning* identifies something that could damage the product hardware or software.

**WARNING (in full capitals):** A *WARNING* indicates a risk of death or serious injury if not avoided.

**CAUTION:** A *caution* indicates a potentially hazardous situation that could injure you.

Different types of caution statements include:



**CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY**  
Indicates a risk of injury.



**CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD**  
Indicates a risk of electrical shock.



**CAUTION—HOT SURFACE**  
Indicates a risk of burn if touched.



**CAUTION—TIPPING HAZARD**  
Indicates a crush hazard.



**CAUTION—PINCH HAZARD**  
Indicates a risk of being caught between moving parts.

## Product statements



**CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY**  
To avoid the risk of fire or electrical shock, connect the power cord to an appropriately rated and properly grounded electrical outlet that is near the product and easily accessible.

**CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY**

To avoid the risk of fire or electrical shock, use only the power cord provided with this product or the manufacturer's authorized replacement.

**CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY**

Do not use this product with extension cords, multioutlet power strips, multioutlet extenders, or UPS devices. The power capacity of these types of accessories can be easily overloaded by a laser printer and may result in a risk of fire, property damage, or poor printer performance.

**CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY**

Only a Lexmark Inline Surge Protector that is properly connected between the printer and the power cord provided with the printer may be used with this product. The use of non-Lexmark surge protection devices may result in a risk of fire, property damage, or poor printer performance.

**CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY**

To reduce the risk of fire, use only a 26 AWG or larger telecommunications (RJ-11) cord when connecting this product to the public switched telephone network. For users in Australia, the cord must be approved by the Australian Communications and Media Authority.

**CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD**

To avoid the risk of electrical shock, do not place or use this product near water or wet locations.

**CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD**

To avoid the risk of electrical shock, do not set up this product or make any electrical or cabling connections, such as the power cord, fax feature, or telephone, during a lightning storm.

**CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY**

Do not cut, twist, bind, crush, or place heavy objects on the power cord. Do not subject the power cord to abrasion or stress. Do not pinch the power cord between objects such as furniture and walls. If any of these things happen, a risk of fire or electrical shock results. Inspect the power cord regularly for signs of such problems. Remove the power cord from the electrical outlet before inspecting it.

**CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD**

To avoid the risk of electrical shock, make sure that all external connections (such as Ethernet and telephone system connections) are properly installed in their marked plug-in ports.

**CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD**

To avoid the risk of electrical shock, if you are accessing the controller board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

**CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD**

To avoid the risk of electrical shock, do not use the fax feature during a lightning storm.

**CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD**

To avoid the risk of electrical shock when cleaning the exterior of the printer, unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet and disconnect all cables from the printer before proceeding.

**CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY**

If the printer weight is greater than 20 kg (44 lb), then it may require two or more people to lift it safely.

**CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY**

When moving the printer, follow these guidelines to avoid personal injury or printer damage:

- Make sure that all doors and trays are closed.
- Turn off the printer, and then unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet.
- Disconnect all cords and cables from the printer.
- If the printer has separate floor-standing optional trays or output options attached to it, then disconnect them before moving the printer.
- If the printer has a caster base, then carefully roll it to the new location. Use caution when passing over thresholds and breaks in flooring.
- If the printer does not have a caster base but is configured with optional trays or output options, then remove the output options and lift the printer off the trays. Do not try to lift the printer and any options at the same time.
- Always use the handholds on the printer to lift it.
- Any cart used to move the printer must have a surface able to support the full footprint of the printer.
- Any cart used to move the hardware options must have a surface able to support the dimensions of the options.



- Keep the printer in an upright position.
- Avoid severe jarring movements.
- Make sure that your fingers are not under the printer when you set it down.
- Make sure that there is adequate clearance around the printer.

**CAUTION—TIPPING HAZARD**

Installing one or more options on your printer or MFP may require a caster base, furniture, or other feature to prevent instability causing possible injury. For more information on supported configurations, see [www.lexmark.com/multifunctionprinters](http://www.lexmark.com/multifunctionprinters).

**CAUTION—TIPPING HAZARD**

To reduce the risk of equipment instability, load each tray separately. Keep all other trays closed until needed.

**CAUTION—HOT SURFACE**

The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching it.

**CAUTION—PINCH HAZARD**

To avoid the risk of a pinch injury, use caution in areas marked with this label. Pinch injuries may occur around moving parts, such as gears, doors, trays, and covers.

**CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY**

This product uses a laser. Use of controls or adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified in the *User's Guide* may result in hazardous radiation exposure.

**CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY**

The lithium battery in this product is not intended to be replaced. There is a danger of explosion if a lithium battery is incorrectly replaced. Do not recharge, disassemble, or incinerate a lithium battery. Discard used lithium batteries according to the manufacturer's instructions and local regulations.



# WARNING

- **INGESTION HAZARD:** This product contains a button cell or coin battery.
- **DEATH** or serious injury can occur if ingested.
- A swallowed button cell or coin battery can cause **Internal Chemical Burns** in as little as **2 hours**.
- **KEEP** new and used batteries **OUT OF REACH of CHILDREN**.
- **Seek immediate medical attention** if a battery is suspected to be swallowed or inserted inside any part of the body.



Remove and immediately recycle or dispose of used batteries according to local regulations and keep away from children. Do not dispose of batteries in household trash or incinerate. Even used batteries may cause severe injury or death. Call a local poison control center for treatment information.

Battery type: CR6821

Nominal battery voltage: 3V

Do not force discharge, recharge, disassemble, heat above 60°C (140°F), or incinerate. Doing so may result in injury due to venting, leakage, or explosion resulting in chemical burns.

This product is designed, tested, and approved to meet strict global safety standards with the use of specific manufacturer's components. The safety features of some parts may not always be obvious. The manufacturer is not responsible for the use of other replacement parts.

Refer service or repairs, other than those described in the user documentation, to a service representative.

**SAVE THESE INSTRUCTIONS.**

# Learn about the printer

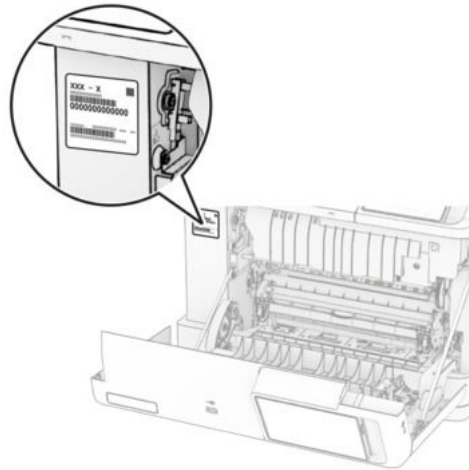
## Finding information about the printer

| What are you looking for?                                                                                                                          | Find it here                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Initial setup instructions                                                                                                                         | See the setup documentation that came with the printer.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Printer software</li> <li>• Print or fax driver</li> <li>• Printer firmware</li> <li>• Utility</li> </ul> | Go to <a href="http://www.lexmark.com/downloads">www.lexmark.com/downloads</a> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Interactive <i>User's Guide</i>                                                                                                                    | Go to <a href="https://support.lexmark.com">https://support.lexmark.com</a> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| How-to videos                                                                                                                                      | Go to <a href="https://infoserve.lexmark.com/ids/idv">https://infoserve.lexmark.com/ids/idv</a> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Help information for using the printer software.                                                                                                   | <p>Help for Microsoft Windows or Macintosh operating systems—Open a printer software program or application, and then click <b>Help</b>.</p> <p> Click  to view context-sensitive information.</p> <div> <p><b>Notes</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Help is automatically installed with the printer software.</li> <li>• Depending on the operating system, the printer software is either in the printer program folder or on the desktop.</li> </ul> </div> |

| What are you looking for?                                                                                                                                                     | Find it here                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Documentation</li> <li>• Live chat support</li> <li>• Email support</li> <li>• Voice support</li> </ul>                              | <p>Go to <a href="https://support.lexmark.com">https://support.lexmark.com</a>.</p> <div> <p><b>Note:</b> Select your country or region, and then select your product to view the appropriate support site.</p> </div> <p>Support contact information for your country or region can be found on the website or on the printed warranty that came with the printer.</p> <p>Have the following information ready when you contact customer support:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Place and date of purchase</li> <li>• Machine type and serial number</li> </ul> <p>For more information, see <a href="#">Finding the printer serial number on page 12</a>.</p> |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Safety information</li> <li>• Regulatory information</li> <li>• Warranty information</li> <li>• Environmental information</li> </ul> | <p>Warranty information varies by country or region:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>In the U.S.</b>—See the Statement of Limited Warranty included with the printer, or go to <a href="https://support.lexmark.com">https://support.lexmark.com</a>.</li> <li>• <b>In other countries and regions</b>—See the printed warranty that came with the printer.</li> </ul> <p><i>Product Information Guide</i>—See the documentation that came with the printer or go to <a href="https://support.lexmark.com">https://support.lexmark.com</a>.</p>                                                                                                                |
| Information on Lexmark digital passport                                                                                                                                       | Go to <a href="https://csr.lexmark.com/digital-passport.php">https://csr.lexmark.com/digital-passport.php</a> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |

## Finding the printer serial number

1. Open door A.
2. Locate the serial number.



## Printer configurations



### **CAUTION—TIPPING HAZARD**

Installing one or more options on your printer or MFP may require a caster base, furniture, or other feature to prevent instability causing possible injury. For more information on supported configurations, see [www.lexmark.com/multifunctionprinters](http://www.lexmark.com/multifunctionprinters).



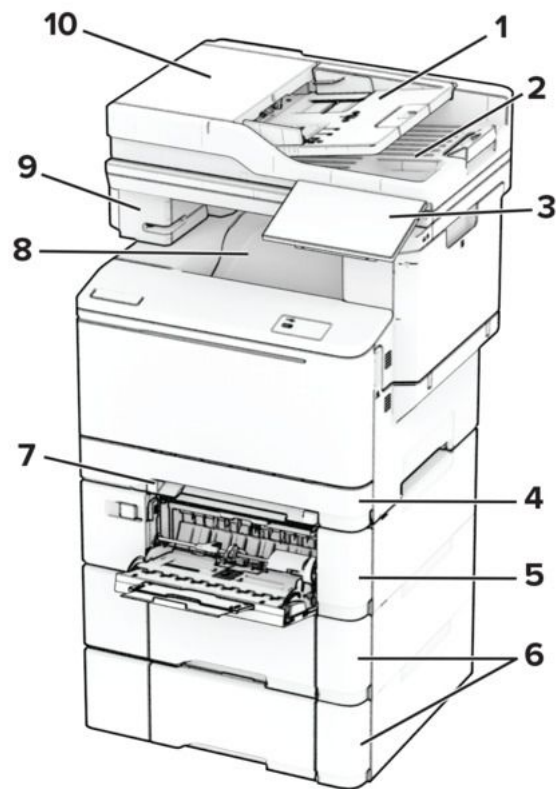
### **CAUTION—TIPPING HAZARD**

To reduce the risk of equipment instability, load each tray separately. Keep all other trays closed until needed.

You can configure your printer by adding any of the following options:

- A 650-sheet duo tray
- A 650-sheet duo tray and up to two 550-sheet trays
- Up to three 550-sheet trays

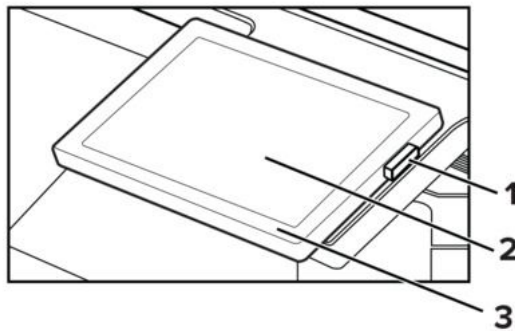
For more information, see [Installing optional trays on page 86](#).



|    |                                 |
|----|---------------------------------|
| 1  | ADF tray                        |
| 2  | ADF bin                         |
| 3  | Control panel                   |
| 4  | Standard 250-sheet tray         |
| 5  | Optional 650-sheet duo tray     |
| 6  | Optional 550-sheet trays        |
| 7  | Manual feeder                   |
| 8  | Standard bin                    |
| 9  | Convenience stapler             |
| 10 | Automatic document feeder (ADF) |

**Note:** The tray is composed of a 550-sheet tray and a 100-sheet multipurpose feeder.

## Using the control panel



|   | Control panel part | Function                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|---|--------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Power button       | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Turn on or turn off the printer.</li> </ul> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p><b>Note:</b> To turn off the printer, press and hold the power button for five seconds.</p> </div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Set the printer to sleep mode.</li> <li>• Wake the printer from sleep or hibernate mode.</li> </ul> |
| 2 | Display            | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• View printer messages and supply status.</li> <li>• Set up and operate the printer.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| 3 | Indicator light    | Check the status of the printer.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |

## Colors of the indicator light

| Color of the indicator light | Printer status                                  |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| Off                          | The printer is off.                             |
| Solid blue                   | The printer is ready.                           |
| Blinking blue                | The printer is printing or processing data.     |
| Blinking red                 | The printer requires user intervention.         |
| Solid amber                  | The printer is in sleep mode.                   |
| Blinking amber               | The printer is in deep sleep or hibernate mode. |

| Color of the indicator light              | Printer status                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|-------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Alternating between blue and blinking red | <p>The printer is not responding or showing anything on the display.</p> <p>For more information, see <a href="#">Indicator light is alternating between blue and blinking red on page 324</a>.</p> |

## Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass

| Automatic document feeder (ADF)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Scanner glass                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Use the ADF for multiple-page or two-sided documents.</li><li>• Load an original document faceup. For multiple-page documents, make sure to align the leading edge before loading.</li><li>• Make sure to adjust the ADF guides to match the width of the paper that you are loading.</li></ul> |  <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Use the scanner glass for single-page documents, book pages, small items (such as postcards or photos), transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings).</li><li>• Place the document facedown in the corner with the arrow.</li></ul> |

## Selecting paper

### Paper guidelines

Use the appropriate paper to prevent jams and help ensure trouble-free printing.

- Always use new, undamaged paper.
- Before loading paper, know the recommended printable side of the paper. This information is usually indicated on the paper package.
- Do not use paper that has been cut or trimmed by hand.
- Do not mix paper sizes, types, or weights in the same tray.



- Do not use coated papers unless they are specifically designed for electrophotographic printing.

For more information, see *Paper and Specialty Media Guide* at <https://support.lexmark.com>.

## Paper characteristics

The following paper characteristics affect print quality and reliability. Consider these factors before printing on them.

### Weight

Trays can feed paper of varying weights. Paper lighter than 60 g/m<sup>2</sup> (16 lb-bond) may not be stiff enough to feed properly, and may cause jams. For more information, see the **Supported paper weights** topic.

### Curl

Curl is the tendency for paper to curl at its edges. Excessive curl can cause paper feeding problems. Curl can occur after the paper passes through the printer, where it is exposed to high temperatures. Storing paper unwrapped in hot, humid, cold, or dry conditions can contribute to paper curling before printing and can cause feeding problems.

### Smoothness

Paper smoothness directly affects print quality. If paper is too rough, toner cannot fuse to it properly. If paper is too smooth, it can cause paper feeding or print quality issues. We recommend the use of paper with 50 Sheffield points.

### Moisture content

The amount of moisture in paper affects both print quality and the printer ability to feed the paper correctly. Leave paper in its original wrapper until you use it. Exposure of paper to moisture changes can degrade its performance.

Before printing, store paper in its original wrapper for 24 to 48 hours. The environment in which the paper is stored must be the same as the printer. Extend the time several days if the storage or transportation environment is very different from the printer environment. Thick paper may also require a longer conditioning period.

### Grain direction

Grain refers to the alignment of the paper fibers in a sheet of paper. Grain is either *grain long* which runs the length of the paper, or *grain short* which runs the width of the paper. For recommended grain direction, see the **Supported paper weights** topic.

### Fiber content

Most high-quality xerographic paper is made from 100 percent chemically treated pulped wood. This content provides the paper with a high degree of stability, resulting in fewer paper feeding problems and better print quality. Paper containing fibers such as cotton can negatively affect paper handling.

### Unacceptable paper

The following paper types are not recommended for use with the printer:

- Chemically treated papers that are used to make copies without carbon paper. They are also known as carbonless papers, carbonless copy paper (CCP), or no carbon required (NCR) paper.
- Preprinted papers with chemicals that may contaminate the printer.
- Preprinted papers that can be affected by the temperature in the printer fuser.
- Preprinted papers that require a registration (the precise print location on the page) greater than  $\pm 2.3$  mm ( $\pm 0.09$  in.). For example, optical character recognition (OCR) forms.

Sometimes, registration can be adjusted with a software app to print successfully on these forms.

- Coated papers (erasable bond), synthetic papers, or thermal papers.
- Rough-edged, rough or heavily textured surface papers, or curled papers.
- Papers that fail EN12281:2002 (European).
- Paper weighing less than 60 g/m<sup>2</sup> (16 lb-bond).
- Multiple-part forms or documents.

### Storing paper

Use these paper storage guidelines to help avoid jams and uneven print quality:

- Store paper in its original wrapper in the same environment as the printer for 24 to 48 hours before printing.
- Extend the time several days if the storage or transportation environment is very different from the printer environment. Thick paper may also require a longer conditioning period.
- For best results, store paper where the temperature is 21°C (70°F) and the relative humidity is 40 percent.
- Most label manufacturers recommend printing in a temperature range of 18–24°C (65–75°F) with relative humidity between 40 and 60 percent.
- Store paper in cartons, on a pallet or shelf, rather than on the floor.
- Store individual packages on a flat surface.
- Do not store anything on top of individual paper packages.
- Take paper out of the carton or wrapper only when you are ready to load it in the printer. The carton and wrapper help keep the paper clean, dry, and flat.

### Using recycled paper

Lexmark works to reduce the environmental impact of paper by providing customers choices when it comes to printing. One way we achieve this is by testing products to ensure recycled paper may be used—specifically, papers made with 30%, 50%, and 100% post-consumer recycled content. Our expectation is that recycled papers perform as well

as virgin paper in our printers. While no official standard exists for office equipment use of paper, Lexmark uses European Standard EN 12281 as a minimum properties standard. To ensure breadth of testing, test paper includes 100% recycled papers from North America, Europe, and Asia, and tests are conducted at 8–80% relative humidity. Testing includes duplex printing. Office paper using renewable, recycled, or chlorine-free content may all be used.

## Selecting preprinted forms and letterhead

- Use grain long paper.
- Use only forms and letterhead printed using an offset lithographic or engraved printing process.
- Avoid paper with rough or heavily textured surfaces.
- Use inks that are not affected by the resin in toner. Inks that are oxidation-set or oil-based generally meet these requirements; latex inks might not.
- Print samples on preprinted forms and letterheads considered for use before buying large quantities. This action determines whether the ink in the preprinted form or letterhead affects print quality.
- When in doubt, contact your paper supplier.
- When printing on letterhead, load the paper in the proper orientation for your printer. For more information, see the *Paper and Specialty Media Guide*.

## Supported paper sizes

| Paper size and dimension                                                              | Standard 250-sheet tray | Manual feeder | Optional 650-sheet duo tray |                     | Optional 550-sheet tray | Two-sided printing |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|---------------|-----------------------------|---------------------|-------------------------|--------------------|
|                                                                                       |                         |               | 550-sheet tray              | Multipurpose feeder |                         |                    |
| <b>A4</b><br>210 x 297 mm<br>(8.27 x 11.7 in.)                                        | ✓                       | ✓             | ✓                           | ✓                   | ✓                       | ✓                  |
| <b>A5 Portrait (short-edge feed)<sup>2</sup></b><br>148 x 210 mm<br>(5.83 x 8.27 in.) | X                       | X             | ✓                           | X                   | ✓                       | X                  |

| Paper size and dimension                                                                | Standard 250-sheet tray | Manual feeder | Optional 650-sheet duo tray |                     | Optional 550-sheet tray | Two-sided printing |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|---------------|-----------------------------|---------------------|-------------------------|--------------------|
|                                                                                         |                         |               | 550-sheet tray              | Multipurpose feeder |                         |                    |
| <b>A5 Landscape (long-edge feed)</b> <sup>1</sup><br><br>210 x 148 mm (8.27 x 5.83 in.) | ✓                       | ✓             | X                           | X                   | X                       | X                  |
| <b>A6</b><br><br>105 x 148 mm (4.13 x 5.83 in.)                                         | ✓                       | ✓             | X                           | ✓                   | X                       | X                  |
| <b>1/3 A4</b><br><br>95 x 210 mm (3.7 x 8.3 in.)                                        | ✓                       | ✓             | X                           | ✓                   | X                       | X                  |
| <b>JIS B5</b><br><br>182 x 257 mm (7.17 x 10.1 in.)                                     | ✓                       | ✓             | ✓                           | ✓                   | ✓                       | X                  |
| <b>Letter</b><br><br>215.9 x 279.4 mm (8.5 x 11 in.)                                    | ✓                       | ✓             | ✓                           | ✓                   | ✓                       | ✓                  |
| <b>Legal</b><br><br>215.9 x 355.6 mm (8.5 x 14 in.)                                     | ✓                       | ✓             | ✓                           | ✓                   | ✓                       | ✓                  |
| <b>Executive</b><br><br>184.2 x 266.7 mm (7.25 x 10.5 in.)                              | ✓                       | ✓             | ✓                           | ✓                   | ✓                       | X                  |

| Paper size and dimension                                                                              | Standard 250-sheet tray | Manual feeder | Optional 650-sheet duo tray |                     | Optional 550-sheet tray | Two-sided printing |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|---------------|-----------------------------|---------------------|-------------------------|--------------------|
|                                                                                                       |                         |               | 550-sheet tray              | Multipurpose feeder |                         |                    |
| <b>Oficio (Mexico)</b><br>215.9 x 340.4 mm (8.5 x 13.4 in.)                                           | ✓                       | ✓             | ✓                           | ✓                   | ✓                       | ✓                  |
| <b>Folio</b><br>215.9 x 330.2 mm (8.5 x 13 in.)                                                       | ✓                       | ✓             | ✓                           | ✓                   | ✓                       | ✓                  |
| <b>Statement</b><br>139.7 x 215.9 mm (5.5 x 8.5 in.)                                                  | ✓                       | ✓             | X                           | ✓                   | X                       | X                  |
| <b>Hagaki</b><br>100 x 148 mm (3.94 x 5.83 in.)                                                       | ✓                       | ✓             | X                           | ✓                   | X                       | X                  |
| <b>Universal<sup>3,4</sup></b><br>98.4 x 148 mm to 215.9 x 355.6 mm (3.87 x 5.83 in. to 8.5 x 14 in.) | ✓                       | ✓             | X                           | ✓                   | X                       | X                  |
| <b>Universal<sup>3,4</sup></b><br>76.2 x 127 mm to 215.9 x 355.6 mm (3 x 5 in. to 8.5 x 14 in.)       | X                       | ✓             | X                           | ✓                   | X                       | X                  |

| Paper size and dimension                                                                                    | Standard 250-sheet tray | Manual feeder | Optional 650-sheet duo tray |                     | Optional 550-sheet tray | Two-sided printing |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|---------------|-----------------------------|---------------------|-------------------------|--------------------|
|                                                                                                             |                         |               | 550-sheet tray              | Multipurpose feeder |                         |                    |
| <b>Universal<sup>3,4</sup></b><br><br>148 x 210 mm to 215.9 x 355.6 mm<br>(5.83 x 8.27 in. to 8.5 x 14 in.) | ✓                       | ✓             | ✓                           | ✓                   | ✓                       | X                  |
| <b>Universal<sup>3,4</sup></b><br><br>210 x 250 mm to 215.9 x 355.6 mm<br>(8.27 x 9.84 in. to 8.5 x 14 in.) | ✓                       | ✓             | ✓                           | ✓                   | ✓                       | ✓                  |
| <b>7 3/4 Envelope</b><br><br>98.4 x 190.5 mm<br>(3.875 x 7.5 in.)                                           | ✓                       | ✓             | X                           | ✓                   | X                       | X                  |
| <b>9 Envelope</b><br><br>98.4 x 225.4 mm<br>(3.875 x 8.9 in.)                                               | ✓                       | ✓             | X                           | ✓                   | X                       | X                  |
| <b>10 Envelope</b><br><br>104.8 x 241.3 mm<br>(4.12 x 9.5 in.)                                              | ✓                       | ✓             | X                           | ✓                   | X                       | X                  |

| Paper size and dimension                                                                                       | Standard 250-sheet tray | Manual feeder | Optional 650-sheet duo tray |                     | Optional 550-sheet tray | Two-sided printing |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|---------------|-----------------------------|---------------------|-------------------------|--------------------|
|                                                                                                                |                         |               | 550-sheet tray              | Multipurpose feeder |                         |                    |
| <b>DL Envelope</b><br><br>110 x 220 mm<br>(4.33 x 8.66 in.)                                                    | ✓                       | ✓             | X                           | ✓                   | X                       | X                  |
| <b>C5 Envelope</b><br><br>162 x 229 mm<br>(6.38 x 9.01 in.)                                                    | ✓                       | ✓             | X                           | ✓                   | X                       | X                  |
| <b>B5 Envelope</b><br><br>176 x 250 mm<br>(6.93 x 9.84 in.)                                                    | ✓                       | ✓             | X                           | ✓                   | X                       | X                  |
| <b>Monarch</b><br><br>98.425 x 190.5 mm<br>(3.875 x 7.5 in.)                                                   | X                       | X             | X                           | X                   | X                       | X                  |
| <b>Other Envelope<sup>5</sup></b><br><br>98.4 x 162 mm to 176 x 250 mm<br>(3.87 x 6.38 in. to 6.93 x 9.84 in.) | ✓                       | ✓             | X                           | ✓                   | X                       | X                  |

<sup>1</sup> Load this paper size into the standard tray and the manual feeder with the long edge entering the printer first.

<sup>2</sup> Load this paper size into the optional trays and the multipurpose feeder with the short edge entering the printer first.

<sup>3</sup> When Universal is selected, the page is formatted for 215.9 x 355.6 mm (8.5 x 14 in.) unless the size is specified by the software application.

<sup>4</sup> Load narrow paper with the short edge entering the printer first.

<sup>5</sup> When Other Envelope is selected, the page is formatted for 215.9 x 355.6 mm (8.5 x 14 in.) unless the size is specified by the software application.

## Paper sizes supported by the scanner and automatic document feeder

| Paper size and dimension                                               | Scanner | Automatic document feeder |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|---------------------------|
| <b>A4</b><br>210 x 297 mm (8.27 x 11.7 in.)                            | ✓       | ✓                         |
| <b>A5 Portrait (short-edge feed)</b><br>148 x 210 mm (5.83 x 8.27 in.) | ✓       | ✓                         |
| <b>A5 Landscape (long-edge feed)</b><br>210 x 148 mm (8.27 x 5.83 in.) | ✓       | ✓                         |
| <b>A6</b><br>105 x 148 mm (4.13 x 5.83 in.)                            | ✓       | ✓                         |
| <b>1/3 A4</b><br>95 x 210 mm (3.7 x 8.3 in.)                           | ✓       | X                         |
| <b>JIS B5</b><br>182 x 257 mm (7.17 x 10.1 in.)                        | ✓       | ✓                         |
| <b>Letter</b><br>215.9 x 279.4 mm (8.5 x 11 in.)                       | ✓       | ✓                         |
| <b>Legal</b><br>215.9 x 355.6 mm (8.5 x 14 in.)                        | ✓       | ✓                         |
| <b>Executive</b><br>184.2 x 266.7 mm (7.25 x 10.5 in.)                 | ✓       | ✓                         |
| <b>Oficio (Mexico)</b><br>215.9 x 340.4 mm (8.5 x 13.4 in.)            | ✓       | ✓                         |
| <b>Folio</b><br>215.9 x 330.2 mm (8.5 x 13 in.)                        | ✓       | ✓                         |
| <b>Statement</b><br>139.7 x 215.9 mm (5.5 x 8.5 in.)                   | ✓       | ✓                         |



| Paper size and dimension                                                                                 | Scanner | Automatic document feeder |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|---------------------------|
| <b>Hagaki</b><br>100 x 148 mm (3.94 x 5.83 in.)                                                          | ✓       | X                         |
| <b>Universal</b> <sup>1,2</sup><br>98.4 x 148 mm to 215.9 x 355.6 mm (3.87 x 5.83 in. to 8.5 x 14 in.)   | ✓       | X                         |
| <b>Universal</b> <sup>1,2</sup><br>76.2 x 127 mm to 215.9 x 355.6 mm (3 x 5 in. to 8.5 x 14 in.)         | ✓       | X                         |
| <b>Universal</b> <sup>1,2</sup><br>148 x 210 mm to 215.9 x 355.6 mm (5.83 x 8.27 in. to 8.5 x 14 in.)    | ✓       | ✓                         |
| <b>Universal</b> <sup>1,2</sup><br>210 x 250 mm to 215.9 x 355.6 mm (8.27 x 9.84 in. to 8.5 x 14 in.)    | ✓       | ✓                         |
| <b>7 3/4 Envelope</b><br>98.4 x 190.5 mm (3.875 x 7.5 in.)                                               | ✓       | X                         |
| <b>9 Envelope</b><br>98.4 x 225.4 mm (3.875 x 8.9 in.)                                                   | ✓       | X                         |
| <b>10 Envelope</b><br>104.8 x 241.3 mm (4.12 x 9.5 in.)                                                  | ✓       | X                         |
| <b>DL Envelope</b><br>110 x 220 mm (4.33 x 8.66 in.)                                                     | ✓       | X                         |
| <b>C5 Envelope</b><br>162 x 229 mm (6.38 x 9.01 in.)                                                     | ✓       | X                         |
| <b>B5 Envelope</b><br>176 x 250 mm (6.93 x 9.84 in.)                                                     | ✓       | X                         |
| <b>Monarch</b><br>98.425 x 190.5 mm (3.875 x 7.5 in.)                                                    | ✓       | X                         |
| <b>Other Envelope</b> <sup>3</sup><br>98.4 x 162 mm to 176 x 250 mm (3.87 x 6.38 in. to 6.93 x 9.84 in.) | ✓       | X                         |

<sup>1</sup> When Universal is selected, the page is formatted for 215.9 x 355.6 mm (8.5 x 14 in.) unless the size is specified by the software application.

<sup>2</sup> Load narrow paper with the short edge entering the printer first.

<sup>3</sup> When Other Envelope is selected, the page is formatted for 215.9 x 355.6 mm (8.5 x 14 in.) unless the size is specified by the software application.

**Note:** Your printer model may have a 650-sheet duo tray, which consists of a 550-sheet tray and an integrated 100-sheet multipurpose feeder. The 550-sheet tray of the 650-sheet duo tray supports the same paper sizes as the optional 550-sheet tray. The integrated multipurpose feeder supports different paper sizes, types, and weights.

## Supported paper types

| Paper type   | Standard 250-sheet tray | Manual feeder | Optional 650-sheet duo tray |                     | Optional 550-sheet tray | Two-sided printing |
|--------------|-------------------------|---------------|-----------------------------|---------------------|-------------------------|--------------------|
|              |                         |               | 550-sheet tray              | Multipurpose feeder |                         |                    |
| Plain        | ✓                       | ✓             | ✓                           | ✓                   | ✓                       | ✓                  |
| Card stock   | ✓                       | ✓             | ✓                           | ✓                   | ✓                       | X                  |
| Labels       | ✓                       | ✓             | ✓                           | ✓                   | ✓                       | ✓                  |
| Vinyl Labels | ✓                       | ✓             | ✓                           | ✓                   | ✓                       | X                  |
| Envelope     | ✓                       | ✓             | X                           | ✓                   | X                       | X                  |

| Paper type   | Scanner | Automatic document feeder (ADF) |
|--------------|---------|---------------------------------|
| Plain        | ✓       | ✓                               |
| Card stock   | ✓       | X                               |
| Labels       | ✓       | X                               |
| Vinyl Labels | ✓       | X                               |
| Envelope     | ✓       | X                               |

## Notes

- Your printer model may have a 650-sheet duo tray, which consists of a 550-sheet tray and an integrated 100-sheet multipurpose feeder. The 550-sheet tray of the 650-sheet duo tray supports the same paper type as the 550-sheet tray. The integrated multipurpose feeder supports different paper sizes, types, and weights.
- Labels, envelopes, and card stock always print at reduced speed.
- Vinyl labels are supported for occasional use only and must be tested for acceptability. Some vinyl labels may feed more reliably from the multipurpose feeder.

## Supported paper weights

| Standard 250-sheet tray | Manual feeder           | Optional 650-sheet duo tray |                         | Optional 550-sheet tray | Two-sided printing      | Automatic document feeder (ADF) |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------------------|
|                         |                         | 550-sheet tray              | Multipurpose feeder     |                         |                         |                                 |
| 60–220 g/m <sup>2</sup> | 60–220 g/m <sup>2</sup> | 60–176 g/m <sup>2</sup>     | 60–176 g/m <sup>2</sup> | 60–176 g/m <sup>2</sup> | 60–105 g/m <sup>2</sup> | 52–120 g/m <sup>2</sup>         |
| (16–58-lb bond)         | (16–58-lb bond)         | (16–47-lb bond)             | (16–47-lb bond)         | (16–47-lb bond)         | (16–28-lb bond)         | (14–32-lb bond)                 |

## Notes

- Your printer model may have a 650-sheet duo tray, which consists of a 550-sheet tray and an integrated 100-sheet multipurpose feeder. The 550-sheet tray of the 650-sheet duo tray supports the same paper types as the 550-sheet tray. The integrated multipurpose feeder supports different paper sizes, types, and weights.
- For 60 to 176 g/m<sup>2</sup> (16–47-lb bond) paper, grain long fibers are recommended.
- Paper less than 75 g/m<sup>2</sup> (20-lb bond) must be printed with Paper Type set to Light Paper. Failure to do so may cause excessive curl which can lead to feeding errors, especially in more humid environments.

# Set up, install, and configure

## Selecting a location for the printer

- Leave enough room to open trays, covers, and doors and to install hardware options.
- Set up the printer near an electrical outlet.



**CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY**

To avoid the risk of fire or electrical shock, connect the power cord to an appropriately rated and properly grounded electrical outlet that is near the product and easily accessible.



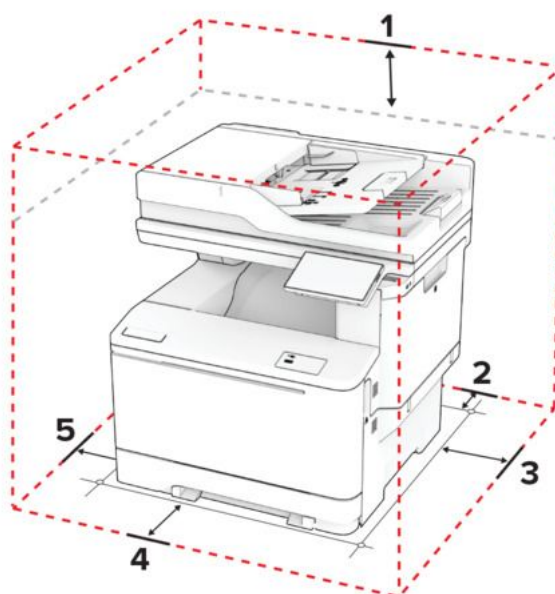
**CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD**

To avoid the risk of electrical shock, do not place or use this product near water or wet locations.

- Make sure that airflow in the room meets the latest revision of the ASHRAE 62 standard or the CEN Technical Committee 156 standard.
- Provide a flat, sturdy, and stable surface.
- Keep the printer:
  - Clean, dry, and free of dust.
  - Away from stray staples and paper clips.
  - Away from the direct airflow of air conditioners, heaters, or ventilators.
  - Free from direct sunlight and humidity extremes.
- Observe the recommended temperatures and avoid fluctuations:

|                     |                             |
|---------------------|-----------------------------|
| Ambient temperature | 10 to 32.2°C (50 to 90°F)   |
| Storage temperature | 15.6 to 32.2°C (60 to 90°F) |

- Allow the following recommended amount of space around the printer for proper ventilation:



|                                                                                        |            |                 |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|-----------------|
| 1                                                                                      | Top        | 305 mm (12 in.) |
| 2                                                                                      | Rear       | 102 mm (4 in.)  |
| 3                                                                                      | Right side | 76 mm (3 in.)   |
| 4                                                                                      | Front      | 508 mm (20 in.) |
| <p><b>Note:</b> The minimum space needed in front of the printer is 76 mm (3 in.).</p> |            |                 |
| 5                                                                                      | Left side  | 76 mm (3 in.)   |

## Attaching cables



### CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD

To avoid the risk of electrical shock, do not set up this product or make any electrical or cabling connections, such as the power cord, fax feature, or telephone, during a lightning storm.



### CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY

To avoid the risk of fire or electrical shock, connect the power cord to an appropriately rated and properly grounded electrical outlet that is near the product and easily accessible.



### CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY

To avoid the risk of fire or electrical shock, use only the power cord provided with this product or the manufacturer's authorized replacement.

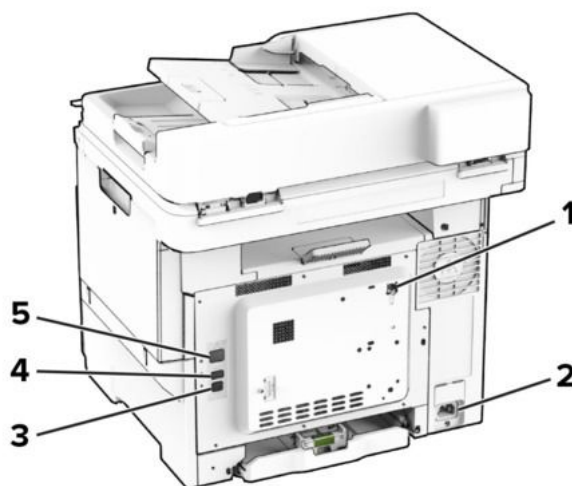


### CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY

To reduce the risk of fire, use only a 26 AWG or larger telecommunications (RJ-11) cord when connecting this product to the public switched telephone network. For users in Australia, the cord must be approved by the Australian Communications and Media Authority.

### Warning—Potential Damage

To avoid loss of data or printer malfunction, do not touch the USB cable, any wireless network adapter, or the printer in the areas shown while actively printing.



|   | Printer port      | Function                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|---|-------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | LINE port         | Connect the printer to an active telephone line through a standard wall jack (RJ-11), DSL filter, or VoIP adapter, or any other adapter that allows you to access the telephone line to send and receive faxes. |
| 2 | Power cord socket | Connect the printer to a properly grounded electrical outlet.                                                                                                                                                   |
| 3 | USB printer port  | Connect the printer to a computer.                                                                                                                                                                              |
| 4 | USB port          | Attach a keyboard or any compatible option.                                                                                                                                                                     |
| 5 | Ethernet port     | Connect the printer to a network.                                                                                                                                                                               |

# Setting up and using the home screen applications

## Using the home screen

**Note:** Your home screen may vary depending on your home screen customization settings, administrative setup, and active embedded solutions.



| # | Icon                  | Function                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|---|-----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Stop or Cancel button | Stop the current job.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| 2 | Copy                  | Make copies.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| 3 | Change Language       | Change the language on the printer display.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| 4 | Email                 | Send emails.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| 5 | Settings              | Access the printer menus.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| 6 | Fax                   | Send fax.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| 7 | Address Book          | Access, create, and organize contacts.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| 8 | Status/Supplies       | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Show a printer warning or error message whenever the printer requires intervention to continue processing.</li> <li>View more information on the printer warning or message, and on how to clear it.</li> </ul> <div> <p><b>Note:</b> You can also access this setting by touching the top section of the home screen.</p> </div> |
| 9 | Held Jobs             | Show all the current held print jobs.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |

| #  | Icon             | Function                                                                                                                              |
|----|------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 10 | Job Queue        | Show all the current print jobs.<br><br><b>Note:</b> You can also access this setting by touching the top section of the home screen. |
| 11 | USB Drive        | View, select, or print photos and documents from a flash drive.                                                                       |
| 12 | Scan Profiles    | Scan and save documents directly to the computer.                                                                                     |
| 13 | FTP              | Scan and save documents directly to an FTP server.                                                                                    |
| 14 | Bookmarks        | Organize all bookmarks.                                                                                                               |
| 15 | Hard Disk        | View, select, and manage documents from a hard drive or an intelligent storage drive.                                                 |
| 16 | Network Folder   | Scan to a network folder or network location.                                                                                         |
| 17 | Start button     | Start a job, depending on which mode is selected.                                                                                     |
| 18 | On-screen keypad | Enter numbers or symbols in an input field.                                                                                           |

## Customizing the home screen

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

### Notes

- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

2. Click **Settings > Device > Home Screen Customization**.
3. Do one or more of the following:
  - To add an icon to the home screen, click **+**, select the app name, and then click **Add**.
  - To remove a home screen icon, select the app name, and then click **Remove**.
  - To customize an app name, select the app name, click **Edit**, and then assign a name.
  - To restore the name of an app, select the app name, click **Edit**, and then select **Restore app label**.
  - To add a space between apps, click **+**, select **BLANK SPACE**, and then click **Add**.
  - To arrange the apps, drag the app names in the order that you want.
  - To restore the default home screen, click **Restore home screen**.
4. Apply the changes.



## Supported applications

| Application           | Printer models               |
|-----------------------|------------------------------|
| Scan Center           | CX532, CX635, XC2335, XC2342 |
| Shortcut Center       | CX532, CX635, XC2335, XC2342 |
| Card Copy             | CX532, CX635, XC2335, XC2342 |
| Display Customization | CX532, CX635, XC2335, XC2342 |
| Customer Support      | XC2335, XC2342               |
| Device Quotas         | XC2335, XC2342               |

## Setting up Scan Center

1. From the control panel, select **Scan Center**.
2. Select and create a destination, and then configure the settings.

**Note:** Only destinations created from the Embedded Web Server are saved. For more information, see the documentation for the solution.

3. Scan the document.

## Creating a shortcut

1. From the home screen, touch **Shortcut Center**.

**Note:** The icon and name may have been changed. For more information, contact your administrator.

2. Select a printer function, and then touch **Create Shortcut**.

**Note:** The Secure Email function is not supported.

3. Configure the settings, and then touch **Save**.
4. Type a unique shortcut name.

**Note:** To avoid clipped names on the home screen, type only up to 25 characters.

5. Touch **OK**.

The application automatically generates a unique shortcut number.

**Note:** To launch the shortcut, touch , touch #, and then enter the shortcut number.

## Setting up Card Copy

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

### Notes

- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

2. Click **Apps > Card Copy > Configure**.

### Notes

- Make sure that Display Icon is enabled.
- Make sure that Email settings and Network Share settings are configured.
- When scanning a card, make sure that the scan resolution does not exceed 200 dpi for color and 400 dpi for black and white.
- When scanning multiple cards, make sure that the scan resolution does not exceed 150 dpi for color and 300 dpi for black and white.

3. Apply the changes.

**Note:** You need a printer hard disk or an intelligent storage drive to scan multiple cards.

## Using Display Customization

**Note:** Make sure that the **Screen Saver**, **Slideshow**, and **Wallpaper** settings are enabled from the Embedded Web Server. Navigate to **Apps > Display Customization > Configure**.

### Managing screen saver and slide show images

1. In the **Screen Saver and Slideshow Images** section, add, edit, or delete an image.

#### Notes

- You can add up to 10 images.
- When enabled, the status icons appear on the screen saver only when there are errors, warnings, or cloud-based notifications.

2. Apply the changes.

### Changing the wallpaper image

1. From the control panel, select **Change Wallpaper**.
2. Select an image to use.
3. Apply the changes.

### Running a slide show from a flash drive

1. Insert a flash drive into the front USB port.
2. From the control panel, select **Slideshow**.

#### Note

You can remove the flash drive after the slide show starts, but the images are not stored in the printer. If the slide show stops, then insert the flash drive again to view the images.

## Using Customer Support

#### Notes

- This application is supported only in some printer models. For more information, see [Supported applications on page 33](#).
- For information on how to configure the application settings, see the *Customer Support Administrator's Guide*.

1. From the home screen, touch **Customer Support**.
2. Print or email the information.

## Setting up Device Quotas

### Notes

- This application is supported only in some printer models. For more information, see [Supported applications on page 33](#).
- For information on how to configure the application settings, see the *Device Quotas Administrator's Guide*.

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

### Notes

- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

2. Click **Apps > Device Quotas > Configure**.
3. In the User Accounts section, add or edit a user, and then set the user quota.
4. Apply the changes.

## Managing bookmarks

### Configuring Bookmarks

#### Creating bookmarks

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

### Notes

- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

2. Click **Bookmarks > Add Bookmark**, and then type a bookmark name.
3. Select an **Address** protocol type, and then do one of the following:
  - For HTTP and HTTPS, type the URL that you want to bookmark.
  - For HTTPS, make sure to use the host name instead of the IP address. For example, type myWebsite.com/sample.pdf instead of typing 123.123.123.123/sample.pdf. Make sure that the host name also matches the Common Name (CN) value in the server certificate. For more information on obtaining the CN value in the server certificate, see the help information for your web browser.
  - For FTP, type the FTP address. For example, myServer/myDirectory. Enter the FTP port number. Port 21 is the default port for sending commands.
  - For SMB, type the network folder address. For example, myServer/myShare/myFile.pdf. Type the network domain name.

- If necessary, select the **Authentication** type for FTP and SMB.

### Notes

- The application supports the following file types: PDF, JPEG, and TIFF. Other file types such as DOCX and XLSX are supported in some printer models.
- To limit access to the bookmark, enter a PIN.

4. Click **Save**.

## Creating folders

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

### Notes

- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

2. Navigate to **Bookmarks > Add Folder**, and then type a folder name.

**Note:** To limit access to the folder, enter a PIN.

3. Click **Save**.

## Configuring Address Book

### Adding contacts

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

### Notes

- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

2. Click **Address Book**, and then click **Add Contact**.
3. If necessary, specify a login method to allow application access.
4. Click **Save**.

### Adding groups

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

### Notes

- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

2. Click **Address Book**, and then click **Add Group**.
3. Type a group name, and then type the contacts you want to add to the group.

**Note:** You can assign one or more contacts to the group.

4. Click **Save**.

## Setting up and using the accessibility features

### Activating Voice Guidance

#### From the home screen

1. In one motion and using one finger, slowly swipe left then up on the display until you hear a voice message.
2. Using two fingers, select **OK**.

**Note:** If the gesture does not work, then apply more pressure.

#### From the keyboard

1. Press and hold the **5** key until you hear a voice message.
2. Press **Tab** to navigate the focus cursor to the OK button, and then press **Enter**.

#### Notes

- When Voice Guidance is activated, always use two fingers to select any item on the display.
- Voice Guidance has limited language support.

### Deactivating Voice Guidance

1. In one motion and using one finger, slowly swipe left then up on the display until you hear a voice message.
2. Using two fingers, do either of the following:
  - Select **Voice Guidance**, and then select **OK**.
  - Select **Cancel**.

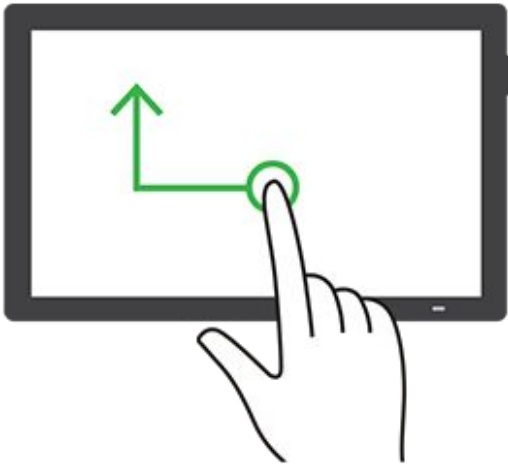
**Note:** If the gesture does not work, then apply more pressure.

Pressing the power button or putting the printer in Sleep or Hibernate mode also deactivates Voice Guidance.

## Navigating the screen using gestures

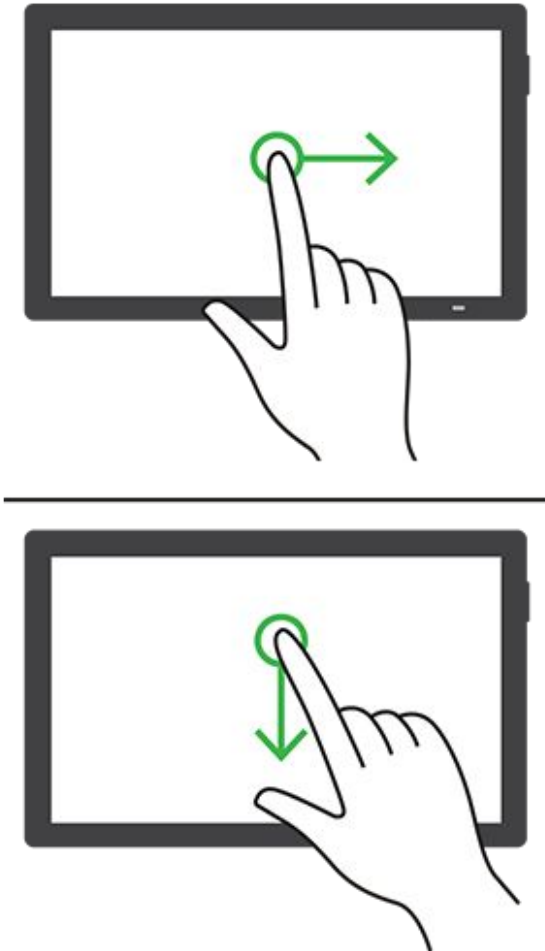
### Notes

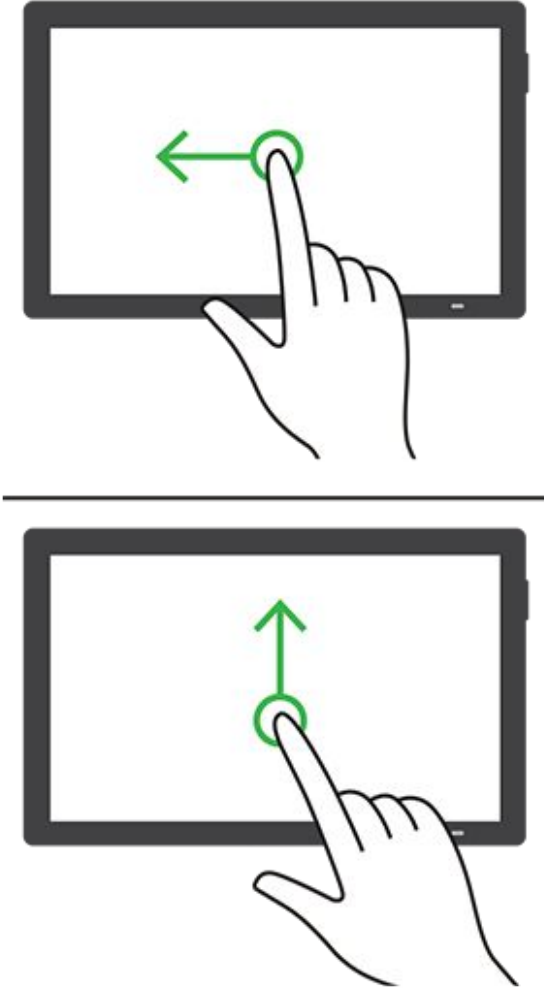
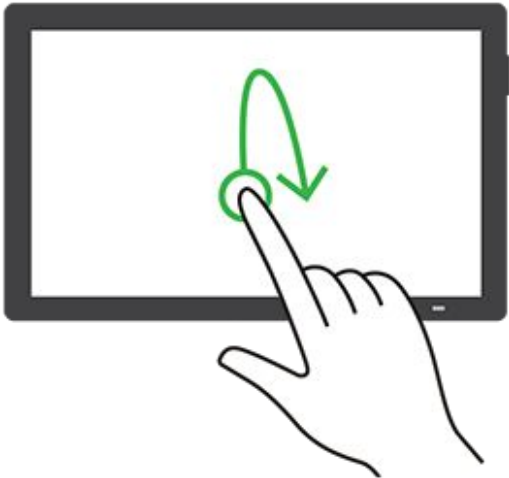
- Most of the gestures are applicable only when Voice Guidance is activated.
- Use a physical keyboard to type characters and adjust certain settings.

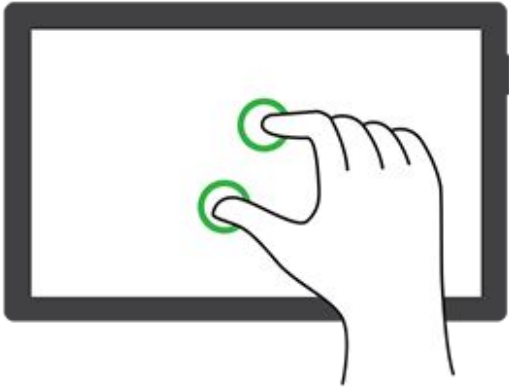
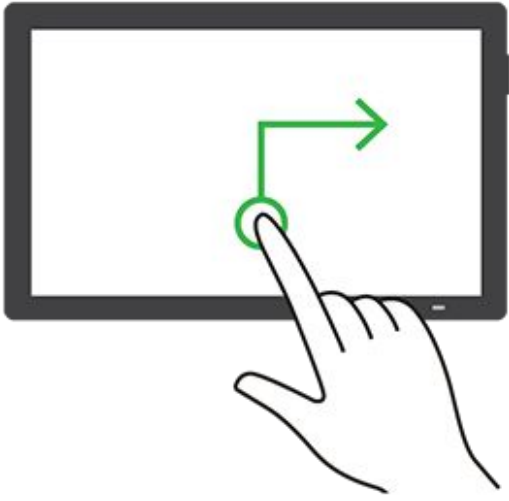
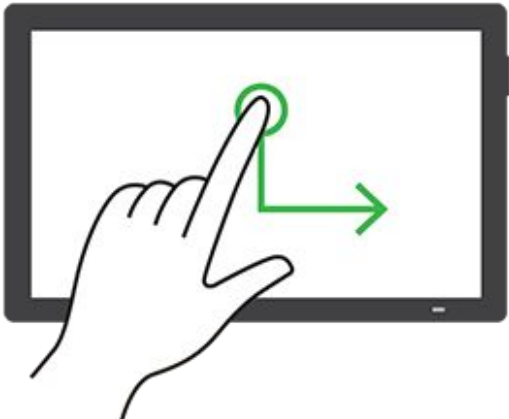
| Gesture                                                                                                                       | Function                                                                                                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>Swipe left then up using one finger</p>  | <p>Launch or exit <b>Accessibility mode</b>.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This gesture is also applicable when the printer is in normal mode.</p> |
| <p>Double-tap using one finger</p>         | <p>Select an option or item on the screen.</p>                                                                                           |

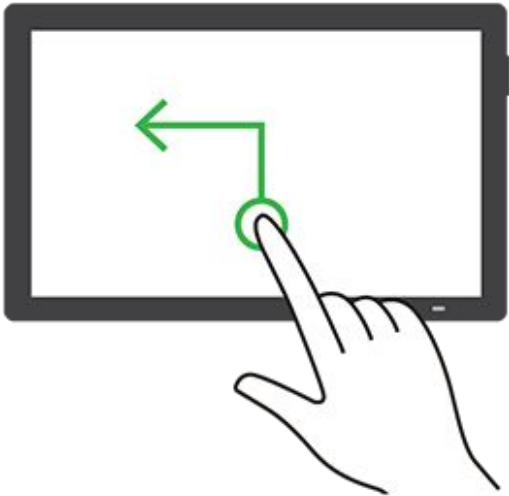
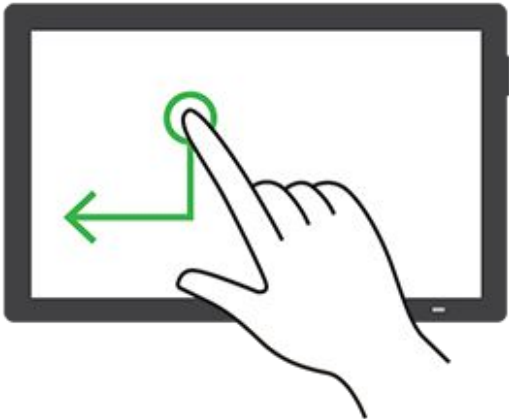
| Gesture                                                                                                                                                         | Function                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>Double-tap the home icon using two fingers</p>  | <p>Deactivate the <b>Accessibility mode</b>.</p>                                                                                                                  |
| <p>Triple-tap using one finger</p>                | <p>Zoom in or zoom out text and images.</p> <div><p><b>Note:</b> Enable <b>Magnification mode</b> to use the zoom feature.</p></div> |



| Gesture                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Function                                                                 |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>Swipe right or swipe down using one finger</p>  <p>The diagram illustrates two gestures on a tablet screen. The top part shows a hand with the index finger touching the screen, with a green circle at the point of contact and a green arrow pointing to the right, indicating a horizontal swipe. The bottom part, separated by a horizontal line, shows a hand with the index finger touching the screen, with a green circle at the point of contact and a green arrow pointing downwards, indicating a vertical swipe.</p> | <p>Move to the next item on the screen.</p> |

| Gesture                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Function                                                                     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>Swipe left or swipe up using one finger</p>  <p>The diagram consists of two parts separated by a horizontal line. The top part shows a hand with the index finger touching a point on a tablet screen. A green circle is at the point of contact, and a green arrow points to the left. The bottom part shows the same hand and tablet, but the green circle is at a lower position, and a green arrow points upwards.</p> | <p>Move to the previous item on the screen.</p> |
| <p>Swipe up then down using one finger</p>  <p>The diagram shows a hand with the index finger touching a point on a tablet screen. A green circle is at the point of contact. A green arrow starts from the circle, points upwards, then loops back down to the circle.</p>                                                                                                                                                | <p>Move to the first item on the screen.</p>  |

| Gesture                                                                                                                                                         | Function                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>Pan</p>                                         | <p>Access parts of the zoomed image that are beyond the limit of the screen.</p> <div><b>Notes</b></div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Use two fingers to drag a zoomed image.</li><li>• Enable <b>Magnification mode</b> to use the pan gesture.</li></ul> |
| <p>Swipe up then right using one finger</p>       | <p>Increase the volume.</p> <div><b>Note:</b> This gesture is also applicable when the printer is in normal mode.</div>                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <p>Swipe down then right using one finger</p>  | <p>Decrease the volume.</p> <div><b>Note:</b> This gesture is also applicable when the printer is in normal mode.</div>                                                                                                                                                                       |

| Gesture                                                                                                                         | Function                                                  |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>Swipe up then left using one finger</p>     | <p>Exit an application and return to the home screen.</p> |
| <p>Swipe down then left using one finger</p>  | <p>Go back to the previous setting.</p>                   |

## Using the on-screen keyboard

When the on-screen keyboard appears, do one or more of the following:

- Touch a key to announce and type the character in the field.
- Drag a finger across different characters to announce and type the character in the field.
- Touch a text box using two fingers to announce the characters in the field.
- Touch **Backspace** to delete characters.

## Enabling Magnification mode

1. In one motion and using one finger, slowly swipe left then up on the display until you hear a voice message.

**Note:** For printer models without built-in speakers, use headphones to hear the message.

2. Using two fingers, do the following:

**Note:** If the gesture does not work, then apply more pressure.

- a. Touch **Magnification mode**.
- b. Touch **OK**.

**Note:** If the gesture does not work, then apply more pressure.

For more information on navigating a magnified screen, see [Navigating the screen using gestures on page 39](#).

## Adjusting the Voice Guidance speech rate

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Device › Accessibility › Speech Rate**.
2. Select the speech rate.

## Adjusting the default headphone volume

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Device › Accessibility**.
2. Adjust the headphone volume.

**Note:** The volume resets to the default value after the user exits Accessibility mode or when the printer wakes from sleep or hibernate mode.

## Adjusting the default internal speaker volume

1. From the control panel, select .
2. Adjust the volume.

### Notes

- If **Quiet Mode** is enabled, then the audible alerts are turned off. This setting also slows the printer performance.
- The volume resets to the default value after the user exits the Accessibility mode or when the printer wakes from sleep or hibernate mode.

## Enabling spoken passwords or personal identification numbers

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Device** › **Accessibility** › **Speak Passwords/PINs**.
2. Enable the setting.

## Setting up the printer to fax

### Supported fax

| Printer model | Analog fax | etherFAX <sup>1</sup> | Fax server <sup>2</sup> | Fax over IP (FoIP) <sup>3</sup> |
|---------------|------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|---------------------------------|
| CX532         | ✓          | ✓                     | ✓                       | ✓                               |
| CX635         | ✓          | ✓                     | ✓                       | ✓                               |
| XC2335        | ✓          | ✓                     | ✓                       | ✓                               |
| XC2342        | ✓          | ✓                     | ✓                       | ✓                               |

<sup>1</sup> Needs a subscription. For more information, go to <https://www.etherfax.net/lexmark> or contact the place where you purchased the printer.

<sup>2</sup> Needs a subscription for the fax server to work.

<sup>3</sup> Needs an installed license bundle. For more information, contact the place where you purchased the printer.

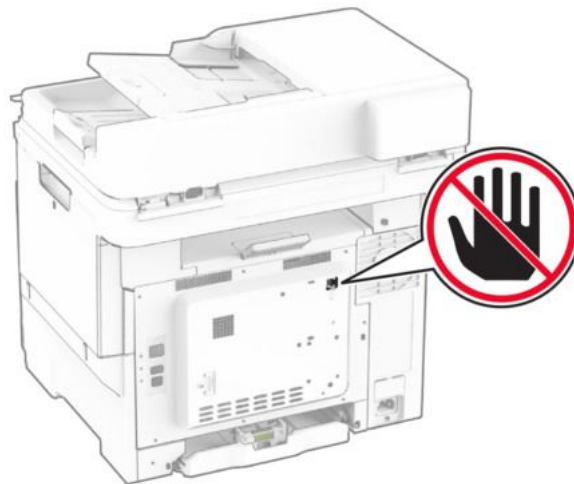
## Setting up the fax function using analog fax

### Notes

- A fax card must be installed for the printer to use analog fax.
- Some connection methods are applicable only in some countries or regions.
- If the fax function is enabled and not fully set up, then the indicator light may blink red.
- If you do not have a TCP/IP environment, then use the control panel to set up fax.

### Warning—Potential Damage

To avoid loss of data or printer malfunction, do not touch cables or the printer in the area shown while actively sending or receiving a fax.



## Using the control panel

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** > **Fax** > **Fax Setup** > **General Fax Settings**.
2. Configure the settings.

## Using the Embedded Web Server

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

### Notes

- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

2. Click **Settings** > **Fax** > **Fax Setup** > **General Fax Settings**.
3. Configure the settings.

4. Apply the changes.

## Setting up the fax function using etherFAX

### Notes

- The printer firmware must be updated to the latest version. For more information, see the **Printer firmware instructions** section.
- An appropriate license bundle must be installed in your printer. For more information, contact etherFAX.
- Make sure that you have registered your printer to the etherFAX portal. For more information, go to <https://www.etherfax.net/lexmark>.
- The printer serial number is required on registration. For more information, see [Finding the printer serial number on page 12](#).

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

### Notes

- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

2. Click **Settings** › **Fax** › **Fax Setup** › **General Fax Settings**.

**Note:** **Fax Setup** appears only if **Fax Mode** is set to **Fax**.

3. In the **Fax Name** field, type a unique name.
4. In the **Fax Number** field, enter the fax number that etherFAX provided.
5. From the **Fax Transport** menu, select **etherFAX**.

### Notes

- This menu shows up only when more than one fax transport is available.
- If the printer only has etherFAX installed, then it is automatically configured.

6. Apply the changes.



## Setting up the fax function using fax server

### Notes

- This feature lets you send fax messages to a fax service provider that supports email receiving.
- This feature supports outgoing fax messages only. To support fax receive, make sure that you have a device-based fax, such as analog fax, etherFAX, or Fax over IP (FoIP), configured in your printer.

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

### Notes

- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

2. Click **Settings > Fax**.
3. From the **Fax Mode** menu, select **Fax Server**, and then click **Save**.
4. Click **Fax Server Setup**.
5. In the **To Format** field, type [#]@myfax.com, where [#] is the fax number and **myfax.com** is the fax provider domain.

### Notes

- If necessary, configure the **Reply Address**, **Subject**, or **Message** fields.
- To let the printer receive fax messages, enable the device-based fax receive setting. Make sure that you have a device-based fax configured.

6. Click **Save**.
7. Click **Fax Server Email Settings**, and then enable **Use Email SMTP Server**.

**Note:** If the settings are not configured, then see [Configuring the email SMTP settings on page 54](#).

8. Apply the changes.

## Setting up fax using a standard telephone line

**Note:** These instructions apply only to printers that support analog fax. For more information, see [Setting up fax in countries or regions with different telephone wall jacks and plugs on page 51](#).



### CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD

To avoid the risk of electrical shock, do not set up this product or make any electrical or cabling connections, such as the power cord, fax feature, or telephone, during a lightning storm.



### CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD

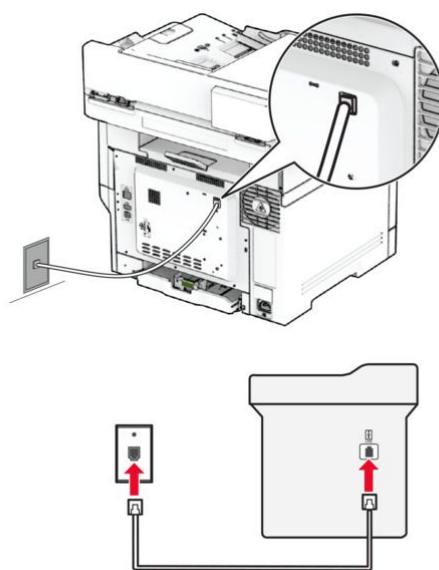
To avoid the risk of electrical shock, do not use the fax feature during a lightning storm.



### CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY

To reduce the risk of fire, use only a 26 AWG or larger telecommunications (RJ-11) cord when connecting this product to the public switched telephone network. For users in Australia, the cord must be approved by the Australian Communications and Media Authority.

## Setup 1: Printer is connected to a dedicated fax line



1. Connect one end of the telephone cable to the line port of the printer.
2. Connect the other end of the cable to an active analog wall jack.

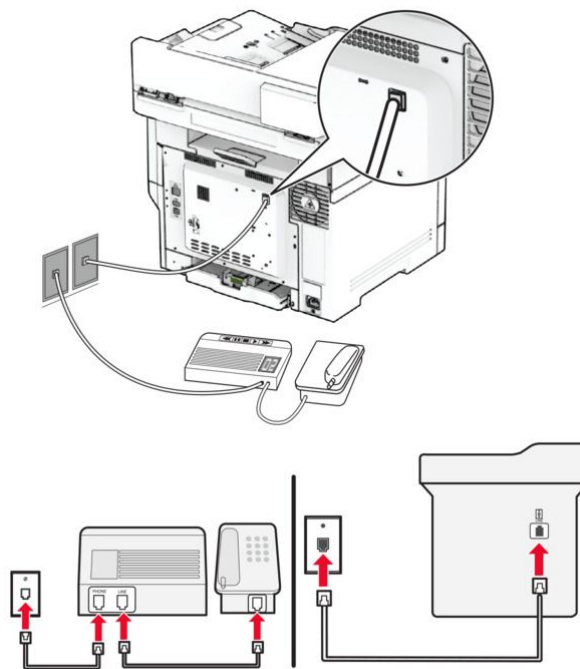
### Notes

- You can set the printer to receive faxes automatically (set Auto Answer to **On**) or manually (set Auto Answer to **Off**).
- If you want to receive faxes automatically, then set the printer to pick up on a specified number of rings.

## Setup 2: Printer is sharing the line with an answering machine

**Note:** If you subscribe to a distinctive ring service, then make sure that you set the correct ring pattern for the printer. Otherwise, the printer does not receive faxes even if you have set it to receive faxes automatically.

### Connected to different wall jacks



1. Connect one end of the telephone cable to the line port of the printer.
2. Connect the other end of the cable to an active analog wall jack.

### Notes

- If you have only one telephone number on your line, then set the printer to receive faxes automatically.
- Set the printer to pick up calls two rings after the answering machine. For example, if the answering machine picks up calls after four rings, then set the printer Rings to Answer setting to 6.

## Setting up fax in countries or regions with different telephone wall jacks and plugs

**Note:** These instructions apply only to printers that have a fax card installed.

**CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD**

To avoid the risk of electrical shock, do not set up this product or make any electrical or cabling connections, such as the power cord, fax feature, or telephone, during a lightning storm.

**CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD**

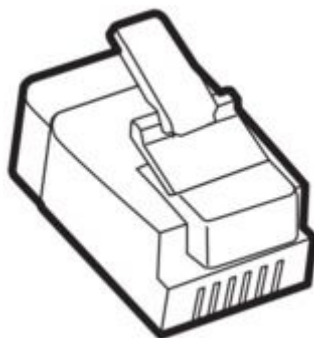
To avoid the risk of electrical shock, do not use the fax feature during a lightning storm.

**CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY**

To reduce the risk of fire, use only a 26 AWG or larger telecommunications (RJ-11) cord when connecting this product to the public switched telephone network. For users in Australia, the cord must be approved by the Australian Communications and Media Authority.

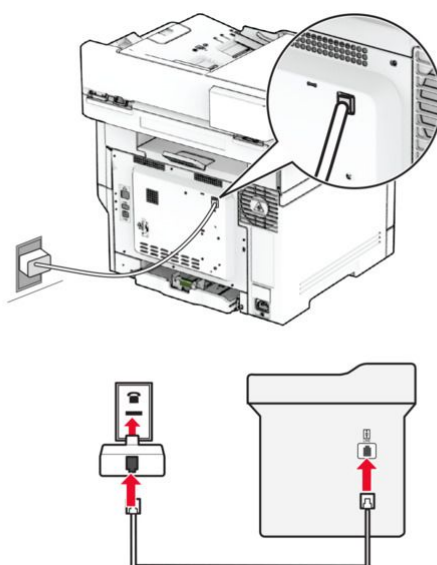
The standard wall jack adopted by most countries or regions is RJ-11. If the wall jack or equipment in your facility is not compatible with this type of connection, then use a telephone adapter. An adapter for your country or region may not come with your printer, and you may need to purchase it separately.

There may be an adapter plug installed in the telephone port of the printer. Do not remove the adapter plug from the telephone port of the printer if you are connecting to a serial or cascaded telephone system.



| Part name            | Part number |
|----------------------|-------------|
| Lexmark adapter plug | 40X8519     |

## Connecting the printer to a non-RJ-11 wall jack



1. Connect one end of the telephone cable to the line port of the printer.
2. Connect the other end of the cable to the RJ-11 adapter, and then connect the adapter to the wall jack.

**Note:** If you want to connect another device with a non-RJ-11 connector to the same wall jack, then connect it directly to the telephone adapter.

## Connecting to a distinctive ring service

A distinctive ring service lets you have multiple telephone numbers on one telephone line. Each telephone number is assigned a different ring pattern.

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Fax** › **Fax Setup** › **Fax Receive Settings** › **Admin Controls** › **Answer On**.
2. Select a ring pattern.

## Setting the fax date and time

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Device** › **Preferences** › **Date and Time** › **Configure**.
2. Configure the settings.

## Configuring daylight saving time

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Device** › **Preferences** › **Date and Time** › **Configure**.
2. In the **Time Zone** menu, select **(UTC+user) Custom**.

3. In the **Configure** menu, select **UTC (GMT) Offset**.
4. Configure the settings.

## Configuring the fax speaker settings

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Fax › Fax Setup › Speaker Settings**.
2. Do the following:
  - Set **Speaker Mode** to **Always On**.
  - Set **Speaker Volume** to **High**.
  - Activate **Ringer Volume**.

## Configuring the email SMTP settings

Configure the Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) settings to send a scanned document through email. The settings vary with each service provider. For more information, see [Email service providers](#).

Before you begin, make sure that the printer is connected to a network and the network is connected to the Internet.

## Using the Embedded Web Server

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

### Notes

- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

2. Click **Settings › Email**.
3. Configure the email settings. For more information, see [Email service providers](#).

### Notes

- For email service providers that are not on the list, contact your provider and ask for the settings.
- For video instructions on configuring the SMTP settings for Gmail™ email service, go to <https://infoserve.lexmark.com/ref/common/configuring-email-video.html>.
- For Microsoft 365 OAuth 2.0 Authentication, you must register your printer to OAuth 2.0 Authentication. For more information, see [Setting up OAuth 2.0 Authentication for Email Server using the Embedded Web Server](#).

4. Click **Save**.

## Setting up OAuth 2.0 Authentication for Email Server using the Embedded Web Server

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

### Notes

- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

2. Click **Settings > Email**.
3. Click **Set Up OAuth 2 for Email Server**, and then click **Register**.
4. Go to <https://microsoft.com/devicelogin>.
5. Enter the code that was generated in the Embedded Web Server.
6. Log in to your Outlook account.
7. Follow the on-screen instructions.

## Using the email setup wizard in the printer

The wizard appears when you attempt to send an email and the SMTP settings are not yet configured. These instructions apply only to some printer models.

### Notes

- Before using the wizard, make sure that the printer firmware is updated. For more information, see the **Printer firmware instructions** section.
- Setting up the SMTP settings using the email setup wizard is not applicable for OAuth 2.0 Authentication.

1. From the home screen, select **Email**.
2. Select **Set up Now**, type your email address and then select **Next**.
3. Type the password, and then select **Done**.

### Notes

- Depending on your email service provider, type your account password, app password, or authentication password. For more information on the password, see [Email service providers](#), and then look for Device Password.
- If your provider is not listed, then contact your provider and ask for the **Primary SMTP Gateway**, **Primary SMTP Gateway Port**, **Use SSL/TLS**, and **SMTP Server Authentication** settings. Proceed with the setup after getting the settings.

4. Select **Next**.
5. Configure the settings, and then select **Next**.
6. Select **Test Setup**.

## Using the Settings menu in the printer

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings > Email > Email Setup**.
2. Configure the email settings. For more information, see [Email service providers](#).

**Note:** If your service provider is not listed, then contact your provider.

## Email service providers

Use the following table to determine the SMTP settings of your service provider.

### Notes

- If you encounter errors using the settings provided, then contact your service provider.
- If your service provider is not listed, then contact your provider.

- [AOL Mail](#)
- [Comcast Mail](#)
- [Gmail](#)
- [iCloud Mail](#)
- [Mail.com](#)
- [NetEase Mail \(mail.126.com\)](#)
- [NetEase Mail \(mail.163.com\)](#)
- [NetEase Mail \(mail.yeah.net\)](#)
- [Outlook Live or Microsoft 365](#)
- [QQ Mail](#)
- [Sina Mail](#)
- [Sohu Mail](#)
- [Yahoo! Mail](#)
- [Zoho Mail](#)

### AOL Mail

| Setting                     | Value                       |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Primary SMTP Gateway        | smtp.aol.com                |
| Primary SMTP Gateway Port   | 587                         |
| Use SSL/TLS                 | Required                    |
| Require Trusted Certificate | Disabled                    |
| Reply Address               | Your email address          |
| SMTP Server Authentication  | Login / Plain               |
| Device-Initiated Email      | Use Device SMTP Credentials |



| Setting         | Value                                                                                                                                                              |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Device UserID   | Your email address                                                                                                                                                 |
| Device Password | App password                                                                                                                                                       |
|                 | <b>Note:</b> To create an app password, go to the <a href="#">AOL Account Security</a> page, log in to your account, and then click <b>Generate app password</b> . |

### Comcast Mail

| Setting                     | Value                       |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Primary SMTP Gateway        | smtp.comcast.net            |
| Primary SMTP Gateway Port   | 587                         |
| Use SSL/TLS                 | Required                    |
| Require Trusted Certificate | Disabled                    |
| Reply Address               | Your email address          |
| SMTP Server Authentication  | Login / Plain               |
| Device-Initiated Email      | Use Device SMTP Credentials |
| Device UserID               | Your email address          |
| Device Password             | Account password            |

### Gmail™

**Note:** Make sure that two-step verification is enabled on your Google account. To enable two-step verification, go to the [Google Account Security](#) page, log in to your account, and then from the “Signing in to Google” section, click **2-Step Verification**.

| Setting                     | Value                       |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Primary SMTP Gateway        | smtp.gmail.com              |
| Primary SMTP Gateway Port   | 587                         |
| Use SSL/TLS                 | Required                    |
| Require Trusted Certificate | Disabled                    |
| Reply Address               | Your email address          |
| SMTP Server Authentication  | Login / Plain               |
| Device-Initiated Email      | Use Device SMTP Credentials |

| Setting         | Value                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|-----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Device UserID   | Your email address                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Device Password | App password <div> <b>Notes</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To create an app password, go to the <a href="#">Google Account Security</a> page, log in to your account, and then from the “Signing in to Google” section, click <b>App passwords</b>.</li> <li>“App passwords” shows only if two-step verification is enabled.</li> </ul> </div> |

### iCloud Mail

**Note:** Make sure that two-step verification is enabled on your account.

| Setting                     | Value                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Primary SMTP Gateway        | smtp.mail.me.com                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Primary SMTP Gateway Port   | 587                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Use SSL/TLS                 | Required                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Require Trusted Certificate | Disabled                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Reply Address               | Your email address                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| SMTP Server Authentication  | Login / Plain                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| Device-Initiated Email      | Use Device SMTP Credentials                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Device UserID               | Your email address                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Device Password             | App password <div> <b>Note:</b> To create an app password, go to the <a href="#">iCloud Account Management</a> page, log in to your account, and then from the Security section, click <b>Generate Password</b>. </div> |

### Mail.com

| Setting                     | Value                       |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Primary SMTP Gateway        | smtp.mail.com               |
| Primary SMTP Gateway Port   | 587                         |
| Use SSL/TLS                 | Required                    |
| Require Trusted Certificate | Disabled                    |
| Reply Address               | Your email address          |
| SMTP Server Authentication  | Login / Plain               |
| Device-Initiated Email      | Use Device SMTP Credentials |
| Device UserID               | Your email address          |
| Device Password             | Account password            |

### NetEase Mail (mail.126.com)

**Note:** Make sure that the SMTP service is enabled on your account. To enable the service, from the NetEase Mail home page, click **Settings** › **POP3/SMTP/IMAP**, and then enable either **IMAP/SMTP service** or **POP3/SMTP service**.

| Setting                     | Value                       |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Primary SMTP Gateway        | smtp.126.com                |
| Primary SMTP Gateway Port   | 465                         |
| Use SSL/TLS                 | Required                    |
| Require Trusted Certificate | Disabled                    |
| Reply Address               | Your email address          |
| SMTP Server Authentication  | Login / Plain               |
| Device-Initiated Email      | Use Device SMTP Credentials |
| Device UserID               | Your email address          |
| Device Password             | Authorization password      |

**Note:** The authorization password is provided when IMAP/SMTP service or POP3/SMTP service is enabled.

### NetEase Mail (mail.163.com)

**Note:** Make sure that the SMTP service is enabled on your account. To enable the service, from the NetEase Mail home page, click **Settings** › **POP3/SMTP/IMAP**, and then enable either **IMAP/SMTP service** or **POP3/SMTP service**.

| Setting                     | Value                       |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Primary SMTP Gateway        | smtp.163.com                |
| Primary SMTP Gateway Port   | 465                         |
| Use SSL/TLS                 | Required                    |
| Require Trusted Certificate | Disabled                    |
| Reply Address               | Your email address          |
| SMTP Server Authentication  | Login / Plain               |
| Device-Initiated Email      | Use Device SMTP Credentials |
| Device UserID               | Your email address          |
| Device Password             | Authorization password      |

**Note:** The authorization password is provided when IMAP/SMTP service or POP3/SMTP service is enabled.

### NetEase Mail (mail.yeah.net)

**Note:** Make sure that the SMTP service is enabled on your account. To enable the service, from the NetEase Mail home page, click **Settings** › **POP3/SMTP/IMAP**, and then enable either **IMAP/SMTP service** or **POP3/SMTP service**.

| Setting                     | Value                       |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Primary SMTP Gateway        | smtp.yeah.net               |
| Primary SMTP Gateway Port   | 465                         |
| Use SSL/TLS                 | Required                    |
| Require Trusted Certificate | Disabled                    |
| Reply Address               | Your email address          |
| SMTP Server Authentication  | Login / Plain               |
| Device-Initiated Email      | Use Device SMTP Credentials |
| Device UserID               | Your email address          |

| Setting         | Value                                                                                                                                     |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Device Password | Authorization password<br><br><b>Note:</b> The authorization password is provided when IMAP/SMTP service or POP3/SMTP service is enabled. |

### Outlook Live or Microsoft 365

These settings apply to outlook.com and hotmail.com email domains, and Microsoft 365 accounts.

| Setting                     | Value (Simple Authentication) | Value (OAuth2.0 Authentication)                             |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| Primary SMTP Gateway        | smtp.office365.com            | smtp.office365.com                                          |
| Primary SMTP Gateway Port   | 587                           | 587                                                         |
| Use SSL/TLS                 | Required                      | Required                                                    |
| Require Trusted Certificate | Disabled                      | Disabled                                                    |
| Reply Address               | Your email address            | The email address used to register OAuth 2.0 Authentication |
| SMTP Server Authentication  | Login / Plain                 | OAuth2.0                                                    |
| User-Initiated Email        | N/A                           | Use Device SMTP Credentials                                 |
| Device-Initiated Email      | Use Device SMTP Credentials   | Use Device SMTP Credentials                                 |
| Device UserID               | Your email address            | N/A                                                         |

| Setting                | Value (Simple Authentication)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Value (OAuth2.0 Authentication) |
|------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <b>Device Password</b> | Account password or app password<br><br><div> <b>Notes</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For accounts with two-step verification disabled, use your account password.</li> <li>For outlook.com or hotmail.com accounts with two-step verification enabled, use an app password. To create an app password, go to the <a href="#">Outlook Live Account Management</a> page, and then log in to your account.</li> </ul> </div> | N/A                             |

**Note:** For more setup options for business using Microsoft 365, go to the [Microsoft 365 help page](#).

### QQ Mail

**Note:** Make sure that the SMTP service is enabled on your account. To enable the service, from the QQ Mail home page, click **Settings** › **Account**, and then from the POP3/IMAP/SMTP/Exchange/CardDAV/CalDAV Service section, enable either **POP3/SMTP service** or **IMAP/SMTP service**.

| Setting                     | Value       |
|-----------------------------|-------------|
| <b>Primary SMTP Gateway</b> | smtp.qq.com |

| Setting                     | Value                       |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Primary SMTP Gateway Port   | 587                         |
| Use SSL/TLS                 | Required                    |
| Require Trusted Certificate | Disabled                    |
| Reply Address               | Your email address          |
| SMTP Server Authentication  | Login / Plain               |
| Device-Initiated Email      | Use Device SMTP Credentials |
| Device UserID               | Your email address          |
| Device Password             | Authorization code          |

**Note:** To generate an authorization code, from the QQ Mail home page, click **Settings > Account**. From the POP3/IMAP/SMTP/Exchange/CardDAV/CalDAV Service section, click **Generate authorization code**.

### Sina Mail

**Note:** Make sure that the POP3/SMTP service is enabled on your account. To enable the service, from the Sina Mail home page, click **Settings > More settings > User-end POP/IMAP/SMTP**, and then enable **POP3/SMTP service**.

| Setting                     | Value                       |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Primary SMTP Gateway        | smtp.sina.com               |
| Primary SMTP Gateway Port   | 587                         |
| Use SSL/TLS                 | Required                    |
| Require Trusted Certificate | Disabled                    |
| Reply Address               | Your email address          |
| SMTP Server Authentication  | Login / Plain               |
| Device-Initiated Email      | Use Device SMTP Credentials |
| Device UserID               | Your email address          |

| Setting         | Value                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Device Password | Authorization code<br><br><b>Note:</b> To create an authorization code, from the email home page, click <b>Settings</b> › <b>More settings</b> › <b>User-end POP/IMAP/SMTP</b> , and then enable <b>Authorization code status</b> . |

### Sohu Mail

**Note:** Make sure that the SMTP service is enabled on your account. To enable the service, from the Sohu Mail home page, click **Options** › **Settings** › **POP3/SMTP/IMAP**, and then enable either **IMAP/SMTP service** or **POP3/SMTP service**.

| Setting                     | Value                                                                                                                                 |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Primary SMTP Gateway        | smtp.sohu.com                                                                                                                         |
| Primary SMTP Gateway Port   | 465                                                                                                                                   |
| Use SSL/TLS                 | Required                                                                                                                              |
| Require Trusted Certificate | Disabled                                                                                                                              |
| Reply Address               | Your email address                                                                                                                    |
| SMTP Server Authentication  | Login / Plain                                                                                                                         |
| Device-Initiated Email      | Use Device SMTP Credentials                                                                                                           |
| Device UserID               | Your email address                                                                                                                    |
| Device Password             | Independent password<br><br><b>Note:</b> The independent password is provided when IMAP/SMTP service or POP3/SMTP service is enabled. |

### Yahoo! Mail

| Setting                     | Value               |
|-----------------------------|---------------------|
| Primary SMTP Gateway        | smtp.mail.yahoo.com |
| Primary SMTP Gateway Port   | 587                 |
| Use SSL/TLS                 | Required            |
| Require Trusted Certificate | Disabled            |



| Setting                    | Value                                                                                                                                                                |
|----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Reply Address              | Your email address                                                                                                                                                   |
| SMTP Server Authentication | Login / Plain                                                                                                                                                        |
| Device-Initiated Email     | Use Device SMTP Credentials                                                                                                                                          |
| Device UserID              | Your email address                                                                                                                                                   |
| Device Password            | App password                                                                                                                                                         |
|                            | <b>Note:</b> To create an app password, go to the <a href="#">Yahoo Account Security</a> page, log in to your account, and then click <b>Generate app password</b> . |

### Zoho Mail

| Setting                     | Value                       |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Primary SMTP Gateway        | smtp.zoho.com               |
| Primary SMTP Gateway Port   | 587                         |
| Use SSL/TLS                 | Required                    |
| Require Trusted Certificate | Disabled                    |
| Reply Address               | Your email address          |
| SMTP Server Authentication  | Login / Plain               |
| Device-Initiated Email      | Use Device SMTP Credentials |
| Device UserID               | Your email address          |

| Setting                | Value                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Device Password</b> | Account password or app password <div> <p><b>Notes</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For accounts with two-step verification disabled, use your account password.</li> <li>• For accounts with two-step verification enabled, use an app password. To create an app password, go to the <a href="#">Zoho Mail Account Security</a> page, log in to your account, and then from the Application-Specific Passwords section, click <b>Generate New Password</b>.</li> </ul> </div> |

## Loading paper and specialty media

### Setting the paper size and type

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Paper** › **Tray Configuration** › **Paper Size/Type**.
2. Select a paper source.
3. Set the paper size and type.

### Setting the paper weight and texture

Selecting the correct paper weight and texture settings in your printer to match the paper type that you loaded helps prevent print quality issues.

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Paper** › **Media Configuration** › **Media Type Setup**.
2. Select the paper type, and then adjust the **Weight** and **Texture** settings.

Use the following table for reference.

**Note:**

- Check the ream packaging to confirm the weight of the paper that you loaded.
- Paper type and weight support varies by printer model. For more information, see [Supported paper types on page 26](#) and [Supported paper weights on page 27](#).

|                                                    | Printer settings |              |               |                          |                                      |
|----------------------------------------------------|------------------|--------------|---------------|--------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Paper weight specs                                 | Paper type       | Paper weight | Paper texture | Fuser temperature        | Toner transfer setting               |
| 60–74 g/<br>m <sup>2</sup> (16–<br>20-lb<br>bond)  | Plain<br>Paper   | Light        | Smooth        | Light<br>paper low       | Light<br>weight,<br>Copy/<br>Office  |
| 60–74 g/<br>m <sup>2</sup> (16–<br>20-lb<br>bond)  | Plain<br>Paper   | Light        | Normal        | Light<br>paper<br>normal | Light<br>weight,<br>Copy/<br>Office  |
| 60–74 g/<br>m <sup>2</sup> (16–<br>20-lb<br>bond)  | Plain<br>Paper   | Light        | Rough         | Light<br>paper high      | Light<br>weight,<br>Copy/<br>Office  |
| 74–90 g/<br>m <sup>2</sup> (20–<br>24-lb<br>bond)  | Plain<br>Paper   | Normal       | Smooth        | Plain<br>paper low       | Normal<br>weight,<br>Copy/<br>Office |
| 74–90 g/<br>m <sup>2</sup> (20–<br>24-lb<br>bond)  | Plain<br>Paper   | Normal       | Normal        | Plain<br>paper<br>normal | Normal<br>weight,<br>Copy/<br>Office |
| 74–90 g/<br>m <sup>2</sup> (20–<br>24-lb<br>bond)  | Plain<br>Paper   | Normal       | Rough         | Plain<br>paper high      | Normal<br>weight,<br>Copy/<br>Office |
| 90–120 g/<br>m <sup>2</sup> (24–<br>32-lb<br>bond) | Plain<br>Paper   | Heavy        | Smooth        | Heavy<br>paper low       | Heavywei<br>ght,<br>Premium          |
| 90–120 g/<br>m <sup>2</sup> (24–<br>32-lb<br>bond) | Plain<br>Paper   | Heavy        | Normal        | Heavy<br>paper<br>normal | Heavywei<br>ght,<br>Premium          |
| 90–120 g/<br>m <sup>2</sup> (24–<br>32-lb<br>bond) | Plain<br>Paper   | Heavy        | Rough         | Heavy<br>paper high      | Heavywei<br>ght,<br>Premium          |

|                                                              | Printer settings |              |               |                          |                          |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|--------------|---------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| Paper weight specs                                           | Paper type       | Paper weight | Paper texture | Fuser temperature        | Toner transfer setting   |
| 60–74 g/<br>m <sup>2</sup> Cotton<br>(16–20-lb<br>bond)      | Rough<br>Cotton  | Light        | Rough         | Heavy<br>paper<br>normal | Up to 25%<br>cotton      |
| 74–90 g/<br>m <sup>2</sup> Cotton<br>(20–24-lb<br>bond)      | Rough<br>Cotton  | Normal       | Rough         | Heavy<br>paper<br>normal | Up to 25%<br>cotton      |
| 90–120 g/<br>m <sup>2</sup> Cotton<br>(24–32-lb<br>bond)     | Rough<br>Cotton  | Heavy        | Rough         | Heavy<br>paper<br>normal | 100%<br>cotton           |
| 105–165<br>g/m <sup>2</sup><br>Coated<br>(39–60-lb<br>cover) | Glossy           | Light        | Smooth        | Light<br>paper<br>normal | High<br>gloss/<br>Glossy |
| 105–165<br>g/m <sup>2</sup><br>Coated<br>(39–60-lb<br>cover) | Glossy           | Light        | Normal        | Light<br>paper<br>normal | High<br>gloss/<br>Glossy |
| 105–165<br>g/m <sup>2</sup><br>Coated<br>(39–60-lb<br>cover) | Glossy           | Light        | Rough         | Light<br>paper<br>normal | High<br>gloss/<br>Glossy |
| 165–220<br>g/m <sup>2</sup><br>Coated<br>(60–80-lb<br>cover) | Glossy           | Normal       | Smooth        | Light<br>paper high      | High<br>gloss/<br>Glossy |
| 165–220<br>g/m <sup>2</sup><br>Coated<br>(60–80-lb<br>cover) | Glossy           | Normal       | Normal        | Light<br>paper high      | High<br>gloss/<br>Glossy |

|                                                         | Printer settings |              |               |                    |                        |
|---------------------------------------------------------|------------------|--------------|---------------|--------------------|------------------------|
| Paper weight specs                                      | Paper type       | Paper weight | Paper texture | Fuser temperature  | Toner transfer setting |
| 165–220 g/m <sup>2</sup><br>Coated<br>(60–80-lb cover)  | Glossy           | Normal       | Rough         | Light paper high   | High gloss/<br>Glossy  |
| 220–300 g/m <sup>2</sup><br>Coated<br>(80–110-lb cover) | Glossy           | Heavy        | Smooth        | Heavy paper high   | High gloss/<br>Glossy  |
| 220–300 g/m <sup>2</sup><br>Coated<br>(80–110-lb cover) | Glossy           | Heavy        | Normal        | Heavy paper high   | High gloss/<br>Glossy  |
| 220–300 g/m <sup>2</sup><br>Coated<br>(80–110-lb cover) | Glossy           | Heavy        | Rough         | Heavy paper high   | High gloss/<br>Glossy  |
| 120–160 g/m <sup>2</sup> (66–90-lb index)               | Card Stock       | Light        | Smooth        | Heavy paper low    | Card Stock             |
| 120–160 g/m <sup>2</sup> (66–90-lb index)               | Card Stock       | Light        | Normal        | Heavy paper low    | Card Stock             |
| 120–160 g/m <sup>2</sup> (66–90-lb index)               | Card Stock       | Light        | Rough         | Heavy paper low    | Card Stock             |
| 160–220 g/m <sup>2</sup> (90–120-lb index)              | Card Stock       | Normal       | Smooth        | Heavy paper normal | Card Stock             |

|                                             | Printer settings |              |               |                    |                        |
|---------------------------------------------|------------------|--------------|---------------|--------------------|------------------------|
| Paper weight specs                          | Paper type       | Paper weight | Paper texture | Fuser temperature  | Toner transfer setting |
| 160–220 g/m <sup>2</sup> (90–120-lb index)  | Card Stock       | Normal       | Normal        | Heavy paper normal | Card Stock             |
| 160–220 g/m <sup>2</sup> (90–120-lb index)  | Card Stock       | Normal       | Rough         | Heavy paper normal | Card Stock             |
| 220–300 g/m <sup>2</sup> (120–166-lb index) | Card Stock       | Heavy        | Smooth        | Heavy paper high   | Card Stock             |
| 220–300 g/m <sup>2</sup> (120–166-lb index) | Card Stock       | Heavy        | Normal        | Heavy paper high   | Card Stock             |
| 220–300 g/m <sup>2</sup> (120–166-lb index) | Card Stock       | Heavy        | Rough         | Heavy paper high   | Card stock             |
| 80–130 g/m <sup>2</sup>                     | Label            | Light        | Smooth        | Heavy paper low    | Paper label            |
| 80–130 g/m <sup>2</sup>                     | Label            | Light        | Normal        | Heavy paper low    | Paper label            |
| 80–130 g/m <sup>2</sup>                     | Label            | Light        | Rough         | Heavy paper low    | Paper label            |
| 130–180 g/m <sup>2</sup>                    | Label            | Normal       | Smooth        | Heavy paper normal | Paper label            |
| 130–180 g/m <sup>2</sup>                    | Label            | Normal       | Normal        | Heavy paper normal | Paper label            |
| 130–180 g/m <sup>2</sup>                    | Label            | Normal       | Rough         | Heavy paper normal | Paper label            |
| 180–230 g/m <sup>2</sup>                    | Label            | Heavy        | Smooth        | Heavy paper high   | Paper label            |

|                                     | Printer settings |              |               |                    |                        |
|-------------------------------------|------------------|--------------|---------------|--------------------|------------------------|
| Paper weight specs                  | Paper type       | Paper weight | Paper texture | Fuser temperature  | Toner transfer setting |
| 180–230 g/m <sup>2</sup>            | Label            | Heavy        | Normal        | Heavy paper high   | Paper label            |
| 180–230 g/m <sup>2</sup>            | Label            | Heavy        | Rough         | Heavy paper high   | Paper label            |
| 160–180 g/m <sup>2</sup>            | Vinyl Label      | Light        | Smooth        | Heavy paper low    | Vinyl label            |
| 160–180 g/m <sup>2</sup>            | Vinyl Label      | Light        | Normal        | Heavy paper low    | Vinyl label            |
| 160–180 g/m <sup>2</sup>            | Vinyl Label      | Light        | Rough         | Heavy paper low    | Vinyl label            |
| 180–220 g/m <sup>2</sup>            | Vinyl Label      | Normal       | Smooth        | Heavy paper normal | Vinyl label            |
| 180–220 g/m <sup>2</sup>            | Vinyl Label      | Normal       | Normal        | Heavy paper normal | Vinyl label            |
| 180–220 g/m <sup>2</sup>            | Vinyl Label      | Normal       | Rough         | Heavy paper normal | Vinyl label            |
| 220–300 g/m <sup>2</sup>            | Vinyl Label      | Heavy        | Smooth        | Heavy paper high   | Vinyl label            |
| 220–300 g/m <sup>2</sup>            | Vinyl Label      | Heavy        | Normal        | Heavy paper high   | Vinyl label            |
| 220–300 g/m <sup>2</sup>            | Vinyl Label      | Heavy        | Rough         | Heavy paper high   | Vinyl label            |
| 52–75 g/m <sup>2</sup> (14-lb bond) | Envelope         | Light        | Smooth        | Plain paper low    | Envelope               |
| 52–75 g/m <sup>2</sup> (14-lb bond) | Envelope         | Light        | Normal        | Plain paper low    | Envelope               |
| 52–75 g/m <sup>2</sup> (14-lb bond) | Envelope         | Light        | Rough         | Plain paper low    | Envelope               |

|                                     | Printer settings |              |               |                    |                        |
|-------------------------------------|------------------|--------------|---------------|--------------------|------------------------|
| Paper weight specs                  | Paper type       | Paper weight | Paper texture | Fuser temperature  | Toner transfer setting |
| 75–90 g/m <sup>2</sup> (20-lb bond) | Envelope         | Heavy        | Smooth        | Heavy paper low    | Envelope               |
| 75–90 g/m <sup>2</sup> (20-lb bond) | Envelope         | Heavy        | Normal        | Heavy paper low    | Envelope               |
| 75–90 g/m <sup>2</sup> (20-lb bond) | 20-lb bond       | Envelope     | Heavy         | Rough              | Heavy paper low        |
| > 90 g/m <sup>2</sup>               | Envelope         | Heavy        | Smooth        | Heavy paper normal | Envelope               |
| > 90 g/m <sup>2</sup>               | Envelope         | Heavy        | Normal        | Heavy paper normal | Envelope               |
| > 90 g/m <sup>2</sup>               | Envelope         | Heavy        | Rough         | Heavy paper normal | Envelope               |

### Notes

- Light Paper uses the same transfer and fuser settings as Plain Paper–Light, based on the selected texture.
- Letterhead, Preprinted, Colored Paper, Bond, and Recycled use the same transfer and fuser settings as Plain Paper–Normal, based on the selected texture.
- Heavy Paper has the same transfer and fuser settings as Plain Paper–Heavy, based on the selected texture.
- Toner transfer is the process of placing the toner on the paper.
- Fusing is the process of melting and fixing the toner to the paper.

## Configuring Universal paper settings

The **Universal Setup** menu lets you set the width and height of a paper size that is not preset in the printer.

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** > **Paper** > **Media Configuration** > **Universal Setup**.
2. Select **All Input Trays**, and then configure the settings for the paper size that you want to customize.



## Loading trays

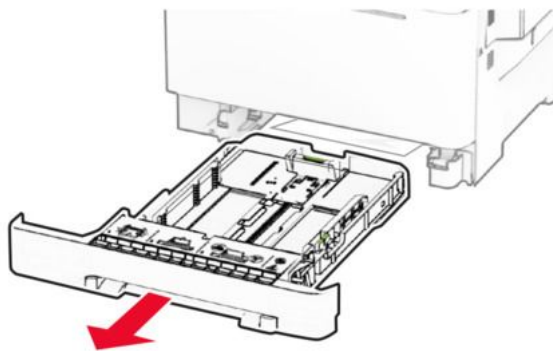


### CAUTION—TIPPING HAZARD

To reduce the risk of equipment instability, load each tray separately. Keep all other trays closed until needed.

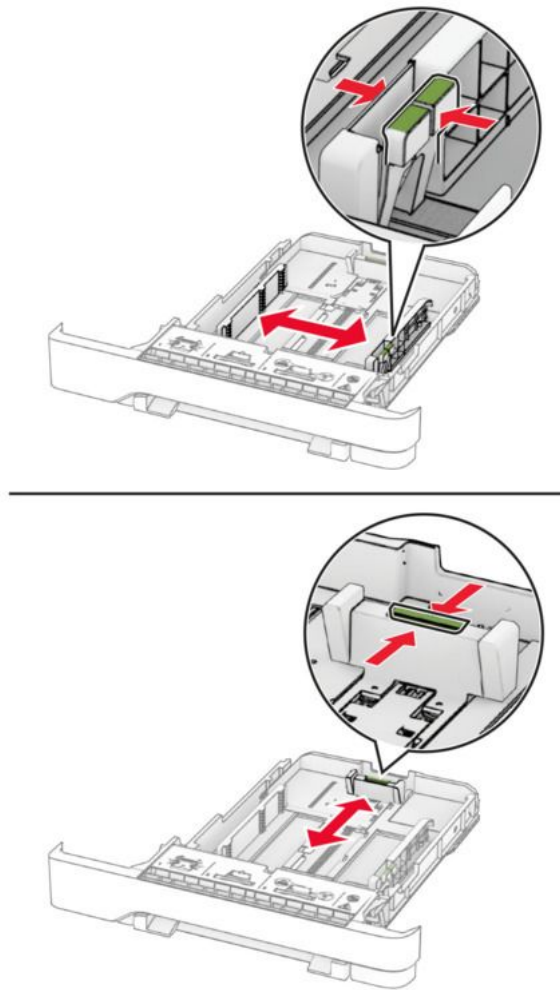
1. Remove the tray.

**Note:** To avoid jams, do not remove trays while the printer is busy.

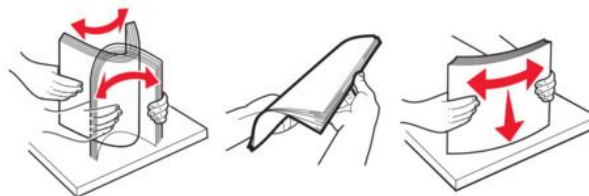


2. Adjust the guides to match the size of the paper that you are loading.

**Note:** Use the indicators on the bottom of the tray to position the guides.

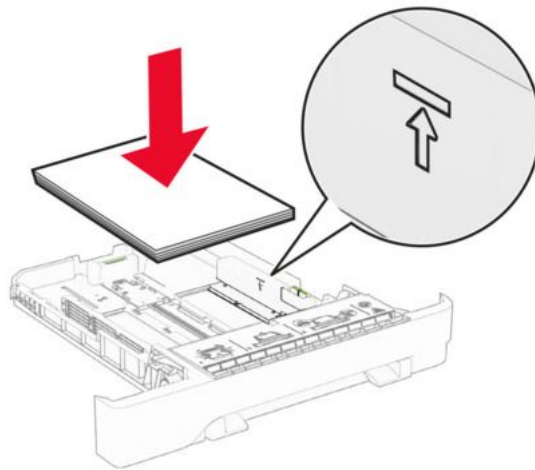


3. Flex, fan, and align the paper edges before loading.



4. Load the paper stack with the printable side faceup.

- For one-sided printing, load letterhead faceup with the header toward the front of the tray.
- For two-sided printing, load letterhead facedown with the header toward the back of the tray.
- Do not slide paper into the tray.
- Make sure that the stack height is below the maximum paper fill indicator. Overfilling may cause paper jams.



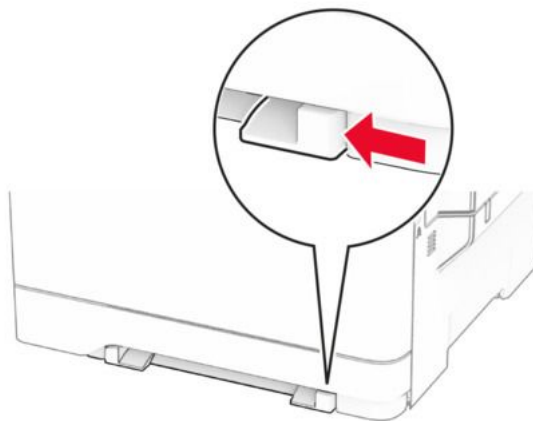
5. Insert the tray.

If necessary, set the paper size and type to match the paper loaded in the tray.

## Loading the manual feeder

1. Adjust the edge guides to match the width of the paper that you are loading.

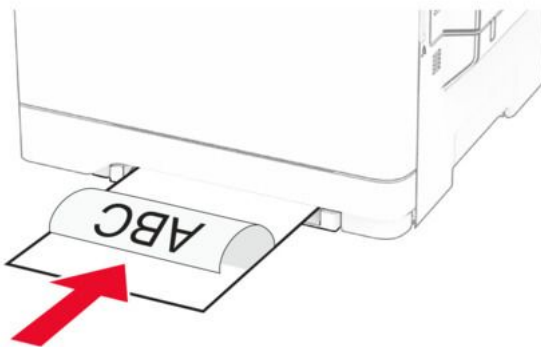
**Note:** Make sure that the guides fit snugly against the paper, but not too tight as to cause the paper to buckle.



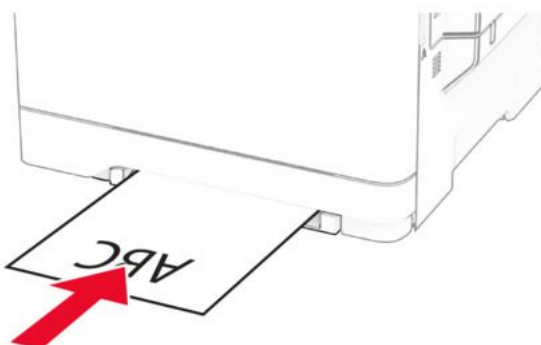
2. Load a sheet of paper with the printable side facedown.

**Note:** Make sure that the paper is loaded straight to avoid skewed or crooked print.

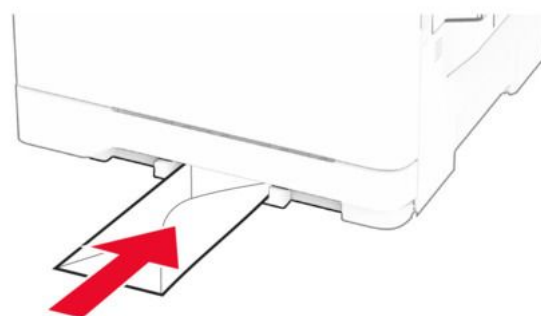
- For one-sided printing, load letterhead with the printable side facedown and the top edge entering the printer first.



- For two-sided printing, load letterhead with the printable side faceup and the top edge entering the printer last.



- Load envelope with the flap side up and against the right side of the paper guide.



3. Feed the paper until its leading edge gets pulled in.

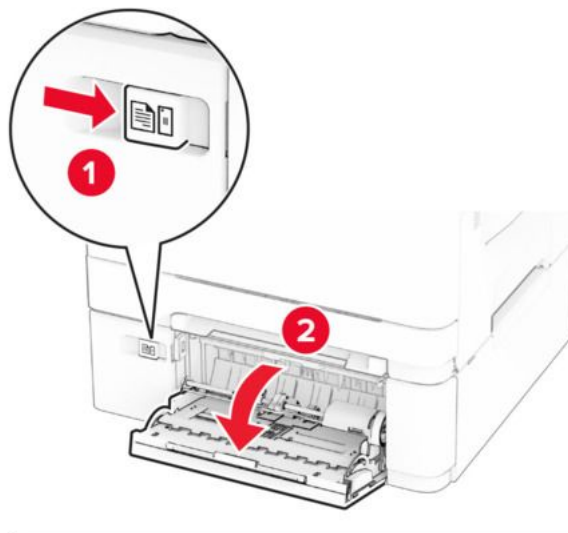
### **Warning—Potential Damage**

To avoid paper jams, do not force paper into the manual feeder.

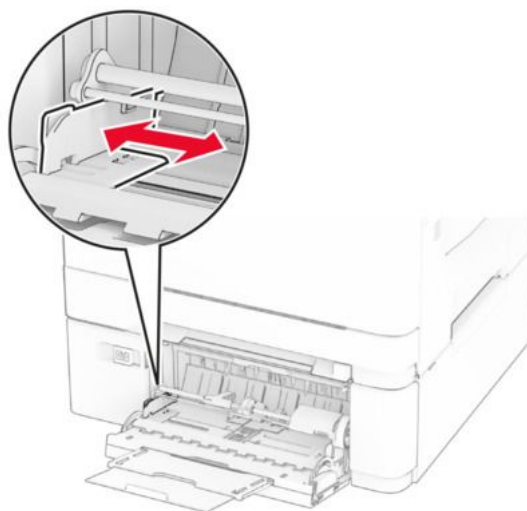
## Loading the multipurpose feeder

**Note:** The multipurpose feeder is available only if the optional 650-sheet duo tray is installed.

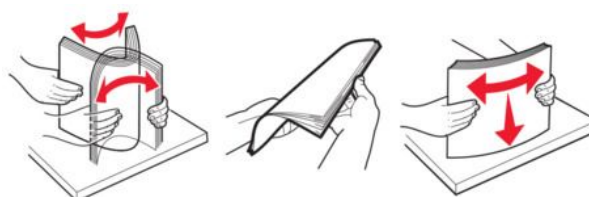
1. Open the multipurpose feeder.



2. Adjust the guide to match the size of the paper that you are loading.



3. Flex, fan, and align the paper edges before loading.

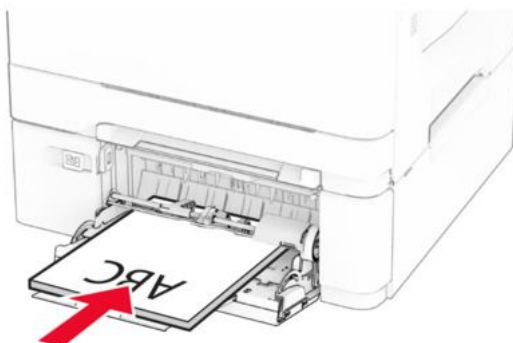


4. Load the paper.

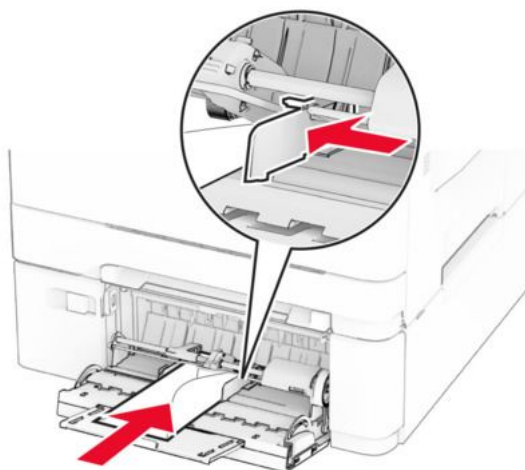
- For one-sided printing, load letterhead with the printable side facedown and the top edge entering the printer first.



- For two-sided printing, load letterhead with the printable side faceup and the top edge entering the printer last.



- Load envelopes with the flap side up and against the right side of the paper guide.



### **Warning—Potential Damage**

Do not use envelopes with stamps, clasps, snaps, windows, coated linings, or self-stick adhesives.

5. From the Paper menu in the control panel, set the paper size and type to match the paper loaded in the multipurpose feeder.

## Linking trays

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Paper › Tray Configuration › Paper Size/Type**.
2. Select the trays that you want to link, and then set the paper size and paper type.

### Notes

- Make sure the trays are loaded with the same paper size and paper type.
- Make sure the paper in each tray is loaded in the same direction.

3. Return to the home screen, and then navigate to **Settings › Device › Maintenance › Configuration Menu › Tray Configuration**.
4. Set **Tray Linking** to **Automatic**.

To unlink the trays, make sure that no trays have the same paper size and paper type settings.

### Warning—Potential Damage

The temperature of the fuser varies according to the specified paper type. To avoid printing issues, match the paper type setting in the printer with the paper loaded in the tray.

## Installing and updating software, drivers, and firmware

### Installing the printer software

Installing printer software lets your printer communicate with your computer. It enables full functionality, ensures compatibility with your operating system, and simplifies network or wireless setup. Installing the printer software also installs the print, scan, and fax drivers.

**Note:** Depending on your operating system, you may use the Microsoft IPP Class Driver or AirPrint to connect the printer to your computer. For more information, go to the Microsoft or Apple support site.

Before you begin, make sure that:

- For network printers, the printer and computer are connected to the same network. Write down the printer IP address that appears at the top of the printer display.
  - For local printers, the printer is connected to the computer with a USB cable.
1. Go to <https://support.lexmark.com>, and then click **Drivers & downloads**.
  2. In the **Search by Device Model** field, type the printer model, and then click **Find Drivers & Downloads**.
  3. In the **Recommended Driver** section, click **Download Driver Package**.

**Note:** If your computer runs on the Linux operating system, then select a driver from the **Additional downloads compatible with [printer model]** section.

4. Click **Start Download**.
5. Run the installer, and then follow the on-screen instructions.

## Adding printers to a computer

Before you begin, do one of the following:

- Connect the printer and the computer to the same network, either Wi-Fi or Ethernet. For more information on connecting the printer to a Wi-Fi network, see [Connecting the printer to a Wi-Fi network on page 98](#).
- Enable the **Wi-Fi Direct** setting. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings > Network/Ports > Wi-Fi Direct > Enable Wi-Fi Direct**.
- Connect the printer to the computer using a USB cable. For more information on the location of the printer USB port, see [Attaching cables on page 29](#).

### For Windows users

1. Install the print driver on the computer. For more information, see [Installing the printer software on page 79](#).
2. Open **Printers & scanners**.
3. Click **Add device**, and then select the printer that you want to add.

If the printer that you want to add does not appear on the list, then do either of the following:

- For Wi-Fi Direct enabled printers, click **Show Wi-Fi Direct printers**, select a printer, click **Add device**, and then follow the on-screen instructions.
- For Ethernet-connected printers, click **Add a new device manually**, and then from the **Add Printer** window, do the following:
  1. Select **Add a printer using an IP address or hostname**, and then click **Next**.
  2. In the **Device type** field, select **TCP/IP Device**.
  3. In the **Hostname or IP address** field, type the printer IP address, and then click **Next**.

#### Notes

- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

4. Select a print driver, and then click **Next**.
5. Select **Use the driver that is currently installed (recommended)**, and then click **Next**.
6. Type a printer name, and then click **Next**.
7. Click **Finish**.

### For Macintosh users

1. Open **Printers & Scanners**.
2. Click **Add Printer, Scanner, or Fax**, and then select a printer.



### Notes

- If you want custom printing features, then install the Lexmark print driver. For more information, see [Installing the printer software on page 79](#).
- If the Lexmark print driver is already installed, then do the following:
  1. In the **Use** menu, choose **Select Software**, and then choose the Lexmark print driver.
  2. Click **OK**.

3. Click **Add**.

**Note:** Depending on your printer model, a dialog may appear asking you to add a Fax printer.

## Exporting a configuration file

Exporting a configuration file lets you save the current settings of your printer to a file, which you can use as a backup or apply to another printer.

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

### Note:

- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

2. From the Embedded Web Server, click **Export Configuration**.
3. Select a configuration to export.

**Note:** Depending on the configuration that you selected, the files are exported in either ZIP or CSV format.

## Importing a configuration file

Importing a configuration file lets you apply previously saved settings to your printer. This is useful when restoring a backup or setting up another printer with the same configuration.

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

### Note:

- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

2. From the Embedded Web Server, click **Import Configuration**.
3. Browse to the location that the file is saved.

**Note:** Depending on the configuration that you selected, the files are saved in either ZIP or CSV format.

4. Click **Import**.

## Adding available options in the print driver

### For Windows users

1. Open **Printers & scanners**.
2. Select the printer that you want to update, and then do either of the following:
  - For Windows 7 or later, select **Printer properties**.
  - For earlier versions, select **Properties**.
3. Navigate to the **Configuration** tab, and then select **Update Now - Ask Printer**.
4. Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.

### For Macintosh users

1. Open **Printers & Scanners**.
2. Click **Add Printer, Scanner, or Fax**, and then select a printer.
3. Choose a print driver.
4. Apply the changes.

## Printer firmware instructions

### Checking the printer firmware version

#### Using the Embedded Web Server

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

**Note:**

- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

2. Click **Reports > Device > Device Information**.
3. Look for **Base**.

**Note:** The firmware version appears as sets of letters and numbers separated by periods. For example, ABCDE.123.123.

### Using the control panel

1. From the home screen navigate to **Settings** > **Device** > **About this printer**.
2. Look for **Firmware Version**.

**Note:** The firmware version appears as sets of letters and numbers separated by periods. For example, ABCDE.123.123.

### Downloading the printer firmware

1. Go to [www.lexmark.com/downloads](http://www.lexmark.com/downloads), and then click **Drivers & downloads**.
2. In the **Search by Device Model** field, type the printer model, and then click **Find Drivers & Downloads**.
3. In the **Recommended Firmware** section, **Download Firmware Package**.
4. Accept the End-User License Agreement, and then click **Start Download**.
5. Run the installer, and then follow the on-screen instructions.

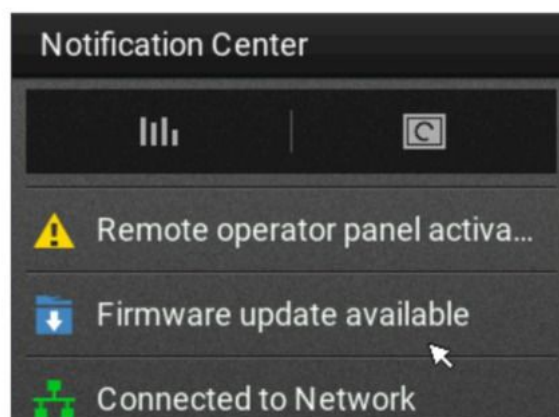
### Updating firmware

#### Updating the firmware using the control panel

#### Using the Notifications center

**Note:** These instructions apply only to some printer models.

1. From the home screen, tap the notification icon to go to the Notifications center.
2. Select **Firmware update available**.



3. Select **Install now**.



The printer restarts automatically after the update.

### Using the Settings menu

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Device**.
2. Depending on your printer model, do either of the following:
  - Select **Firmware Update › Check for updates**.
  - Select **Update firmware › Check for updates now**.
3. If an update is available, then select **Install now**.

The printer restarts automatically after the update.

### Updating the firmware using the Embedded Web Server

Before you begin, make sure that:

- You have downloaded the firmware and saved it on your computer or flash drive. For more information, see [Downloading the printer firmware on page 83](#).
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

### Using the update button

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

#### Notes

- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

2. Click **Device**.
3. Depending on your printer model, do either of the following:
  - Select **Firmware Update › Check for updates**.

- Select **Update firmware** › **Check for updates now**.
- 4. If an update is available, then select **Install now**.

The printer restarts automatically after the update.

### Using the firmware flash file (.fls)

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

#### Notes

- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

2. Click **Device**.
3. Click **Firmware Update**.
4. In the **Update Firmware from File** section, click **Browse**.
5. Search, and then select the **.fls** file.
6. Click **Upload**.

The printer restarts automatically after the update.

### Updating the firmware using a flash drive

Before you begin, make sure that:

- You have downloaded the firmware and saved it on your computer or flash drive. For more information, see [Downloading the printer firmware on page 83](#).
- The flash drive is formatted to FAT32.

1. Insert the flash drive into the front USB port of the printer.

The flash drive contents appear automatically on the printer display. If the files do not appear, then select **USB Drive** on the home screen.

2. Search, and then select the **.fls** file.
3. Select **Update Code**.

The printer restarts automatically after the update.

## Installing hardware options

### Available internal options

- Intelligent storage drive (ISD)
  - Fonts
    - Simplified Chinese
    - Traditional Chinese

- Japanese
- Korean
- Arabic
- Mass storage
- Hard disk
- Licensed features
  - IPDS
  - Bar Code

### Notes

- An ISD or a hard disk is required to activate Forms Merge and some IPDS features.
- Some options are available only in some printer models. For more information, contact [customer support](#).

## Installing optional trays



### CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD

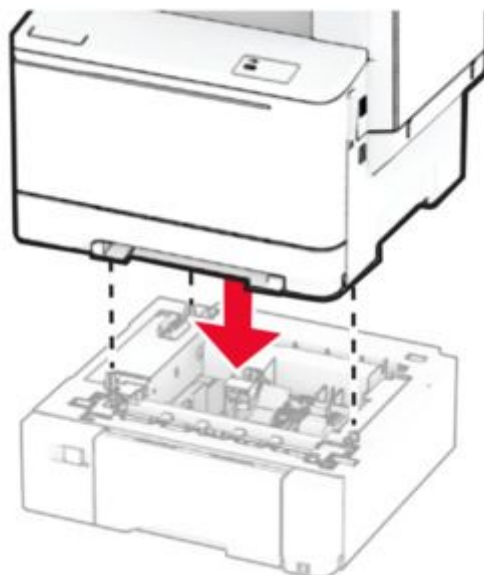
To avoid the risk of electrical shock, if you are accessing the controller board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

1. Turn off the printer.
2. Unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet, and then from the printer.
3. Unpack the optional tray, and then remove all packing material.
4. Align the printer with the optional tray, and then lower the printer into place.



### CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY

If the printer weight is greater than 20 kg (44 lb), then it may require two or more people to lift it safely.



**Note:** To avoid invalid configuration, when installing both the 550-sheet tray and 650-sheet tray, always place the 550-sheet tray below the 650-sheet tray.

5. Connect the power cord to the printer, and then to the electrical outlet.



**CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY**

To avoid the risk of fire or electrical shock, connect the power cord to an appropriately rated and properly grounded electrical outlet that is near the product and easily accessible.

6. Turn on the printer.

Add the tray in the print driver to make it available for print jobs. For more information, see [Adding available options in the print driver on page 82](#).

## Installing the intelligent storage drive



**CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD**

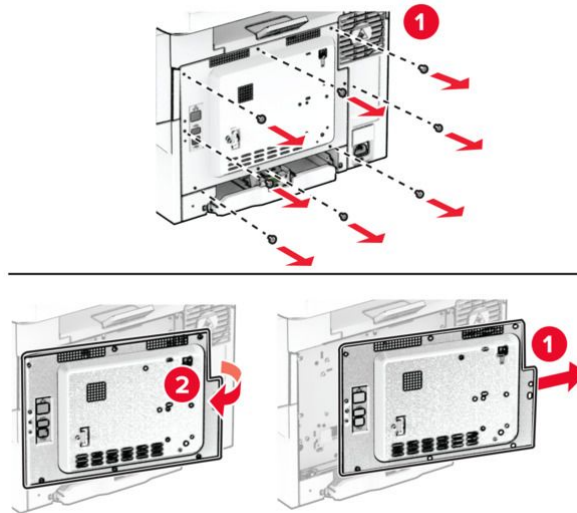
To avoid the risk of electrical shock, if you are accessing the controller board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

1. Turn off the printer.

2. Unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet, and then from the printer.
3. Using a flat-head screwdriver, remove the controller board shield.

### **Warning—Potential Damage**

Controller board electronic components are easily damaged by static electricity. Touch a metal surface on the printer before touching any controller board components or connectors.



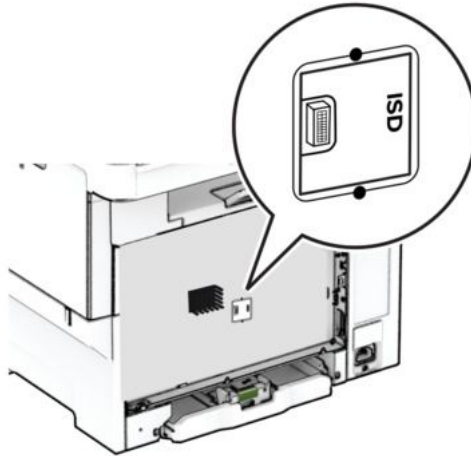
4. Unpack the intelligent storage drive (ISD).

### **Warning—Potential Damage**

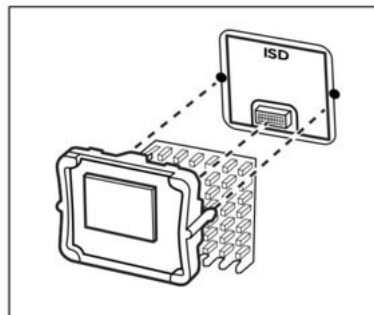
Avoid touching the connection points along the edge of the card.

5. Locate the ISD connector.

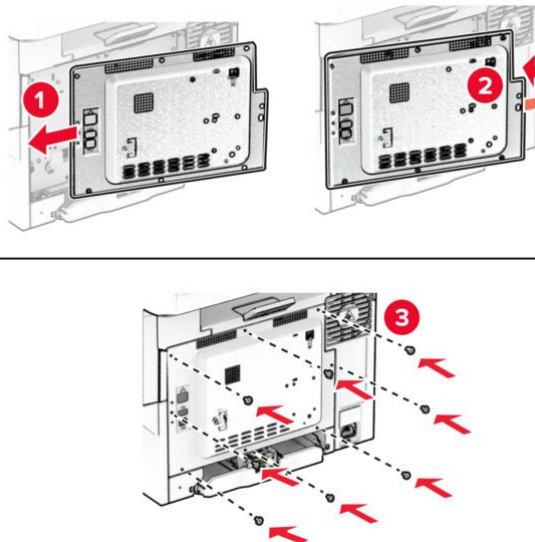




6. Insert the storage drive to the ISD connector.



7. Attach the controller board shield, and then install the screws.



8. Connect the power cord to the printer, and then to the electrical outlet.



### **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY**

To avoid the risk of fire or electrical shock, connect the power cord to an appropriately rated and properly grounded electrical outlet that is near the product and easily accessible.

9. Turn on the printer.

## Installing a printer hard disk



### **CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD**

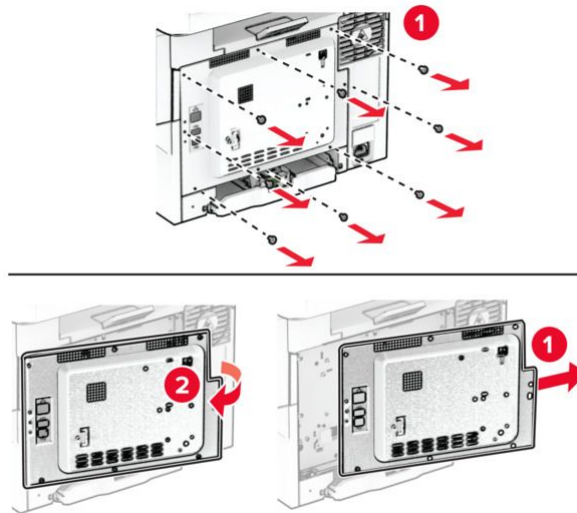
To avoid the risk of electrical shock, if you are accessing the controller board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

**Note:** This task requires a flat-head screwdriver.

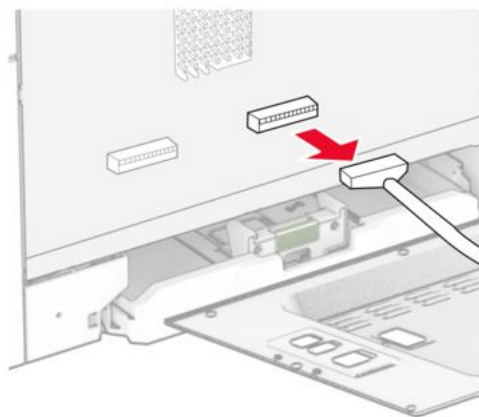
1. Turn off the printer.
2. Unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet, and then from the printer.
3. Remove the controller board shield.

### Warning—Potential Damage

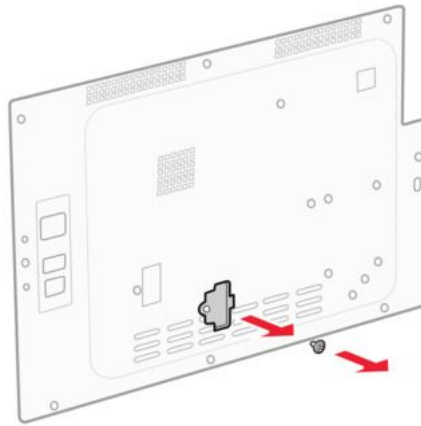
Controller board electronic components are easily damaged by static electricity. Touch a metal surface on the printer before touching any controller board components or connectors.



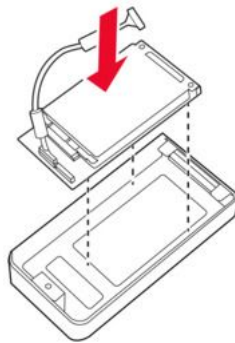
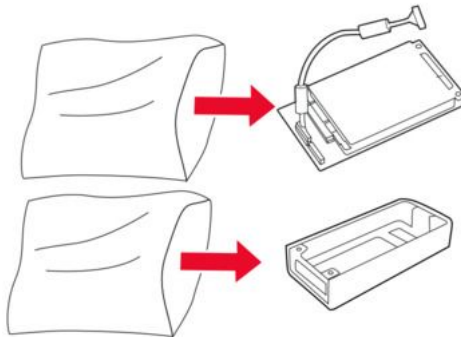
4. Disconnect the fax interface cable from the controller board.



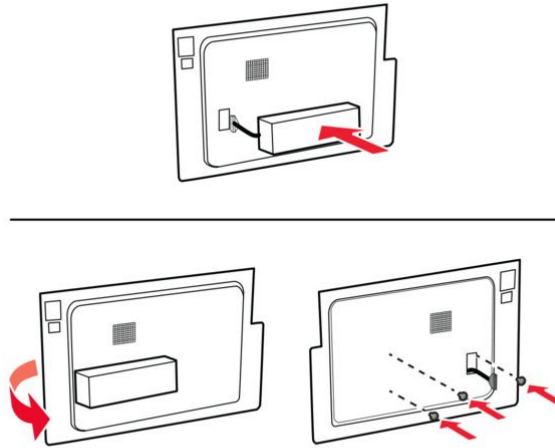
5. Remove the hard disk port cover from the controller board shield.



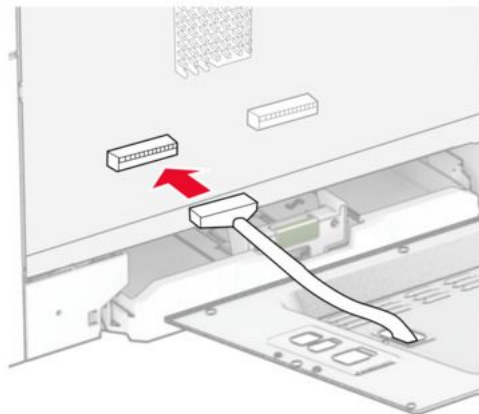
6. Unpack, and then assemble the hard disk.



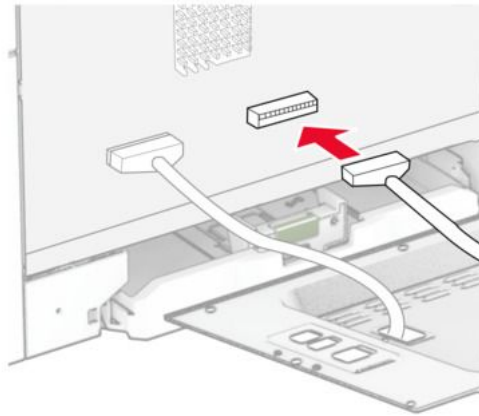
7. Attach the hard disk to the controller board shield.



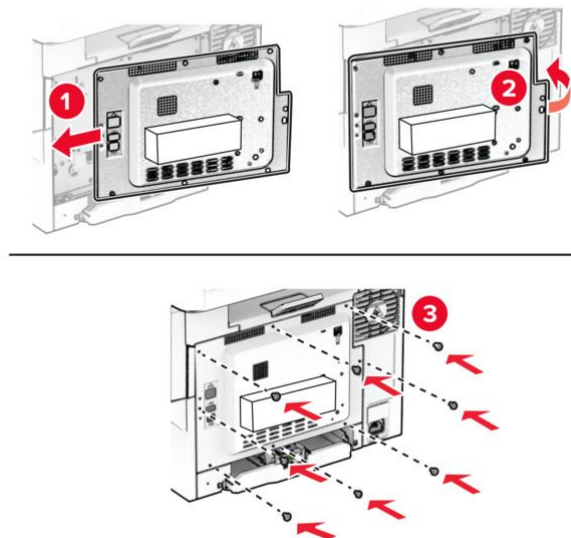
8. Connect the hard disk interface cable to the controller board.



9. Connect the fax interface cable to the controller board.



10. Attach the controller board shield, and then install the screws.



11. Connect the power cord to the printer, and then to the electrical outlet.

**CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY**

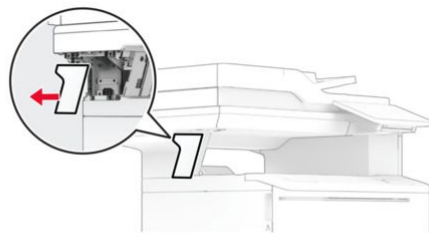
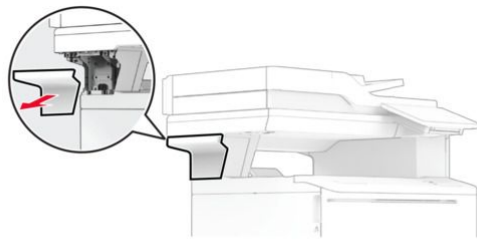
To avoid the risk of fire or electrical shock, connect the power cord to an appropriately rated and properly grounded electrical outlet that is near the product and easily accessible.

12. Turn on the printer.

## Installing the convenience stapler

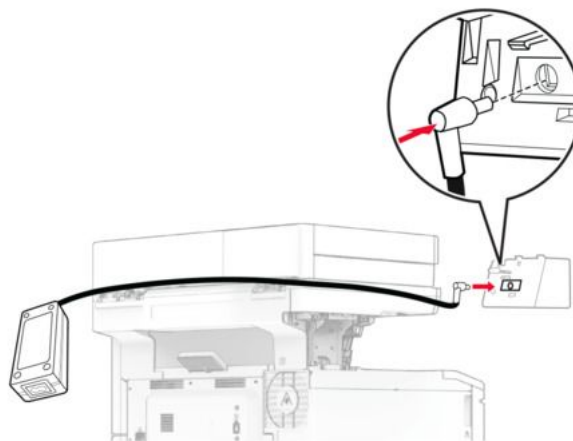
1. Turn off the printer.
2. Unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet, and then from the printer.
3. Unpack the convenience stapler.
4. Remove the column covers.

**Note:** Do not throw away the column covers.

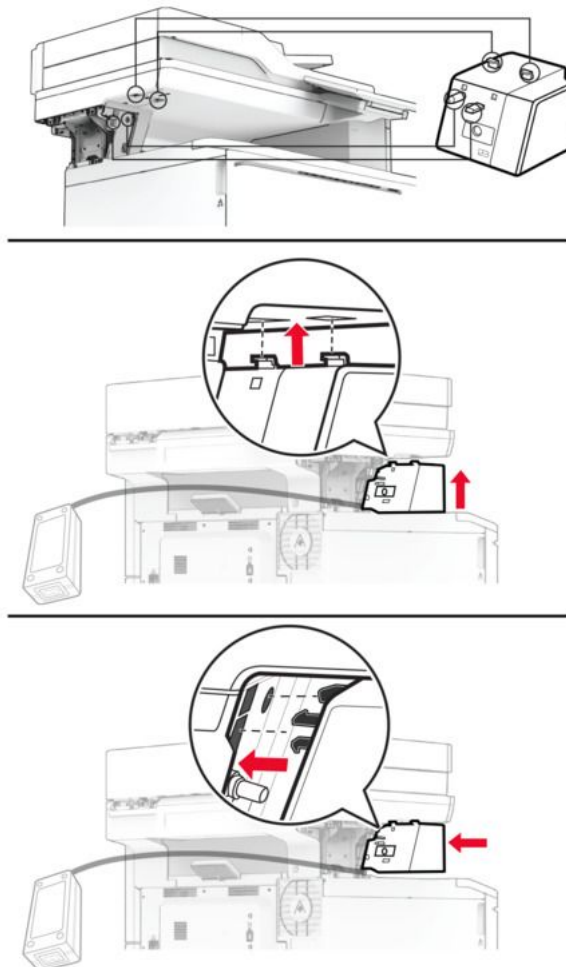


5. Insert the power supply through the printer, and then connect it to the convenience stapler.

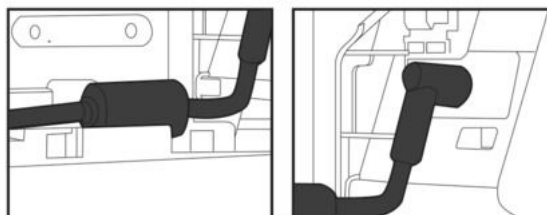
**Note:** To avoid damaging the convenience stapler, use only the power supply that came with it.



6. Install the convenience stapler.

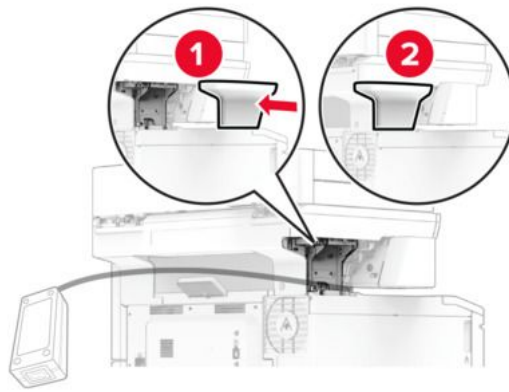


7. Position the power supply properly.

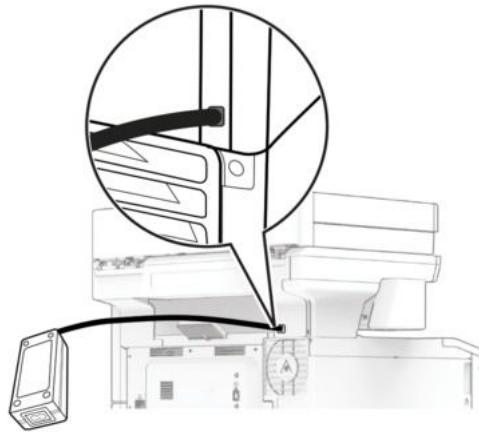


8. Attach the column cover.





**Note:** Secure the power supply properly.



9. Connect one end of the stapler power cord to the power supply, and then the other end to the electrical outlet.
10. Connect one end of the printer power cord to the printer, and then the other end to the electrical outlet.



### **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY**

To avoid the risk of fire or electrical shock, connect the power cord to an appropriately rated and properly grounded electrical outlet that is near the product and easily accessible.

11. Turn on the printer.

# Networking

## Wireless support

| Printer model | Machine type | Model number | Wireless |
|---------------|--------------|--------------|----------|
| CX532adwe     | 7531         | 276          | X        |
|               | 7531         | 286          | ✓        |
| CX635adwe     | 7531         | 676          | X        |
|               | 7531         | 686          | ✓        |
| XC2335        | 7531         | 289          | ✓        |
| XC2342        | 7531         | 689          | ✓        |

## Connecting the printer to a Wi-Fi network

Before you begin, make sure that:

- **Active Adapter** is set to **Auto**. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Network/Ports › Network Overview › Active Adapter**.
- The Ethernet cable is not connected to the printer.

### Using the control panel

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Network/Ports › Wireless › Setup On Printer Panel › Choose Network**.
2. Select a Wi-Fi network, and then type the network password.

**Note:** For printers with built-in Wi-Fi capability, a prompt for setting up the Wi-Fi network appears during initial setup.

## Connecting the printer to a wireless network using Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ (WPS)

Before you begin, make sure that:

- The access point (wireless router) is WPS-certified or WPS-compatible. For more information, see the documentation that came with your access point.
- A wireless network adapter is installed in your printer. For more information, see the instructions that came with the adapter.
- **Active Adapter** is set to **Auto**. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Network/Ports › Network Overview › Active Adapter**.

### Using the Push Button method

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Network/Ports › Wireless › Wi-Fi Protected Setup › Start Push Button Method**.
2. Follow the instructions on the display.

### Using the personal identification number (PIN) method

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Network/Ports › Wireless › Wi-Fi Protected Setup › Start PIN Method**.
2. Copy the eight-digit WPS PIN.
3. Open a web browser, and then type the IP address of your access point in the address field.

**Note:** To know the IP address, see the documentation that came with your access point.

4. Access the WPS settings. For more information, see the documentation that came with your access point.
5. Enter the eight-digit PIN, and then save the changes.

## Configuring Wi-Fi Direct

Wi-Fi Direct® enables Wi-Fi devices to connect directly to each other without using an access point (wireless router).

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Network/Ports › Wi-Fi Direct**.
2. Configure the settings.
  - **Enable Wi-Fi Direct**—Enable the printer to broadcast its own Wi-Fi Direct network.
  - **Wi-Fi Direct Name**—Assign a name for the Wi-Fi Direct network.
  - **Wi-Fi Direct Password**—Assign the password for negotiating the wireless security when using the peer-to-peer connection.
  - **Show Password on Setup Page**—Show the password on the Network Setup Page.
  - **Preferred Channel Number**—Assign the preferred channel of the Wi-Fi Direct network.
  - **Group Owner IP Address**—Assign the IP address of the group owner.
  - **Auto-Accept Push Button Requests**—Let the printer accept connection requests automatically.

**Note:** Accepting push-button requests automatically is not secured.

### Notes

- By default, the Wi-Fi Direct network password is not visible on the printer display. To show the password, enable the password peek icon. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Security** › **Miscellaneous** › **Enable Password/PIN Reveal**.
- To know the password of the Wi-Fi Direct network without showing it on the printer display, print the **Network Setup Page**. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Reports** › **Network** › **Network Setup Page**.

## Connecting a mobile device to the printer

Before connecting your mobile device, make sure that Wi-Fi Direct has been configured. For more information, see [Configuring Wi-Fi Direct on page 99](#).

### Using Wi-Fi Direct

**Note:** These instructions apply only to mobile devices running on the Android™ platform.

1. From the mobile device, go to the **Wi-Fi** menu.
2. Enable **Wi-Fi**, and then tap .
3. Select **Wi-Fi Direct**.
4. Select the printer Wi-Fi Direct name.
5. Confirm the connection on the printer control panel.

### Using Wi-Fi

1. From the mobile device, go to the **Wi-Fi** menu.
2. Enable **Wi-Fi**, and then select the printer Wi-Fi Direct name.

**Note:** The string DIRECT-xy (where x and y are two random characters) is added before the Wi-Fi Direct name.

3. Enter the Wi-Fi Direct password.

## Deactivating the Wi-Fi network

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Network/Ports** › **Network Overview** › **Active Adapter** › **Standard Network**.
2. Select **Yes** to restart the printer.

## Checking the printer connectivity

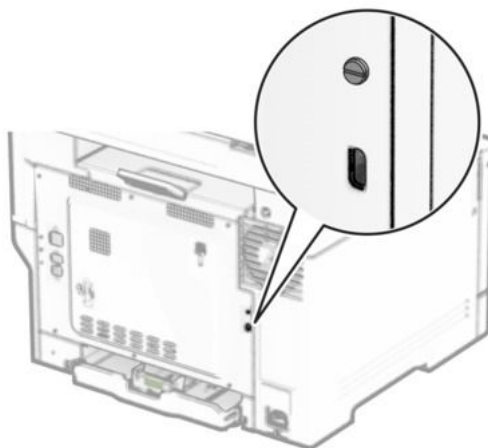
1. Print the **Network Setup Page** report. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Reports › Network › Network Setup Page**.
2. In the **Network Overview** section, check if **Card Status** is connected.

If the status is not connected, then the LAN drop may be inactive or the network cable may be malfunctioning. Contact your administrator for assistance.

## Secure the printer

### Locating the security slot

The printer is equipped with a security lock feature. Attach a security lock compatible with most laptop computers in the location shown to secure the printer in place.



### Erasing printer memory

To erase volatile memory or buffered data in your printer, turn off the printer. To erase nonvolatile memory, device and network settings, security settings, and embedded solutions, do the following:

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Device** › **Maintenance** › **Out of Service Erase**.
2. Select **Sanitize all information on nonvolatile memory**, and then select **ERASE**.
3. Select **Start initial setup wizard** or **Leave printer offline**, and then select **Next**.
4. Start the process.

**Note:** This process also destroys the encryption key that is used to protect user data. Destroying the encryption key makes the data irrecoverable.

### Erasing printer storage drive

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Device** › **Maintenance** › **Out of Service Erase**.
2. Depending on the storage drive that is installed on your printer, do either of the following:
  - For hard disk, select **Sanitize all information on hard disk**, select **ERASE**, and then select a method to erase data.

**Note:** The process to sanitize the hard disk can take from several minutes to more than an hour, making the printer unavailable for other tasks.

- For intelligent storage drive, select **Erase Intelligent Storage Drive**, and then select **ERASE**.

## Restoring factory default settings

Restoring the printer to its factory default settings resets all customized configurations and settings to their original state.

### Using the control panel

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Device › Restore Factory Defaults › Restore Settings**.
2. Select the settings that you want to restore.
  - **Restore printer settings**
  - **Restore network settings**
  - **Restore fax settings**
  - **Restore app settings**

**Note:** When this setting is selected, all apps that are not preinstalled on the printer are removed.

3. Select **RESTORE** at the upper-right corner.
4. Select **Start**.

The printer restarts automatically after the reset is completed.

### Using the Embedded Web Server

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

**Note:**

- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

2. Click **Settings › Device › Restore Factory Defaults**.
3. Select the settings that you want to restore.

- **Restore printer settings**
- **Restore network settings**
- **Restore fax settings**
- **Restore app settings**

**Note:** When this setting is selected, all apps that are not preinstalled on the printer are removed.

4. Click **Start**.

The printer restarts automatically after the reset is completed.

## Statement of Volatility

| Type of memory                  | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Volatile memory                 | The printer uses standard random access memory (RAM) to buffer temporarily user data during simple print and copy jobs.                                                                                                                      |
| Nonvolatile memory              | The printer may use two forms of nonvolatile memory: EEPROM and NAND (flash memory). Both types store the operating system, printer settings, and network information. They also store scanner and bookmark settings and embedded solutions. |
| Hard disk storage drive         | Some printers may have a hard disk drive installed. The printer hard disk is designed for printer-specific functionality. The hard disk lets the printer retain buffered user data from complex print jobs, form data, and font data.        |
| Intelligent storage drive (ISD) | Some printers may have an ISD installed. ISD uses nonvolatile flash memory to store user data from complex print jobs, form data, and font data.                                                                                             |

Erase the content of any installed printer memory in the following circumstances:

- The printer is decommissioned.
- The printer hard disk or ISD is replaced.
- The printer is moved to a different department or location.
- The printer is serviced by someone from outside your organization.
- The printer is removed from your premises for service.
- The printer is sold to another organization.

**Note:** To dispose a storage drive, follow the policies and procedures of your organization.



# Print

## | Printing from a computer

### For Windows users

If you are printing from Word, PowerPoint, or Adobe Acrobat™, then do the following:

1. Click **File** or **Menu** > **Print** or press **Ctrl + P**.
2. In the Print dialog that appears, select a printer, and then click **Printer Properties** or **Properties**.
3. In the Printing Preferences dialog that appears, configure the print settings, and then click **OK**.
4. Click **Print**.

If you are printing from a web browser, then do the following:

1. Click the **Settings** menu (the three dots at the upper-right corner) or press **Ctrl + P**.
2. In the Print dialog that appears, depending on your browser, do either of the following:
  - Select a printer, and then click **Print using system dialog**.
  - Select a printer, click **More settings**, and then click **Print using system dialog**.
3. In the system dialog that appears, click **More settings**.
4. In the Printing Preferences dialog that appears, configure the print settings, and then click **OK**.
5. Click **Print**.

### For Macintosh users

If you are printing from Preview, Safari, Word, or PowerPoint, then do the following:

1. Click **File** > **Print** or press **command + P**.
2. In the Print dialog that appears, select a printer, and then configure the print settings.
3. Click **Print**.

If you are printing from Adobe Acrobat, then do the following:

1. Click **File** > **Print** or press **command + P**.
2. In the Adobe Print dialog that appears, at the lower-left corner, click **Printer**.
3. In the Print dialog that appears, select a printer, and then configure the print settings.
4. Click **Print** to return to the Adobe Print dialog, and then click **Print** to send the print job.

If you are printing from a browser other than Safari, then do the following:

1. Click **File** > **Print** or press **command + P**.
2. In the Print dialog that appears, depending on your browser, do either of the following:
  - Click **Print using system dialog**.
  - Click **More settings**, and then click **Print using system dialog**.

3. In the system dialog that appears, select a printer, and then configure the print settings.
4. Click **Print**.

## Printing from a mobile device

### Printing from a mobile device using Lexmark Print

Lexmark™ Print is a mobile printing solution for mobile devices that run the iOS operating system version 13.0 or later or the Android™ platform version 6.0 or later. It lets you send documents and images to network-connected printers and print management servers.

#### Notes

- Make sure that you download the Lexmark Print app from the Apple App Store or Google Play™ store and enable it in the mobile device.
- Make sure that the printer and mobile device are connected to the same network.

1. From your mobile device, select a document from the file manager.
2. Send or share the document to Lexmark Print.

**Note:** Some third-party apps may not support the send or share feature. For more information, see the documentation that came with the app.

3. Select a printer.  
If necessary, adjust the settings.
4. Print the document.

### Printing from a mobile device using Mopria™ Print Service

Mopria Print Service is a mobile printing solution for mobile devices running on the Android™ platform version 5.0 or later. It lets you print directly to any Mopria™ certified printer.

**Note:** Make sure that you download Mopria Print Service from the Google Play™ store and enable it on your mobile device.

1. From your mobile device, launch a compatible application or select a document from the file manager.
2. Tap  > **Print**.
3. Select a printer, and then adjust the settings, if necessary.

4. Tap .

## Printing from a mobile device using AirPrint

The AirPrint software feature is a mobile printing solution that lets you print directly from Apple devices to an AirPrint-certified printer.

### Notes

- Make sure that the Apple device and the printer are connected to the same network. If the network has multiple wireless hubs, then make sure that both devices are connected to the same subnet.

1. From your mobile device, select a document from your file manager or launch a compatible application.
2. Tap  > **Print**.
3. Select a printer, and then adjust the settings, if necessary.
4. Print the document.

## Printing from a mobile device using Wi-Fi Direct®

Wi-Fi Direct® is a printing service that lets you print to any Wi-Fi Direct-ready printer.

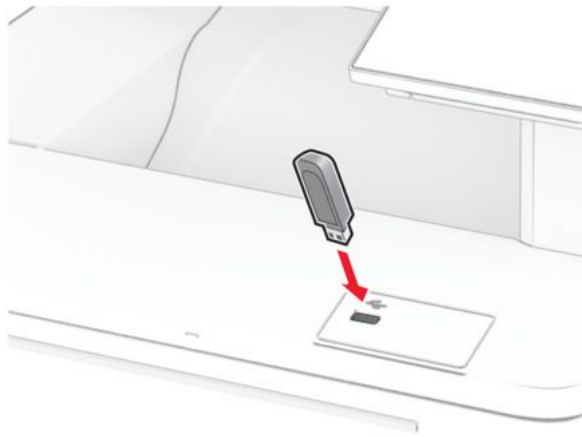
**Note:** Make sure that the mobile device is connected to the printer wireless network. For more information, see [Connecting a mobile device to the printer on page 100](#).

1. From your mobile device, launch a compatible application or select a document from your file manager.
2. Depending on your mobile device, do one of the following:
  - Tap  > **Print**.
  - Tap  > **Print**.
  - Tap  > **Print**.
3. Select a printer, and then adjust the settings, if necessary.
4. Print the document.

## Printing from a flash drive

1. Insert the flash drive.

For more information on supported flash drives, see [Printing from a flash drive on page 107](#).



### Notes

- If you insert the flash drive when an error message appears, then the printer ignores the flash drive.
- If you insert the flash drive while the printer is processing other print jobs, then Busy appears on the display.

- 2.
3. Select the document that you want to print.

If necessary, configure the settings.

4. Print the document.

### Warning—Potential Damage

To avoid loss of data or printer malfunction, do not touch the flash drive or the printer in the area shown while actively printing, reading, or writing from the memory device.



# Supported flash drives and file types

## Flash drives

- Flash drives that support USB 2.0 or lower.
- Flash drives that support a New Technology File System (NTFS) or the File Allocation Table (FAT32) file system.

## File types

| Documents                                                                                                                                                   | Images                                                                                                                                                            |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• PDF (version 1.7 to 2.0 or earlier)</li> <li>• Microsoft file formats (DOC, DOCX, XLS, XLSX, PPT, PPTX)</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• JPEG or JPG</li> <li>• TIFF or TIF</li> <li>• GIF</li> <li>• BMP</li> <li>• PNG</li> <li>• PCX</li> <li>• DCX</li> </ul> |

# Configuring confidential jobs

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings > Security > Confidential Print Setup**.
2. Configure the settings.

| Setting                            | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Max Invalid PIN</b>             | <p>Set the limit for entering an invalid PIN.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> When the limit is reached, the print jobs for that username are deleted.</p>                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Confidential Job Expiration</b> | <p>Set an individual expiration time for each held job before it is automatically deleted from the printer memory, hard disk, or intelligent storage drive.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> A held job is either <b>Confidential</b>, <b>Repeat</b>, <b>Reserve</b>, or <b>Verify</b>.</p> |

| Setting                            | Description                                                                                                             |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Repeat Job Expiration</b>       | Set the expiration time for print jobs that you want to repeat.                                                         |
| <b>Verify Job Expiration</b>       | Set the expiration time for printing a copy of a job for you to check its quality before printing the remaining copies. |
| <b>Reserve Job Expiration</b>      | Set the expiration time for jobs that you want to store in the printer for printing later.                              |
| <b>Require All Jobs to be Held</b> | Set the printer to hold all print jobs.                                                                                 |
| <b>Keep duplicate documents</b>    | Set the printer to keep all documents with the same file name.                                                          |

## Printing confidential and other held jobs

**Note:** Held jobs may get deleted before they expire or without any intervention if memory resources become low. If your printer supports a storage drive, then install a hard disk or an intelligent storage drive to increase its storage for held jobs.

### For Windows users

1. With a document open, click **File > Print**.
2. Select a printer, and then click **Properties, Preferences, Options, or Setup**.
3. Click **Print and Hold**.
4. Click **Use Print and Hold**, and then assign a username.
5. Select from any of the following print job types:
  - **Confidential print**—The printer asks for a personal identification number before letting you print the job.
  - **Verify print**—The printer prints one copy and holds the remaining copies that you requested from the driver in printer memory.
  - **Reserve print**—The printer stores the job in memory so that you can print the job later.
  - **Repeat print**—The printer prints all requested copies of the job and stores the job in memory so you can print additional copies later.
6. Click **OK**.
7. Click **Print**.
8. From the printer control panel, release the print job.
  - a. Select **Print**.
  - b. Select **Held jobs**, and then select your username.

**Note:** For confidential print jobs, select **Confidential**, enter the PIN, and then select **OK**.

- c. Select the print job, and then select **Print**.

## For Macintosh users

1. With a document open, choose **File > Print**.
2. Select a printer.
3. From the **Print Job Security** drop-down menu, enable **Print with PIN**, and then enter a four-digit PIN.
4. Click **Print**.
5. From the printer control panel, release the print job.
  - a. Select **Held jobs**, and then select the computer name.
  - b. Select **Confidential**, and then enter the PIN.
  - c. Select the print job, and then select **Print**.

## Printing a font sample list

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings > Reports > Print > Print Fonts**.
2. Select the type of font.

## Printing a directory list

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings > Reports > Print**.
2. Select **Print Directory**.

## Placing separator sheets in print jobs

1. With a document open, click **File > Print**.
2. Select a printer, and then click **Properties**, **Preferences**, **Options**, or **Setup**.
3. Click **Paper/Finishing**.
4. In the **Separator sheets** menu, select a setting.
5. Click **OK**, and then click **Print**.

## Canceling a print job

1. From the control panel, select **Job Queue**.
2. Select **Print**, and then select a job to cancel.

**Note:** If a document is already printing, then select **Cancel job** in the lower-right corner of the display to stop printing.

## Adjusting toner darkness

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings > Print > Quality**.
2. Adjust the setting for **Toner Darkness**.

# Copy

## Making copies

1. Load an original document into the ADF tray or on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 16](#).

**Note:** To avoid a resized image, make sure that the original document and output have the same paper size.

2. From the control panel, select **Copy**, and then specify the number of copies.

If necessary, adjust the copy settings.

3. Copy the document.

## Copying photos

1. Place a photo on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 16](#).
2. From the control panel, navigate to **Copy > Content Type > Photo**.
3. Copy the photo.

## Copying on letterhead

1. Load an original document into the ADF tray or on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 16](#).
2. From the control panel, navigate to **Copy > Copy From**.
3. Select the size of the original document.
4. Select **Copy To**, and then select the paper source that contains the letterhead.

If you loaded the letterhead into the multipurpose feeder, select **Multipurpose Feeder**, select a paper size, and then select **Letterhead**.

5. Copy the document.

## Copying on both sides of the paper

1. Load an original document into the ADF tray or on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 16](#).
2. From the control panel, navigate to **Copy > Sides**.
3. Select a setting.
4. Copy the document.



## Reducing or enlarging copies

1. Load an original document into the ADF tray or on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 16](#).

**Note:** If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.

2. From the control panel, depending on your printer model, do any of the following:
  - Navigate to **Copy** › **Scale**.
  - Navigate to **Copy** › **Settings** › **Scale**.
  - Navigate to **Copy** › **More Settings** › **Scale**.
3. Select - or + to decrease or increase the value by 1%.

**Note:**

- In some printer models, select **Custom** to adjust the size manually.
- You can also select a size from the preset values, between 25% and 400%.
- Changing the size of the original document or output after setting **Scale** restores the scale value to **Auto**.

4. From the control panel, depending on your printer model, do either of the following:
  - Select **Copy**.
  - Select .

## Collating copies

1. Load an original document into the ADF tray or on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 16](#).
2. From the control panel, navigate to **Copy** › **Collate** › **On [1,2,1,2,1,2]**.
3. Copy the document.

## Placing separator sheets between copies

1. Load an original document into the ADF tray or on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 16](#).
2. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Copy** › **Separator Sheets**.
3. Select a setting.
4. Copy the document.

## Copying multiple pages onto a single sheet

1. Load an original document into the ADF tray or on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 16](#).
2. From the control panel, navigate to **Copy** › **Pages per Side**.
3. Select a setting.
4. Copy the document.

## Copying cards

1. Load a card on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 16](#).
2. From the control panel, select **Copy**, and then enable **ID Copy**.
3. Copy the card.

## Creating a copy shortcut

### Using the control panel

1. From the control panel, select **Copy**.
2. Configure the settings, and then select .
3. Create a shortcut.

### Using the Embedded Web Server

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

#### Notes

- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

2. Click **Shortcuts › Add Shortcut**.
3. From the **Shortcut Type** menu, select **Copy**.
4. Configure the settings.
5. Click **Save**.

# Email

## Scanning to email

Before you begin, make sure that the SMTP settings are configured. For more information, see [Configuring the email SMTP settings on page 54](#).

1. Load an original document into the ADF tray or on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 16](#).
2. From the control panel, select **Email**.
3. Enter the needed information, and then, if necessary, configure the settings.
4. Send the email.

## Creating an email shortcut

### Using the control panel

1. From the control panel, select **Email**.
2. Enter the needed information, and then select .
3. Create a shortcut.

### Using the Embedded Web Server

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

#### Notes

- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

2. Click **Shortcuts > Add Shortcut**.
3. From the **Shortcut Type** menu, select **Email**.
4. Configure the settings.
5. Click **Save**.

# Fax

## | Sending a fax

### Using the control panel

1. Load an original document into the ADF tray or on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 16](#).
2. From the control panel, select **Fax › To**.
3. Enter the needed information.

If necessary, adjust the settings.

4. Send the fax.

### Using the computer

Before you begin, make sure that the fax driver is installed.

#### For Windows users

1. With a document open, click **File › Print**.
2. Select a printer, and then click **Properties, Preferences, Options, or Setup**.
3. Click **Fax › Enable fax › Always display settings prior to faxing**, enter the recipient number, and then click **OK**.
4. Click **Print**, and then click **OK**.

#### For Macintosh users

1. With a document open, choose **File › Print**.
2. Select the printer that has - **Fax** added after its name.
3. In the **To** field, enter the recipient number.

If necessary, configure the settings.

4. Send the fax.

## | Scheduling a fax

1. Load an original document into the ADF tray or on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 16](#).
2. From the control panel, select **Fax › To**, enter the fax number, then select **Done**.
3. Select **Send Time**, configure the date and time, and then select **OK**.

If necessary, configure other fax settings.

4. Send the fax.

## | Creating a fax destination shortcut

1. From the control panel, select **Fax › To**.

2. Enter the recipient number, and then select **Done**.
3. Select .
4. Create a shortcut.

## Changing the fax resolution

1. Load an original document into the ADF tray or on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 16](#).
2. From the control panel, select **Fax**, and then enter the needed information.
3. Select **Resolution**, and then select a setting.
4. Send the fax.

## Adjusting the fax darkness

1. Load an original document into the ADF tray or on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 16](#).
2. From the control panel, select **Fax**, and then enter the needed information.
3. Select , and then adjust the setting.
4. Send the fax.

## Printing a fax log

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Reports › Fax**.
2. Select a fax log.

## Blocking junk faxes

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Fax › Fax Setup › Fax Receive Settings › Admin Controls**.
2. Enable the **Block No Name Fax** menu.

## Holding faxes

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

### Notes

- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

2. Click **Settings › Fax › Fax Setup › Fax Receive Settings › Holding Faxes**.
3. Select a setting.
4. Apply the changes.

## | Forwarding a fax

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Fax › Fax Setup › Fax Receive Settings › Admin Controls**.
2. Select **Fax Forwarding**, and then select **Print and Forward** or **Forward**.
3. In the **Forward to** menu, select a destination and then configure the settings.

# Scan

## Scanning to a computer

Before you begin, make sure that the computer and the printer are connected to the same network.

### For Windows users

#### Using Lexmark Scanback Utility

1. Go to <https://support.lexmark.com>, and then click **Drivers & downloads**.
2. In the **Search by Device Model** field, type the printer model, and then click **Find Drivers & Downloads**.
3. Click **Additional downloads compatible with [printer model]**, and then download and install Lexmark Scanback Utility.
4. Load an original document into the ADF tray or on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 16](#).

**Note:** If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.

5. From the computer, run **Lexmark Scanback Utility**, and then click **Create profile**.

**Note:** If you prefer to use an existing scanning profile, then click **Existing profile**.

6. Click **Setup**, and then from the menu that appears, click **Add** to add the IP address.

#### Notes

- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

7. From the **Select document format to be scanned** section, select the original document size.
8. From the **Select file format for scan output** section, select an output file resolution and format, and then click **Next**.
9. Type a scan profile name.
10. Click **Browse**, select the destination folder where you want to save the scanned document, and then type a file name.

**Note:** To reuse the scan profile, from the **Name your shortcut** field, type a shortcut name, and then click **Save Profile**.

11. Click **Finish**.

12. From the control panel, navigate to **Scan Profiles**, and then select the scan profile that you created in step 6.

**Note:** Make sure that the **Scan Profiles** app is enabled. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings > Device > Home Screen Customization**. From the **Page 1** column, add **Scan Profiles**, and then click **Save**.

13. From the computer, click **Scan Complete**.

### Using Windows Fax and Scan

**Note:** Make sure that the printer is added to the computer. For more information, see [Adding printers to a computer on page 80](#).

1. Load an original document into the ADF tray or on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 16](#).

**Note:** If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.

2. From the computer, open **Windows Fax and Scan**.
3. Click **New Scan**, and then select a scanner source.

If necessary, change the scan settings.

4. Scan the document.
5. Click **Save as**, type a file name, and then click **Save**.

### For Macintosh users

**Note:** Make sure that the printer is added to the computer. For more information, see [Adding printers to a computer on page 80](#).

1. Load an original document into the ADF tray or on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 16](#).

**Note:** If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.

2. From the computer, do either of the following:
  - Open **Image Capture**.
  - Open **Printers & Scanners**, select a printer, and then click **Scan > Open Scanner**.
3. From the **Scanner** dialog, do one or more of the following:
  - Select the location that you want to save the scanned document to.
  - Select the size of the original document.



- To scan from the ADF, from the **Scan Menu**, select **Document Feeder** or enable **Use Document Feeder**.

If necessary, configure the scan settings.

4. Click **Scan**.

## Scanning to an FTP server

1. Load an original document into the ADF tray or on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 16](#).
2. From the home screen, touch **FTP**, and then enter the needed information.
3. If necessary, configure other FTP settings.
4. Send the FTP job.

## Creating an FTP shortcut

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Scan > FTP**.
2. Enter the FTP server address, and then select .
3. Create a shortcut.

## Scanning to a network folder

Before you begin, make sure that the network folder that you want to scan the document to is already configured.

1. Load an original document into the ADF tray or on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 16](#).

**Note:** If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.

2. From the control panel, navigate to **Scan Center > Network Folder**.
3. Select the applicable network folder.

**Note:** To add a network folder, see [Configuring a network folder destination on page 121](#).

4. Scan the document.

## Configuring a network folder destination

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Scan Center > Network Folder > Create Network Folder**.
2. Configure the necessary settings.
3. Log in to the network, and then select **Next**.

4. Configure the network folder settings, and then select **Done**.

**Note:** To scan a document to a network folder, see [Scanning to a network folder on page 121](#).

## Creating a network folder shortcut

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

### Notes

- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

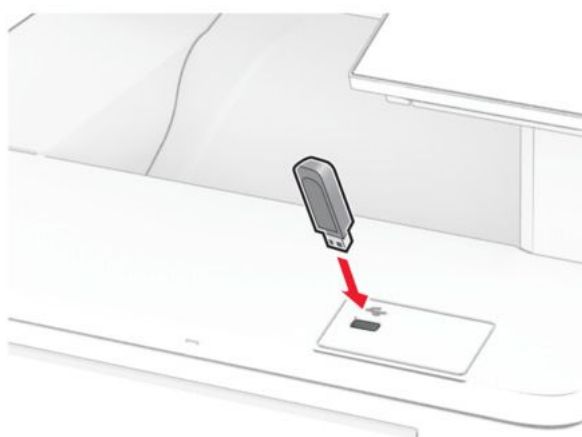
2. Click **Shortcuts > Add Shortcut**.
3. From the **Shortcut Type** menu, select **Network Folder**, and then configure the settings.
4. Apply the changes.

## Scanning to a flash drive

1. Load an original document into the ADF tray or on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 16](#).

**Note:** If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.

2. Insert the flash drive.



3. Select **Scan to USB** and adjust the settings if necessary.

### Notes

- To save the scanned document to a folder, select **Scan to**, select a folder, and then select **Scan Here**.
- If the USB Drive screen does not appear, then select **USB Drive** on the control panel.

4. Scan the document.

### Warning—Potential Damage

To avoid loss of data or printer malfunction, do not touch the flash drive or the printer in the area shown while actively printing, reading, or writing from the memory device.



# Use printer menus

## Menu map

|               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|---------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Device        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Preferences</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Eco-Mode</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Remote Operator Panel</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Notifications</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Power Management</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Anonymous Data Collection</a></li> </ul>                                                   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Accessibility</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Restore Factory Defaults</a></li> <li>• <b>Maintenance</b></li> <li>• <a href="#">Home Screen Customization</a><sup>1</sup></li> <li>• <a href="#">Update firmware</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">About this Printer</a></li> </ul> |
| Print         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Layout</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Setup</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Quality</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Job Accounting</a></li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">PDF</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">PostScript</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">PCL</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Image</a></li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                 |
| Paper         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Tray Configuration</a></li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Media Configuration</b></li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Copy          | <a href="#">Copy Defaults</a>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Fax           | <b>Fax Defaults</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Email         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Email Setup</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Email Defaults</a></li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Web Link Setup</a></li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| FTP           | <a href="#">FTP Defaults</a>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| USB Drive     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Flash Drive Scan</a></li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Flash Drive Print</a></li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Network/Ports | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Network Overview</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Wireless</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Wi-Fi Direct</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">AirPrint</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Mobile Services Management</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Ethernet</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">TCP/IP</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">SNMP</a></li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">IPSec</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">802.1x</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">LPD Configuration</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">HTTP/FTP</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">ThinPrint</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">USB</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Restrict external network access</a></li> </ul>  |

|                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Security</b>                 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Login Methods</b></li> <li>• <a href="#">Schedule USB Devices</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Security Audit Log</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Login Restrictions</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Confidential Print Setup</a></li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Disk Encryption</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Erase Temporary Data Files</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Solutions LDAP Settings</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Miscellaneous</a></li> </ul> |
| <b>Cloud Services</b>           | <a href="#">Cloud Services Enrollment</a>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>Reports</b>                  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Menu Settings Page</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Device</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Print</a></li> </ul>                                                                                                                | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Shortcuts</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Fax</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Network</a></li> </ul>                                                                                       |
| <a href="#">Troubleshooting</a> | <a href="#">Print Quality Test Pages</a>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | <a href="#">Cleaning the Scanner</a>                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>Forms Merge</b> <sup>2</sup> | <a href="#">Forms Merge</a>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |

<sup>1</sup> Appears only in the Embedded Web Server.

<sup>2</sup> Appears only when a hard disk or an intelligent storage drive is installed.

## Device

### Preferences

| Menu item                                               | Description                                                                                                                                                      |
|---------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Display Language</b><br>[List of languages]          | Set the language of the text that appears on the display.                                                                                                        |
| <b>Country/Region</b><br>[List of countries or regions] | Identify the country or region where the printer is configured to operate.                                                                                       |
| <b>Run initial setup</b><br>Off*<br>On                  | Run the setup wizard.                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>Keyboard</b><br>Keyboard Type<br>[List of languages] | Select a language as a keyboard type. <div> <b>Note:</b> All the Keyboard Type values may not appear or may require special hardware to appear.           </div> |

| Menu item                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Displayed information</b><br>Display Text 1 (IP Address*)<br>Display Text 2 (Date/Time*)<br>Custom Text 1<br>Custom Text 2                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Specify the information to appear on the home screen.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>Date and Time</b><br>Configure<br>Current Date and Time<br>Manually Set Date and Time<br>Date Format (MM-DD-YYYY*)<br>Time Format (12 hour A.M./P.M.*)<br>Time Zone<br>UTC (GMT) Offset<br>DST Start<br>DST End<br>DST Offset<br>Network Time Protocol<br>Enable NTP (On*)<br>NTP Server<br>Enable Authentication (None*)<br>Key ID<br>Password | Configure the printer date and time and network time protocol. <div> <b>Notes</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>MM-DD-YYYY is the U.S. factory default setting. DD-MM-YYYY is the international factory default setting.</li> <li>UTC (GMT) Offset, DST Start, DST End, and DST Offset appear only when Time Zone is set to (UTC+user) Custom.</li> <li>Key ID and Password appear only when Enable Authentication is set to MD5 key.</li> </ul> </div> |
| <b>Paper Sizes</b><br>U.S.*<br>Metric                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Specify the unit of measurement for paper sizes. <div> <b>Note:</b> The country or region selected in the initial setup wizard determines the initial paper size setting.           </div>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>Screen Brightness</b><br>20–100% (100*)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Adjust the brightness of the display.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>Flash Drive Access</b><br>Disabled<br>Enabled*                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Enable access to the flash drive.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>Allow Background Removal</b><br>Off<br>On*                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Specify whether background removal is allowed.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |

| Menu item                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Allow Custom Job scans</b><br><br>Off<br>On*                                                                                                                                                                                | Specify whether the Custom Job Scanning setting appears for copy, scan, and fax.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when a hard disk or an intelligent storage drive is installed. </div>                        |
| <b>One Page Flatbed Scanning</b><br><br>Off*<br>On                                                                                                                                                                             | Set the printer to scan any type of job involving the scanner glass as a single page.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> The printer returns to the home screen after performing a single flatbed scan instead of displaying prompts. </div> |
| <b>Device Sounds</b><br><br>Mute All Sounds (Off*)<br>Button Feedback (On*)<br>Volume (5*)<br>ADF Loaded Beep (On*)<br>Alarm Control (Single*)<br>Cartridge Alarm (Off*)<br>Speaker Mode (Always Off*)<br>Ringer Volume (Off*) | Configure the sound settings of the printer.                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>Screen Timeout</b><br><br>5–300 seconds (60*)                                                                                                                                                                               | Set the idle time in seconds before the display shows the home screen, or before the printer logs out a user account automatically.                                                                                                 |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

## Eco-Mode

| Menu item                                            | Description                                                      |
|------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Print</b><br><br>Sides<br><br>1-Sided*<br>2-Sided | Specify whether to print on one side or both sides of the paper. |

| Menu item                                                                                                                                                                            | Description                                                   |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Print</b><br>Pages per Side<br>Off*<br>2 pages per side<br>3 pages per side<br>4 pages per side<br>6 pages per side<br>9 pages per side<br>12 pages per side<br>16 pages per side | Print multiple page images on one side of a sheet of paper.   |
| <b>Print</b><br>Toner Darkness<br>1–5 (4*)                                                                                                                                           | Determine the lightness or darkness of text images.           |
| <b>Print</b><br>Color Saver<br>Off*<br>On                                                                                                                                            | Reduce the amount of toner used to print graphics and images. |
| <b>Copy</b><br>Sides<br>1 sided to 1 sided*<br>1 sided to 2 sided<br>2 sided to 1 sided<br>2 sided to 2 sided                                                                        | Specify the scanning behavior based on the original document. |
| <b>Copy</b><br>Pages per Side<br>Off*<br>2 Portrait pages<br>4 Portrait pages<br>2 Landscape pages<br>4 Landscape pages                                                              | Specify the scanning behavior based on the original document. |
| <b>Copy</b><br>Darkness<br>1–9 (5*)                                                                                                                                                  | Determine the darkness of the scanned text images.            |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.



## Remote Operator Panel

| Menu item                                                      | Description                                                                                                                                                                              |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>External VNC Connection</b><br>Don't Allow*<br>Allow        | Connect an external Virtual Network Computing (VNC) client to the remote control panel.                                                                                                  |
| <b>Authentication Type</b><br>None*<br>Standard Authentication | Set the authentication type when accessing the VNC client server.                                                                                                                        |
| <b>VNC Password</b>                                            | Specify the password to connect to the VNC client server.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only if Authentication Type is set to Standard Authentication.         </div> |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

## Notifications

| Menu item                                                                            | Description                                                                                |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>ADF Loaded Beep</b><br>Off<br>On*                                                 | Enable a sound when loading paper into the ADF.                                            |
| <b>Alarm Control</b><br>Off<br>Single*<br>Continuous                                 | Set the number of times that the alarm sounds when the printer requires user intervention. |
| <b>Supplies</b><br>Show Supply Estimates<br>Show estimates*<br>Do not show estimates | Show the estimated status of the supplies.                                                 |
| <b>Supplies</b><br>Cartridge Alarm<br>Off*<br>Single<br>Continuous                   | Set the number of times that the alarm sounds when the toner cartridge is low.             |

| Menu item                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Description                                                                                                                                                                     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Supplies</b><br><br>Custom Supply Notifications                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Configure notification settings when the printer requires user intervention.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only in the Embedded Web Server.           </div> |
| <b>Email Alerts Setup</b><br><br>Primary SMTP Gateway<br>Primary SMTP Gateway Port (25*)<br>Secondary SMTP Gateway<br>Secondary SMTP Gateway Port (25*)<br>SMTP Timeout (30 seconds*)<br>Reply Address<br>Always use SMTP default Reply Address (Off*)<br>Use SSL/TLS (Disabled*)<br>Require Trusted Certificate (On*)<br>SMTP Server Authentication (No authentication required*)<br>Device-Initiated Email (None*)<br>User-Initiated Email (None*)<br>Use Active Directory Device Credentials (Off*)<br>Device Userid<br>Device Password<br>Kerberos 5 REALM<br>NTLM Domain<br>Disable "SMTP server not set up" error (Off*) | Configure the printer to send email alerts to a list of contacts when the printer requires user intervention.                                                                   |
| <b>Email Alerts Setup</b><br><br>Setup Email Lists and Alerts<br><br>Email List 1<br>Email List 2<br>Subject Text<br>Email Events                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Specify the email addresses and enable the email alert events.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only in the Embedded Web Server.           </div>               |
| <b>Error Prevention</b><br><br>Jam Assist<br><br>Off<br>On*                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Set the printer to flush automatically blank pages or pages with partial prints after a jammed page is cleared.                                                                 |
| <b>Error Prevention</b><br><br>Auto Continue<br><br>Enabled<br>5–255 (5*)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Let the printer to continue processing or printing a job automatically after clearing certain attendance conditions.                                                            |

| Menu item                                                                                                   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Error Prevention</b><br>Auto Reboot<br>Auto Reboot<br>Reboot when idle<br>Reboot always*<br>Reboot never | Set the printer to restart when an error occurs.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>Error Prevention</b><br>Auto Reboot<br>Max Auto Reboots<br>1–20 (2*)                                     | Set the number of automatic reboots that the printer can perform.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <b>Error Prevention</b><br>Auto Reboot<br>Auto Reboot Window<br>1–525600 (720*)                             | Specify the average uptime (in minutes) of the printer.<br><div> <b>Notes</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the average uptime is greater than this number, then a reboot is allowed.</li> <li>• If the average uptime is less than this number, then the printer stops and shows the service error screen.</li> </ul> </div> |
| <b>Error Prevention</b><br>Auto Reboot<br>Auto Reboot Counter                                               | Show a read-only information of the reboot counter.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>Error Prevention</b><br>Auto Reboot<br>Reset Auto Reboot Counter<br>Cancel<br>Continue                   | Reset the values of the Auto Reboot Counter.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>Error Prevention</b><br>Display Short Paper Error<br>On<br>Auto-clear*                                   | Set the printer to show a message when a short paper error occurs.<br><div> <b>Note:</b> Short paper refers to the size of the paper loaded.         </div>                                                                                                                                                                                 |

| Menu item                                                                       | Description                                                                    |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Error Prevention</b><br>Page Protect<br>Off*<br>On                           | Set the printer to process the entire page into the memory before printing it. |
| <b>Jam Content Recovery</b><br>Jam Recovery<br>Off<br>On<br>Auto*               | Set the printer to reprint jammed pages.                                       |
| <b>Jam Content Recovery</b><br>Scanner Jam Recovery<br>Job level<br>Page level* | Specify how to restart a scan job after resolving a paper jam.                 |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

## Power Management

| Menu item                                                                                                           | Description                                                            |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Sleep Mode Profile</b><br>Print from Sleep Mode<br>Stay awake after printing<br>Enter Sleep Mode after printing* | Set the printer to stay awake or enter Sleep mode after printing.      |
| <b>Sleep Mode Profile</b><br>Touch to Wake from Deep Sleep<br>Disabled<br>Enabled*                                  | Wake the printer from Deep Sleep mode by touching the printer display. |
| <b>Timeouts</b><br>Sleep Mode<br>1–114 minutes (15*)                                                                | Set the idle time before the printer begins operating in Sleep mode.   |

| Menu item                                                                                                                                                 | Description                                                                               |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Timeouts</b><br>Hibernate Timeout<br>Disabled<br>1 hour<br>2 hours<br>3 hours<br>6 hours<br>1 day<br>2 days<br>3 days*<br>1 week<br>2 weeks<br>1 month | Set the time before the printer turns off.                                                |
| <b>Timeouts</b><br>Hibernate Timeout on Connection<br>Hibernate<br>Do Not Hibernate*                                                                      | Set Hibernate Timeout to turn off the printer while an active Ethernet connection exists. |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

## Anonymous Data Collection

| Menu item                                                                             | Description                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Anonymous Data Collection</b><br>Device Usage and Performance Information<br>None* | Send printer usage and performance information to Lexmark.<br><br><b>Note:</b> Anonymous Data Send Time appears only when you set Anonymous Data Collection to Device Usage and Performance Information. |
| <b>Anonymous Data Send Time</b><br>Start Time<br>Stop Time                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                          |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

## Accessibility

| Menu item                                        | Description                                                                                                 |
|--------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Duplicate Key Strike Interval</b><br>0–5 (0*) | Set the interval in seconds during which the printer ignores duplicate key presses on an attached keyboard. |

| Menu item                                                                                                           | Description                                                                                                                          |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Key Repeat Initial Delay</b><br>0.25–5 (1*)                                                                      | Set the initial length of delay in seconds before a repeating key starts repeating.                                                  |
| <b>Key Repeat Rate</b><br>0.5–30 (30*)                                                                              | Set the number of presses per second for a repeating key.                                                                            |
| <b>Prolong Screen Timeout</b><br>Off*<br>On                                                                         | Let the user remain in the same location and reset the Screen Timeout timer when it expires instead of returning to the home screen. |
| <b>Headphone Volume</b><br>1–10 (5*)                                                                                | Adjust the headphone volume.                                                                                                         |
| <b>Enable Voice Guidance When Headphone Is Attached</b><br>Off*<br>On                                               | Enable Voice Guidance when a headphone is attached to the printer.                                                                   |
| <b>Speak Passwords/PINs</b><br>Off*<br>On                                                                           | Set the printer to read out loud passwords or personal identification numbers.                                                       |
| <b>Speech Rate</b><br>Very Slow<br>Slow<br>Normal*<br>Fast<br>Faster<br>Very Fast<br>Rapid<br>Very Rapid<br>Fastest | Set the Voice Guidance speech rate.                                                                                                  |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

## Restore Factory Defaults

| Menu item                                                                                                                                               | Description                                   |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| <b>Restore Settings</b><br>Restore all settings<br>Restore printer settings<br>Restore network settings<br>Restore fax settings<br>Restore app settings | Restore the printer factory default settings. |

## Maintenance

### Configuration Menu

| Menu item                                                                                         | Description                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>USB Configuration</b><br>USB PnP<br>1*<br>2                                                    | Change the USB driver mode of the printer to improve its compatibility with a personal computer.                                                                                                      |
| <b>USB Configuration</b><br>USB Scan to Local<br>On*<br>Off                                       | Set whether the USB device driver enumerates as a USB Simple device (single interface) or as a USB Composite device (multiple interfaces).                                                            |
| <b>USB Configuration</b><br>USB Speed<br>Full<br>Auto*                                            | Set the USB port to run at full speed and disable its high-speed capabilities.                                                                                                                        |
| <b>Tray Configuration</b><br>Tray Linking<br>Automatic*<br>Off                                    | Set the printer to link the trays that have the same paper type and paper size settings.                                                                                                              |
| <b>Tray Configuration</b><br>Show Tray Insert Message<br>Off<br>Only for unknown sizes*<br>Always | Display a message that lets the user change the paper size and paper type settings after inserting the tray.                                                                                          |
| <b>Tray Configuration</b><br>Paper Prompts<br>Auto*<br>Multipurpose Feeder<br>Manual Paper        | Set the paper source that the user fills when a prompt to load paper appears. <div> <b>Note:</b> For Multipurpose Feeder to appear, in the Paper menu, set Configure MP to Cassette.           </div> |

| Menu item                                                                                        | Description                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Tray Configuration</b><br>Envelope Prompts<br>Auto*<br>Multipurpose Feeder<br>Manual Envelope | Set the paper source that the user fills when a prompt to load envelope appears.<br><div> <b>Note:</b> For Multipurpose Feeder to appear, in the Paper menu, set Configure MP to Cassette. </div> |
| <b>Tray Configuration</b><br>Action for Prompts<br>Prompt user*<br>Continue<br>Use current       | Set the printer to resolve paper- or envelope-related change prompts.                                                                                                                             |
| <b>Tray Configuration</b><br>Multiple Universal Sizes<br>Off*<br>On                              | Set the tray to support multiple universal paper sizes.                                                                                                                                           |
| <b>Reports</b><br>Menu Settings Page<br>Event Log<br>Event Log Summary                           | Print reports about printer menu settings, status, and event logs.                                                                                                                                |
| <b>Supply Usage And Counters</b><br>Clear Supply Usage History                                   | Reset the supply usage history, such as number of pages and days remaining, to the factory shipped level.                                                                                         |
| <b>Supply Usage And Counters</b><br>ITM Reset                                                    | Reset the counter after installing a new supply item or maintenance kit.                                                                                                                          |
| <b>Supply Usage And Counters</b><br>Reset Maintenance Counter                                    | Reset the counter after installing a new maintenance kit.                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>Supply Usage And Counters</b><br>Tiered Coverage Ranges                                       | Adjust the amount of color coverage for each printing range.                                                                                                                                      |
| <b>Printer Emulations</b><br>PPDS Emulation<br>Off*<br>On                                        | Set the printer to recognize and use the PPDS data stream.                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>Printer Emulations</b><br>PS Emulation<br>Off<br>On*                                          | Set the printer to recognize and use the PS data stream.                                                                                                                                          |



| Menu item                                                                                      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Print Emulations</b><br>Use Native ISD Fonts<br>Off*<br>On                                  | Let the printer use the native fonts or free fonts in the intelligent storage drive (ISD) for printing.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when an ISD is installed.         </div>                                                                             |
| <b>Printer Emulations</b><br>Enable Formsmerge<br>Off<br>On*                                   | Activate Forms Merge to store the forms into the hard disk or ISD.<br><br><div> <b>Notes</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The Forms Merge license must be installed.</li> <li>• This menu item appears only when a hard disk or an ISD is installed.</li> </ul> </div> |
| <b>Printer Emulations</b><br>Enable Prescribe<br>Off*<br>On                                    | Activate Prescribe.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> The Prescribe license must be installed.         </div>                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>Printer Emulations</b><br>Emulator Security<br>Page Timeout<br>0–60 (60*)                   | Set the page time-out during emulation.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>Printer Emulations</b><br>Emulator Security<br>Reset Emulator After Job<br>Off*<br>On       | Reset the emulator after a print job.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>Printer Emulations</b><br>Emulator Security<br>Disable Printer Message Access<br>Off<br>On* | Disable access to printer message during emulation.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |

| Menu item                                                                                   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Fax Configuration</b><br>Fax Low Power Support<br>Disable Sleep<br>Permit Sleep<br>Auto* | Set fax to enter Sleep mode whenever the printer determines that it must.                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>Fax Configuration</b><br>Fax Storage Location<br>NAND<br>Disk*                           | Set the storage location for all faxes.<br><div> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when a hard disk or an ISD is installed.         </div>                                                               |
| <b>Print Configuration</b><br>Black Only Mode<br>Off*<br>On                                 | Print non-copy jobs in grayscale.                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>Print Configuration</b><br>Color Trapping<br>Off<br>1<br>2*<br>3<br>4<br>5               | Enhance the printed output to compensate for misregistration in the printer.                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Print Configuration</b><br>Font Sharpening<br>0–150 (24*)                                | Set a text point-size value below which the high-frequency screens are used when printing font data.<br>For example, if the value is 24, then all fonts sized 24 points or less use the high-frequency screens. |
| <b>Device Operations</b><br>Quiet Mode<br>Off*<br>On                                        | Set the printer to operate in Quiet Mode.<br><div> <b>Note:</b> Enabling this setting slows down the overall performance of the printer.         </div>                                                         |

| Menu item                                                                                                                                                                                         | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Device Operations</b><br>Safe Mode<br>Off*<br>On                                                                                                                                               | Set the printer to operate in a special mode, in which it attempts to continue offering as much functionality as possible, despite known issues.<br><br>For example, when set to On, and the duplex motor is nonfunctional, the printer performs one-sided printing of the documents even if the job is two-sided printing. |
| <b>Device Operations</b><br>Minimum Copy Memory<br>80 MB*<br>100 MB                                                                                                                               | Set the minimum memory allocation for storing copy jobs.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Device Operations</b><br>Clear Custom Status                                                                                                                                                   | Erase user-defined strings for the Default or Alternate custom messages.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Device Operations</b><br>Clear all remotely-installed messages                                                                                                                                 | Erase messages that were remotely installed.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>Device Operations</b><br>Automatically Display Error Screens<br>Off<br>On*                                                                                                                     | Show existing error messages on the display after the printer remains inactive on the home screen for a length of time.                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>Device Operations</b><br>Honor orientation on fast path copy<br>Off*<br>On                                                                                                                     | Enable the printer to use the orientation setting under the Copy menu when sending quick copy jobs.                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>Toner patch sensor setup</b><br>Calibration frequency preference<br>Disabled<br>Fewest color adjustments<br>Fewer color adjustments<br>Normal*<br>Better color accuracy<br>Best color accuracy | Set the printer to put down the correct amount of toner to maintain color consistency.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <b>Toner patch sensor setup</b><br>Full calibration                                                                                                                                               | Run the full color calibration.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>Toner patch sensor setup</b><br>Print TPS information page                                                                                                                                     | Print a diagnostic page that contains information on toner patch sensor calibration.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |

| Menu item                                                                                                                              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>App Configuration</b><br>LES Applications<br>Off<br>On*                                                                             | Enable Lexmark Embedded Solutions (LES) applications.                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Scanner Configuration</b><br>Scanner Manual Registration<br>Print Quick Test                                                        | Print a Quick Test target page.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> Make sure that the margin spacing on the target page is uniform all the way around the target. If it is not, then the printer margins must be reset. </div> |
| <b>Scanner Configuration</b><br>Scanner Manual Registration<br>Front ADF Registration<br>Rear ADF Registration<br>Flatbed Registration | Manually register the flatbed and ADF after replacing the ADF, scanner glass, or controller board.                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Scanner Configuration</b><br>Reset Maintenance Counter                                                                              | Reset the counter after replacing the ADF maintenance kit.                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>Scanner Configuration</b><br>Edge Erase<br>Flatbed Edge Erase (3*)<br>ADF Edge Erase (3*)                                           | Set the size, in millimeters, of the no-print area around an ADF or flatbed scan job.                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Scanner Configuration</b><br>ADF Deskew<br>ADF Electronic Deskew (Auto*)                                                            | Set the printer to perform ADF mechanical skew adjustment.                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>Scanner Configuration</b><br>Disable Scanner<br>No*<br>Yes<br>ADF Only                                                              | Disable the scanner when it is not working properly.                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>Scanner Configuration</b><br>Tiff Byte Order<br>CPU Endianness*<br>Little Endian<br>Big Endian                                      | Set the byte order of a TIFF-formatted scan output.                                                                                                                                                                   |

| Menu item                                                                            | Description                                                                     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Scanner Configuration</b><br>Exact Tiff Rows Per Strip<br>On*<br>Off              | Set the RowsPerStrip tag value of a TIFF-formatted scan output.                 |
| <b>Scanner Configuration</b><br>Scanner Glass Cleaning Threshold<br>1000–30000 (-1*) | Set the number of scans before the user is prompted to clean the scanner glass. |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

## Out of Service Erase

| Menu item                                                                                                                                                      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Out of Service Erase</b><br>Memory Last Sanitized<br>ISD last erased                                                                                        | Show a read-only information on when the printer memory or storage drive was last erased.<br><br><b>Note:</b> ISD last erased appears only when an intelligent storage drive is installed. |
| <b>Out of Service Erase</b><br>Sanitize all information on nonvolatile memory<br><br>Erase all printer and network settings<br>Erase Intelligent Storage Drive | Clear all information on nonvolatile memory and on the storage drive.<br><br><b>Note:</b> Erase Intelligent Storage Drive appears only when an ISD is installed.                           |

## Home Screen Customization

**Note:** This menu appears only in the Embedded Web Server.

| Menu                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Description                                     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| Copy<br>Email<br>Fax<br>Held Faxes<br>Release Held Faxes<br>Status/Supplies<br>Job Queue<br>Settings<br>Change Language<br>Address Book<br>Bookmarks<br>Held Jobs<br>USB Drive<br>FTP<br>Scan Profiles<br>Lock Device<br>Scan Center<br>Card Copy<br>Shortcut Center | Specify which icons to show on the home screen. |

## Update firmware

| Menu item                          | Description                                                                       |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Installed Version</b>           | Show the current firmware version installed on the printer.                       |
| <b>Date Installed</b>              | Show the date when the current firmware version was installed on the printer.     |
| <b>Check for updates</b>           | Check for firmware updates.                                                       |
| <b>Update Firmware from Server</b> | Download and install the latest firmware version directly from the update server. |

## About this Printer

| Menu item                 | Description                                                                           |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Asset Tag</b>          | Specify the identity of the printer. The maximum length is 32 characters.             |
| <b>Printer's Location</b> | Specify the printer location. The maximum length is 63 characters.                    |
| <b>Contact</b>            | Specify the contact information for the printer. The maximum length is 63 characters. |
| <b>Firmware Version</b>   | Show the firmware version installed on the printer.                                   |
| <b>Engine</b>             | Show the engine number of the printer.                                                |
| <b>Serial Number</b>      | Show the serial number of the printer.                                                |

| Menu item                               | Description                                       |
|-----------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Export Configuration File to USB</b> | Export the configuration file to a flash drive.   |
| <b>Export Compressed Logs to USB</b>    | Export the compressed log files to a flash drive. |
| <b>Send Logs</b>                        | Send printer log information to Lexmark.          |

## Print

## Layout

| Menu item                                                                                                                                                                   | Description                                                                                               |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Sides</b><br>1-Sided*<br>2-Sided                                                                                                                                         | Specify whether to print on one side or both sides of the paper.                                          |
| <b>Flip Style</b><br>Long Edge*<br>Short Edge                                                                                                                               | Determine which side of the paper is bound when performing two-sided printing.                            |
| <b>Blank Pages</b><br>Print<br>Do Not Print*                                                                                                                                | Print blank pages that are included in a print job.                                                       |
| <b>Collate</b><br>Off (1,1,1,2,2,2)<br>On (1,2,1,2,1,2)*                                                                                                                    | Keep the pages of a print job stacked in sequence, particularly when printing multiple copies of the job. |
| <b>Separator Sheets</b><br>None*<br>Between Copies<br>Between Jobs<br>Between Pages                                                                                         | Insert blank separator sheets when printing.                                                              |
| <b>Separator Sheet Source</b><br>Tray [x] (1*)<br>Multipurpose Feeder                                                                                                       | Specify the paper source for the separator sheet.                                                         |
| <b>Pages per Side</b><br>Off*<br>2 pages per side<br>3 pages per side<br>4 pages per side<br>6 pages per side<br>9 pages per side<br>12 pages per side<br>16 pages per side | Print multiple page images on one side of a sheet of paper.                                               |

| Menu item                                                                                           | Description                                                                         |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Pages per Side Ordering</b><br>Horizontal*<br>Reverse Horizontal<br>Vertical<br>Reverse Vertical | Specify the positioning of multiple page images when using the Pages per Side menu. |
| <b>Pages per Side Orientation</b><br>Auto*<br>Landscape<br>Portrait                                 | Specify the orientation of multiple page images when using the Pages per Side menu. |
| <b>Pages per Side Border</b><br>None*<br>Solid                                                      | Print a border around each page image when using the Pages per Side menu.           |
| <b>Copies</b><br>1–9999 (1*)                                                                        | Specify the number of copies for each print job.                                    |
| <b>Print Area</b><br>Normal*<br>Whole Page                                                          | Set the printable area on a sheet of paper.                                         |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

## Setup

| Menu item                                                 | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Printer Language</b><br>PCL Emulation<br>PS Emulation* | Set the printer language.<br><br><b>Note:</b> Setting a printer language default does not prevent a software program from sending print jobs that use another printer language.                                        |
| <b>Job Waiting</b><br>Off*<br>On                          | Preserve print jobs requiring supplies so that jobs not requiring the missing supplies can print.<br><br><b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when a hard disk or an intelligent storage drive (ISD) is installed. |



| Menu item                                                 | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Job Hold Timeout</b><br>0–255 (30*)                    | <p>Set the time in seconds that the printer waits for user intervention before it holds jobs that require unavailable resources.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when a hard disk or an ISD is installed.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>Printer Usage</b><br>Max Speed<br>Max Yield*           | <p>Determine how the color imaging kit operates during printing.</p> <p><b>Notes</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When set to Max Yield, the color imaging kit slows or stops while printing groups of black-only pages.</li> <li>• When set to Max Speed, the color imaging kit always runs while printing, whether color or black pages are being printed.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <b>Low-Speed Printer Usage</b><br>Max Speed<br>Max Yield* | <p>Determine how the color imaging kit operates during low-speed printing.</p> <p><b>Notes</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When set to Max Yield, the color imaging kit slows or stops while printing groups of black-only pages.</li> <li>• When set to Max Speed, the color imaging kit always runs while printing, whether color or black pages are being printed.</li> <li>• This setting only changes printer behavior when the print engine is running at a 25 pages per minute process speed. It has no effect when the print engine is running at faster process speeds.</li> </ul> |

| Menu item                                                                   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Download Target</b><br><br>RAM*<br>Disk                                  | <p>Specify where to save all permanent resources that have been downloaded to the printer.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when a hard disk or an ISD is installed.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>Resource Save</b><br><br>Off*<br>On                                      | <p>Determine what the printer does with downloaded resources when it receives a job that requires more than the available memory.</p> <p><b>Notes</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When set to Off, the printer retains downloaded resources only until memory is needed. Resources associated with the inactive printer language are deleted.</li> <li>• When set to On, the printer preserves all the permanent downloaded resources across all language switches. When necessary, the printer shows memory full messages instead of deleting permanent resources.</li> </ul> |
| <b>Print All Order</b><br><br>Alphabetical*<br>Newest First<br>Oldest First | <p>Specify the order when you choose to print all held and confidential jobs.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when a hard disk or an ISD is installed.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

## Quality

| Menu item                                       | Description                                                                                                                                                                            |
|-------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Print Mode</b><br>Black and White<br>Color*  | Set how the printer generates color content.                                                                                                                                           |
| <b>Print Resolution</b><br>4800 CQ*<br>1200 dpi | Set the resolution for the printed output.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> 4800 CQ provides high-quality output at maximum speed.         </div>                                             |
| <b>Toner Darkness</b><br>1 to 5 (4*)            | Determine the lightness or darkness of text images.                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Halftone</b><br>Normal*<br>Detail            | Enhance the printed output to have smoother lines with sharper edges.                                                                                                                  |
| <b>Color Saver</b><br>Off*<br>On                | Reduce the amount of toner used to print graphics and images.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> When set to On, this setting overrides the value of the Toner Darkness setting.         </div> |
| <b>RGB Brightness</b><br>-6 to 6 (0*)           | Adjust the brightness of every RGB and gray object on the page.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> This setting does not affect files where CMYK color specifications are used.         </div>  |
| <b>RGB Contrast</b><br>-6 to 6 (0*)             | Adjust the contrast of every RGB and gray object on a page.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> This setting does not affect files where CMYK color specifications are used.         </div>      |

| Menu item                            | Description                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>RGB Saturation</b><br>0 to 5 (0*) | <p>Preserve the black and white values while adjusting the color values of every object on the page.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This setting does not affect files where CMYK color specifications are used.</p> |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item                                                                      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Color Balance</b><br>Cyan (0*)<br>Magenta (0*)<br>Yellow (0*)<br>Black (0*) | <p>Adjust the amount of toner that is used for each color.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>Color Balance</b><br>Reset Defaults                                         | <p>Reset all color settings to their default values.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>Color Correction</b><br>Off<br>Auto*<br>Manual                              | <p>Modify the color settings used to print documents.</p> <p><b>Notes</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off sets the printer to receive the color correction from the software.</li> <li>• Auto sets the printer to apply different color profiles to each object on the printed page.</li> <li>• Manual allows the customization of the RGB or CMYK color conversions applied to each object on the printed page.</li> </ul> |
| <b>Color Samples</b><br>Print Color Samples                                    | <p>Print sample pages for each of the RGB and CMYK color conversion tables used in the printer.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>Color Adjust</b>                                                            | <p>Calibrate the printer to adjust color variations in the printed output.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |

| Menu item                                        | Description                                              |
|--------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Spot Color Replacement</b><br>Set Custom CMYK | Assign specific CMYK values to twenty named spot colors. |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

## Job Accounting

| Menu item                                                                                                                                          | Description                                                                                                                                                                                |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Job Accounting</b><br>Off*<br>On                                                                                                                | Set the printer to create a log of the print jobs that it receives.<br><br><b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when a hard disk or an intelligent storage drive (ISD) is installed.   |
| <b>Accounting Log Frequency</b><br>Daily<br>Weekly<br>Monthly*                                                                                     | Specify how often the printer creates a log file.                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>Log Action at End of Frequency</b><br>None*<br>Email Current Log<br>Email & Delete Current Log<br>Post Current Log<br>Post & Delete Current Log | Specify how the printer responds when the frequency threshold expires.<br><br><b>Note:</b> The value defined in Accounting Log Frequency determines when this action is triggered.         |
| <b>Log Near Full Level</b><br>Off<br>On (5)*                                                                                                       | Specify the maximum size of the log file before the printer executes the Log Action at Near Full.<br><br><b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when a hard disk or an ISD is installed. |

| Menu item                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Description                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Log Action at Near Full</b><br>None*<br>Email Current Log<br>Email & Delete Current Log<br>Email & Delete Oldest Log<br>Post Current Log<br>Post & Delete Current Log<br>Post & Delete Oldest Log<br>Delete Current Log<br>Delete Oldest Log<br>Delete All But Current<br>Delete All Logs | Specify how the printer responds when the hard disk or ISD is nearly full.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> The value defined in Log Near Full Level determines when this action is triggered.         </div> |
| <b>Log Action at Full</b><br>None*<br>Email & Delete Current Log<br>Email & Delete Oldest Log<br>Post & Delete Current Log<br>Post & Delete Oldest Log<br>Delete Current Log<br>Delete Oldest Log<br>Delete All But Current<br>Delete All Logs                                               | Specify how the printer responds when hard disk or ISD usage reaches the maximum limit (100MB).                                                                                                        |
| <b>URL to Post Log</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Specify where the printer posts job accounting logs.                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>Email Address to Send Logs</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Specify the email address to which the printer sends job accounting logs.                                                                                                                              |
| <b>Log File Prefix</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Specify the prefix for the log files.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> The current host name defined in the TCP/IP menu is used as the default log file prefix.         </div>                                |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

## PDF

| Menu item                                    | Description                                            |
|----------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Scale To Fit</b><br>Off*<br>On            | Scale the page content to fit the selected paper size. |
| <b>Annotations</b><br>Print<br>Do Not Print* | Specify whether to print annotations in the PDF.       |

| Menu item                                | Description                       |
|------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <b>Print PDF Error</b><br><br>Off<br>On* | Enable the printing of PDF error. |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

## PostScript

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item                   | Settings                     | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Print PS Error</b>       | <b>Off*</b><br><br><b>On</b> | Print a page that describes the PostScript® emulation error.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> When an error occurs, processing of the job stops, the printer prints an error message, and the rest of the print job is flushed. </div> |
| <b>Minimum Line Width</b>   | <b>1 to 30 (2*)</b>          | Set the minimum stroke width.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> Jobs printed in 1200 dpi use the value directly. </div>                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Lock PS Startup Mode</b> | <b>Off</b><br><br><b>On*</b> | Disable the SysStart file.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> Enabling the SysStart file exposes your printer or network to a security risk. </div>                                                                                      |
| <b>Image Smoothing</b>      | <b>Off*</b><br><br><b>On</b> | Enhance the contrast and sharpness of low-resolution images.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> This setting has no effect on images with a resolution of 300 dpi or higher. </div>                                                      |

| Menu item            | Settings                              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|----------------------|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Font Priority</b> | <b>Resident*</b><br><b>Flash/Disk</b> | <p>Establish the font search order.</p> <div> <p><b>Notes</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Resident</b>—Sets the printer to search its memory for the requested font before searching the storage drive.</li> <li>• <b>Flash/Disk</b>—Sets the printer to search the storage drive for the requested font before searching the printer memory.</li> <li>• This menu item appears only when a storage drive is installed.</li> </ul> </div> |
| <b>Wait Timeout</b>  | <b>Off</b><br><b>On*</b>              | <p>Enable the printer to wait for more data before canceling a print job.</p> <div> <p><b>Note:</b> When set to <b>On</b>, 40 seconds is the factory default setting.</p> </div>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |

## PCL

| Menu item                                                                        | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Font Source</b><br>Resident*<br>Disk<br>Download<br>Flash<br>Font Card<br>All | <p>Select the source which contains the default font selection.</p> <div> <p><b>Notes</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Disk and Flash appear only when a non-defective, non-protected hard disk or intelligent storage drive (ISD) that contains fonts is installed.</li> <li>• Download appears only if downloaded fonts exist in the printer memory.</li> <li>• Font Card appears only when an ISD is installed.</li> </ul> </div> |



| Menu item                                                                             | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Font Name</b><br>[List of available fonts] (Courier*)                              | Select a font from the specified font source.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>Symbol Set</b><br>[List of available symbol set] (10U PC-8*)                       | Specify the symbol set for each font name. <div> <b>Note:</b> A symbol set is a set of alphabetic and numeric characters, punctuation, and special symbols. Symbol sets support the different languages or specific programs such as math symbols for scientific text.           </div>                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>Pitch</b><br>0.08–100.00 (10.00*)                                                  | Specify the pitch for fixed or monospaced fonts. <div> <b>Note:</b> Pitch refers to the number of fixed-space characters in a horizontal inch of type.           </div>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>Orientation</b><br>Portrait*<br>Landscape<br>Reverse Portrait<br>Reverse Landscape | Specify the orientation of text and graphics on the page.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>Lines per Page</b><br>1–255                                                        | Specify the number of lines of text for each page printed through the PCL® emulation data stream. <div> <b>Notes</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This menu item activates vertical escapement that causes the selected number of requested lines to print between the default margins of the page.</li> <li>• 60 is the U.S. factory default setting. 64 is the international factory default setting.</li> </ul> </div> |
| <b>PCL5 Minimum Line Width</b><br>1–30 (2*)                                           | Set the initial minimum stroke width.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |

| Menu item                                                                                | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>PCLXL Minimum Line Width</b><br>1–30 (2*)                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>A4 Width</b><br>198 mm*<br>203 mm                                                     | Set the width of the logical page on A4-size paper.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> Logical page is the space on the physical page where data is printed.           </div>                                                                                           |
| <b>Auto CR after LF</b><br>On<br>Off*                                                    | Set the printer to perform a carriage return after a line feed control command.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> Carriage return is a mechanism that commands the printer to move the position of the cursor to the first position on the same line.           </div> |
| <b>Auto LF after CR</b><br>On<br>Off*                                                    | Set the printer to perform a line feed after a carriage return control command.                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>Tray Renumber</b><br>Assign Tray [x]<br>Assign Manual Paper<br>Assign Manual Envelope | Configure the printer to work with a different print driver or custom application that uses a different set of source assignments to request a given paper source.                                                                                             |
| <b>Tray Renumber</b><br>View Factory Defaults                                            | Show the factory default value assigned for each paper source.                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Tray Renumber</b><br>Restore Defaults                                                 | Restore the tray renumber values to their factory defaults.                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Print Timeout</b><br>Off<br>On* (90 seconds)                                          | Set the printer to end a print job after it has been idle for the specified amount of time.                                                                                                                                                                    |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

## Image

| Menu item                                                                                                          | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Auto Fit</b><br><br>On<br>Off*                                                                                  | Select the best available paper size and orientation setting for an image.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> When set to On, this menu item overrides the scaling and orientation settings for the image.         </div> |
| <b>Invert</b><br><br>Off*<br>On                                                                                    | Invert bitonal monochrome images.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> This menu item does not apply to GIF or JPEG image formats.         </div>                                                                           |
| <b>Scaling</b><br><br>Anchor Top Left<br>Best Fit*<br>Anchor Center<br>Fit Height/Width<br>Fit Height<br>Fit Width | Adjust the image to fit the printable area.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> When Auto Fit is set to On, Scaling is automatically set to Best Fit.         </div>                                                       |
| <b>Orientation</b><br><br>Portrait*<br>Landscape<br>Reverse Portrait<br>Reverse Landscape                          | Specify the orientation of text and graphics on the page.                                                                                                                                                        |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

## Paper

### Tray Configuration

| Menu item                                                                                            | Description                              |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| <b>Default Source</b><br><br>Tray [x] (1*)<br>Multipurpose Feeder<br>Manual Paper<br>Manual Envelope | Set the paper source for all print jobs. |

| Menu item                                                                                    | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Paper Size/Type</b><br>Tray [x]<br>Multipurpose Feeder<br>Manual Paper<br>Manual Envelope | Specify the paper size or paper type loaded in each paper source.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>Substitute Size</b><br>Off<br>Letter/A4<br>All Listed*                                    | Set the printer to substitute a specified paper size if the requested size is not loaded in any paper source. <div> <b>Notes</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off prompts the user to load the required paper size.</li> <li>• All Listed allows all available substitutions.</li> </ul> </div>                                                                  |
| <b>Configure MP</b><br>Cassette*<br>Manual<br>First                                          | Determine the behavior of the multipurpose feeder. <div> <b>Notes</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cassette configures the multipurpose feeder as the automatic paper source.</li> <li>• Manual sets the multipurpose feeder only for manual-feed print jobs.</li> <li>• First configures the multipurpose feeder as the primary paper source.</li> </ul> </div> |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

## Media Configuration

### Universal Setup

| Menu item                                                          | Description                                                                                                                                                                             |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Units of Measure</b><br>Inches<br>Millimeters                   | Specify the unit of measurement for the universal paper.<br><br><b>Note:</b> Inches is the U.S. factory default setting. Millimeters is the international factory default setting.      |
| <b>Portrait Width</b><br>3–52 inches (8.5*)<br>76–1321 mm (216*)   | Set the portrait width of the universal paper.                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>Portrait Height</b><br>3–52 inches (14*)<br>76.2–1321 mm (356*) | Set the portrait height of the universal paper.                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>Feed Direction</b><br>Short Edge*<br>Long Edge                  | Set the printer to pick paper from the short edge or long edge direction.<br><br><b>Note:</b> Long Edge appears only when the longest edge is shorter than the maximum width supported. |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

## Custom Scan Sizes

| Menu item                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Description                                              |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Custom Scan Size [x]</b><br><br>Scan Size Name<br><br>Width<br><br>1–8.5 inches (8.5*)<br>25.4–215.9 mm (215.9*)<br>Height<br><br>1–25 inches (11*)<br>25.4–635 mm (279.4*)<br>Orientation<br><br>Portrait*<br>Landscape<br>2 scans per side<br><br>Off*<br>On | Assign a scan size name and configure the scan settings. |

## Media Types

| Menu item                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Description                                                |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| Plain Paper<br>Card Stock<br>Recycled<br>Glossy<br>Labels<br>Vinyl Labels<br>Bond<br>Envelope<br>Letterhead<br>Preprinted<br>Colored Paper<br>Light Paper<br>Heavy Paper<br>Rough/Cotton<br>Custom Type [X] | Specify the texture, weight, and orientation of the paper. |

# Copy

## Copy Defaults

| Menu item                                                                                                                         | Description                                                                     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Content Type</b><br>Text<br>Text/Photo*<br>Photo<br>Graphics                                                                   | Improve the output result based on the content of the original document.        |
| <b>Content Source</b><br>Black and White Laser<br>Color Laser*<br>Inkjet<br>Photo/Film<br>Magazine<br>Newspaper<br>Press<br>Other | Improve the output result based on the source of the original document.         |
| <b>Sides</b><br>1 sided to 1 sided*<br>1 sided to 2 sided<br>2 sided to 1 sided<br>2 sided to 2 sided                             | Specify the scanning behavior based on the original document.                   |
| <b>Separator Sheets</b><br>None*<br>Between Copies<br>Between Jobs<br>Between Pages                                               | Specify whether to insert blank separator sheets when printing.                 |
| <b>Separator Sheet Source</b><br>Tray [x] (1*)<br>Multipurpose Feeder                                                             | Specify the paper source for the separator sheet.                               |
| <b>Color</b><br>Off<br>On*<br>Auto                                                                                                | Set the printer to generate color output from a scan job.                       |
| <b>Pages per Side</b><br>Off*<br>2 Portrait pages<br>4 Portrait pages<br>2 Landscape pages<br>4 Landscape pages                   | Specify the number of page images to print on one side of a sheet of paper.     |
| <b>Print Page Borders</b><br>Off*<br>On                                                                                           | Place a border around each image when printing multiple pages on a single page. |

| Menu item                                                                                                            | Description                                                                                                                                                            |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Collate</b><br>Off [1,1,1,2,2,2]<br>On [1,2,1,2,1,2]*                                                             | Print multiple copies in sequence.                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>“Copy from” Size</b><br>[List of paper sizes]                                                                     | Set the paper size of the original document.<br><div> <b>Note:</b> Letter is the U.S. factory default setting. A4 is the international factory default setting. </div> |
| <b>“Copy to” Source</b><br>Tray [x] (1*)<br>Multipurpose Feeder<br>Auto Size Match                                   | Specify the paper source for the copy job.                                                                                                                             |
| <b>Temperature</b><br>-4 to 4 (0*)                                                                                   | Specify whether to generate a cooler or warmer output.                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Darkness</b><br>1 to 9 (5*)                                                                                       | Adjust the darkness of the scanned image.                                                                                                                              |
| <b>Number of Copies</b><br>1–9999 (1*)                                                                               | Specify the number of copies.                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>Header/Footer</b><br>Left Header<br>Middle Header<br>Right Header<br>Left Footer<br>Middle Footer<br>Right Footer | Specify the header or footer information on the scanned image.                                                                                                         |
| <b>Overlay</b><br>Confidential<br>Copy<br>Draft<br>Urgent<br>Custom<br>Off*                                          | Specify the overlay text to print on each copy.                                                                                                                        |
| <b>Custom overlay</b>                                                                                                | Type the text for the Custom choice in the Overlay menu.                                                                                                               |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.



| Menu item                                                                                                                                       | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Color Balance</b><br>Cyan (0*)<br>Magenta (0*)<br>Yellow (0*)                                                                                | Adjust the color intensity for cyan, magenta, and yellow.                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>Color Dropout</b><br>Color Dropout (None*)<br>Default Red Threshold (128*)<br>Default Green Threshold (128*)<br>Default Blue Threshold(128*) | Specify which color to drop during scanning, and adjust the dropout setting for that color.                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Auto Color Detect</b><br>Color Sensitivity (5*)<br>Area Sensitivity (5*)                                                                     | Configure the auto color detection setting.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Contrast</b><br>Best for content*<br>0–5                                                                                                     | Specify the contrast for the scanned image.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Background Removal</b><br>Background Detection (Content-based*)<br>Level (0*)                                                                | Remove the background color or image noise from the original document. <div> <b>Notes</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Content-based removes the background color from the original document .</li> <li>Fixed removes image noise from a photo.</li> </ul> </div> |
| <b>Auto Center</b><br>Off*<br>On                                                                                                                | Align the content at the center of the page.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>Mirror Image</b><br>Off*<br>On                                                                                                               | Create a mirror image of the original document.                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>Negative Image</b><br>Off*<br>On                                                                                                             | Create a negative image of the original document.                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <b>Shadow Detail</b><br>-4 to 4 (0*)                                                                                                            | Adjust the shadow detail in the original document.                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |

| Menu item                              | Description                                   |
|----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| <b>Scan Edge to Edge</b><br>Off*<br>On | Scan the original document from edge to edge. |
| <b>Sharpness</b><br>1–5 (3*)           | Adjust the sharpness of the scanned image.    |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item                                   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Allow Color Copies</b><br>Off<br>On*     | Print copies in color.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>Allow Priority Copies</b><br>Off<br>On*  | Interrupt a print job to make copies.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>Custom Job Scanning</b><br>Off*<br>On    | Set the printer to scan the first set of original documents using the specified settings, and then scan the next set with the same or different settings.<br><br><b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when a hard disk or an intelligent storage drive (ISD) is installed. |
| <b>Allow Save as Shortcut</b><br>Off<br>On* | Save copy settings as a shortcut.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>Adjust ADF Skew</b><br>Off<br>On*        | Set the printer to adjust the skewed images from documents that are scanned from the ADF.                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <b>Sample copy</b><br>Off*<br>On            | Print a sample copy to check the quality before printing the remaining copies.<br><br><b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when a hard disk or an ISD is installed.                                                                                                        |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

# Fax

## Fax Defaults

### Fax Mode

| Menu item                                            | Description                                                                                                                          |
|------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Fax Mode</b><br><br>Fax<br>Fax Server<br>Disabled | Select a fax mode.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> Depending on your printer model, the factory default setting may vary.           </div> |

## Fax Setup

### General Fax settings

| Menu item                                    | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Fax Name</b>                              | Specify your fax ID.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>Fax Number</b>                            | Specify your fax number.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Fax ID</b><br><br>Fax Name<br>Fax Number* | Set the fax ID to use during fax negotiation.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>Enable Manual Fax</b><br><br>Off*<br>On   | Turn on the manual fax function in the printer.<br><br><div> <b>Notes</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This menu item requires a line splitter and a telephone handset.</li> <li>• Use a regular telephone line to answer an incoming fax job and to dial a fax number.</li> <li>• To go directly to the manual fax function, touch # and 0 on the keypad.</li> </ul> </div> |

| Menu item                                                                               | Description                                                                                                                                                                       |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Memory Use</b><br>All receive<br>Mostly receive<br>Equal*<br>Mostly send<br>All send | Set the amount of internal printer memory allocated for faxing.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> This menu item prevents memory buffer conditions and failed faxes.           </div>     |
| <b>Cancel Faxes</b><br>Allow*<br>Don't Allow                                            | Cancel outgoing or incoming faxes.                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>Fax Number Masking</b><br>Off*<br>From Left<br>From Right                            | Specify the format for masking an outgoing fax number.                                                                                                                            |
| <b>Digits to Mask</b><br>0–58 (0*)                                                      | Specify the number of digits to mask in an outgoing fax number.                                                                                                                   |
| <b>Enable Line Connected Detection</b><br>Off<br>On*                                    | Determine whether a telephone line is connected to the printer.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> Events are detected immediately.           </div>                                       |
| <b>Enable Line In Wrong Jack Detection</b><br>Off<br>On*                                | Determine whether a telephone line is connected to the correct port on the printer.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> Events are detected immediately.           </div>                   |
| <b>Enable Extension in Use Support</b><br>Off<br>On*                                    | Determine whether a telephone line is used by another device, such as another phone on the same line.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> Events are detected immediately.           </div> |
| <b>Optimize Fax Compatibility</b>                                                       | Configure the printer fax functionality for optimal compatibility with other fax machines.                                                                                        |

| Menu item                                                       | Description                                                                                                                                                    |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Fax Transport</b><br><br>T.38<br>Analog<br>G.711<br>etherFAX | Set the fax transport method.<br><br><b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only if an etherFAX or Fax over IP (FoIP) license bundle is installed in the printer. |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

## HTTPS Fax Settings

**Note:** This menu appears only if Fax Transport is set to etherFAX.

| Menu item                                                             | Description                                              |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>HTTPS service URL</b>                                              | Specify the etherFAX service URL.                        |
| <b>HTTPS Proxy</b>                                                    | Specify a proxy server URL.                              |
| <b>HTTPS Proxy User</b>                                               | Specify the user name and password for the proxy server. |
| <b>HTTPS Proxy Password</b>                                           |                                                          |
| <b>Fax Send Encryption</b><br><br>Disabled<br>Enabled*<br>Required    | Enable encryption for outgoing fax messages.             |
| <b>Fax Receive Encryption</b><br><br>Disabled<br>Enabled*<br>Required | Enable encryption for incoming fax messages.             |
| <b>HTTPS Fax Status</b>                                               | Show the etherFAX communication status.                  |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

## Fax Send Settings

| Menu item                                                                                                                             | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Resolution</b><br><br>Standard*<br>Fine<br>Super Fine<br>Ultra Fine                                                                | Set the resolution of the scanned image.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> A higher resolution increases fax transmission time and requires more memory.           </div>                                                                                                          |
| <b>Original Size</b><br><br>[List of paper sizes] (Mixed Sizes*)                                                                      | Specify the size of the original document.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Orientation</b><br><br>Portrait*<br>Landscape                                                                                      | Specify the orientation of the original document.                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>Sides</b><br><br>Off*<br>Short Edge<br>Long Edge                                                                                   | Specify the orientation of the original document when scanning on both sides of the document.                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>Content Type</b><br><br>Text*<br>Text/Photo<br>Photo<br>Graphics                                                                   | Improve the output result based on the content of the original document.                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>Content Source</b><br><br>Black and White Laser<br>Color Laser*<br>Inkjet<br>Photo/Film<br>Magazine<br>Newspaper<br>Press<br>Other | Improve the output result based on the source of the original document.                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Darkness</b><br><br>1–9 (5*)                                                                                                       | Adjust the darkness of the scanned image.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>Behind a PABX</b><br><br>On<br>Off*                                                                                                | Set the printer to dial a fax number without waiting to recognize the dial tone.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> Private Automated Branch Exchange (PABX) is a telephone network that allows a single access number to offer multiple lines to outside callers.           </div> |

| Menu item                              | Description                                           |
|----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Dial Mode</b><br><br>Tone*<br>Pulse | Specify the dial mode for incoming or outgoing faxes. |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item                                                                                                                                            | Description                                                                                 |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Color Balance</b><br><br>Cyan - Red<br>-4 to 4 (0*)<br><br>Magenta - Green<br>-4 to 4 (0*)<br><br>Yellow - Blue<br>-4 to 4 (0*)                   | Adjust the color intensity during scanning.                                                 |
| <b>Color Dropout</b><br><br>Color Dropout (None*)<br>Default Red Threshold (128*)<br>Default Green Threshold (128*)<br>Default Blue Threshold (128*) | Specify which color to drop during scanning, and adjust the dropout setting for that color. |
| <b>Contrast</b><br><br>Best for Content*<br>0<br>1<br>2<br>3<br>4<br>5                                                                               | Set the contrast of the output.                                                             |
| <b>Background Removal</b><br><br>Level<br><br>-4 to 4 (0*)                                                                                           | Adjust the amount of background visible on a scanned image.                                 |
| <b>Mirror Image</b><br><br>Off*<br>On                                                                                                                | Create a mirror image of the original document.                                             |
| <b>Negative Image</b><br><br>Off*<br>On                                                                                                              | Create a negative image of the original document.                                           |
| <b>Shadow Detail</b><br><br>-4 to 4 (0*)                                                                                                             | Adjust the amount of shadow detail visible on a scanned image.                              |

| Menu item                              | Description                                            |
|----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Scan Edge to Edge</b><br>On<br>Off* | Allow edge-to-edge scanning of the original document.  |
| <b>Sharpness</b><br>1–5 (3*)           | Adjust the sharpness of the scanned image.             |
| <b>Temperature</b><br>-4 to 4 (0*)     | Specify whether to generate a cooler or warmer output. |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item                                                   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Automatic Redial</b><br>0–9 (5*)                         | Specify the number of attempts that the printer redials before it cancels sending the fax to a specified destination.                                                                                        |
| <b>Redial Frequency</b><br>1–200 minutes (3*)               | Increase the time between redial attempts to increase the chance of sending fax successfully.                                                                                                                |
| <b>Enable ECM</b><br>On*<br>Off                             | Activate Error Correction Mode (ECM) for fax jobs.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> ECM detects and corrects errors in the fax transmission process caused by telephone line noise and poor signal strength. </div> |
| <b>Enable Fax Scans</b><br>On*<br>Off                       | Create faxes using the printer scanner.                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <b>Driver to Fax</b><br>On*<br>Off                          | Allow the print driver to send fax.                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>Allow Save as Shortcut</b><br>On*<br>Off                 | Save fax numbers as shortcuts on the printer.                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>Max Speed</b><br>33600*<br>14400<br>9600<br>4800<br>2400 | Set the maximum speed for sending fax.                                                                                                                                                                       |



| Menu item                                                                                    | Description                                                                                                                                                               |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Custom Job Scanning</b><br>Off*<br>On                                                     | Turn on scanning of custom jobs by default.<br><div> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when a hard disk or an intelligent storage drive (ISD) is installed. </div> |
| <b>Scan Preview</b><br>Off*<br>On                                                            | Show a preview of the scan on the display.<br><div> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when a hard disk or an ISD is installed. </div>                              |
| <b>Adjust ADF Skew</b><br>Off<br>On*                                                         | Correct slight skew in the scanned image.                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Enable Color Fax Scans</b><br>Off by Default*<br>On by Default<br>Never Use<br>Always Use | Enable color scans for fax.                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>Auto Convert Color Faxes to Mono Faxes</b><br>On*<br>Off                                  | Convert all outgoing color faxes to black and white.                                                                                                                      |
| <b>Confirm Fax Number</b><br>Off*<br>On                                                      | Ask the user to confirm the fax number.                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>Dial Prefix</b>                                                                           | Set a dialing prefix.                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>Dialing Prefix Rules</b>                                                                  | Establish a dialing prefix rule.                                                                                                                                          |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

## Fax Receive Settings

| Menu item                                                      | Description                                                                       |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Fax Job Waiting</b><br>None*<br>Toner<br>Toner and Supplies | Remove fax jobs that request specific unavailable resources from the print queue. |

| Menu item                                                                         | Description                                                                                                                         |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Rings to Answer</b><br>1–25 (3*)                                               | Set the number of rings required before the printer answers the incoming calls.                                                     |
| <b>Auto Reduction</b><br>On*<br>Off                                               | Scale incoming fax to fit on the page.                                                                                              |
| <b>Paper Source</b><br>Tray [X]<br>Auto*                                          | Set the paper source for printing incoming fax.                                                                                     |
| <b>Sides</b><br>On<br>Off*                                                        | Print on both sides of the paper.                                                                                                   |
| <b>Separator Sheets</b><br>None*<br>Before Job<br>After Job                       | Specify whether to insert blank separator sheets when printing.                                                                     |
| <b>Separator Sheet Source</b><br>Tray [X] (1*)                                    | Specify the paper source for the separator sheet.                                                                                   |
| <b>Output Bin</b><br>Standard Bin                                                 | Specify the output bin for received faxes.                                                                                          |
| <b>Fax Footer</b><br>On<br>Off*                                                   | Print the transmission information at the bottom of each page from a received fax.                                                  |
| <b>Fax Footer Time Stamp</b><br>Receive*<br>Print                                 | Print the time stamp at the bottom of each page from a received fax.                                                                |
| <b>Holding Faxes</b><br>Held Fax Mode<br>Off*<br>Always On<br>Manual<br>Scheduled | Hold received faxes from printing until they are released.                                                                          |
| <b>Holding Faxes</b><br>Fax Holding Schedule                                      | Assign a schedule for holding faxes.<br><div> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only if Held Fax Mode is set to Scheduled. </div> |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item                                                                                                                                                                                   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Enable Fax Receive</b><br><br>On*<br>Off                                                                                                                                                 | Set the printer to receive fax.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <b>Enable Color Fax Receive</b><br><br>On*<br>Off                                                                                                                                           | Set the printer to receive fax in color.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>Enable Caller ID</b><br><br>On<br>Off*                                                                                                                                                   | Show the caller ID information of the incoming call on the printer display.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>Block No Name Fax</b><br><br>On<br>Off*                                                                                                                                                  | Block incoming faxes without fax IDs.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>Banned Fax List</b><br><br>Add Banned Fax                                                                                                                                                | Specify the phone numbers that you want to block.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Answer On</b><br><br>All Rings*<br>Single Ring Only<br>Double Ring Only<br>Triple Ring Only<br>Single or Double Rings Only<br>Single or Triple Rings Only<br>Double or Triple Rings Only | Set a distinctive ring pattern for incoming fax.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>Auto Answer</b><br><br>On*<br>Off                                                                                                                                                        | Set the printer to receive fax automatically.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>Manual Answer Code</b><br><br>0–9 (9*)                                                                                                                                                   | Manually enter a code on the telephone number pad to begin receiving fax.<br><br><div> <b>Notes</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This menu item appears only when the printer shares a line with a telephone.</li> <li>• This menu item appears only when you set the printer to receive fax manually.</li> </ul> </div> |

| Menu item                                                           | Description                                                                                                                                                     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Fax Forwarding</b><br><br>Print*<br>Print and Forward<br>Forward | Specify whether to forward received fax.                                                                                                                        |
| <b>Forward To</b><br><br>Destination 1<br>Destination 2             | Specify where to forward received fax.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when Fax Forwarding is set to Print and Forward or Forward. </div> |
| <b>Max Speed</b><br><br>33600*<br>14400<br>9600<br>4800<br>2400     | Set the maximum speed for transmitting fax.                                                                                                                     |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

## Fax Cover Page

| Menu item                                                                                | Description                                    |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Fax Cover Page</b><br><br>Off by Default*<br>On by Default<br>Never Use<br>Always Use | Configure the settings for the fax cover page. |
| <b>Include To field</b><br><br>Off*<br>On                                                |                                                |
| <b>Include From field</b><br><br>Off*<br>On                                              |                                                |
| <b>From</b>                                                                              |                                                |
| <b>Include Message Field</b><br><br>Off*<br>On                                           |                                                |
| <b>Message:</b>                                                                          |                                                |

| Menu item                               | Description |
|-----------------------------------------|-------------|
| <b>Include Logo</b><br>Off*<br>On       |             |
| <b>Include Footer [x]</b><br>Off*<br>On |             |
| <b>Footer [x]</b>                       |             |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

## Fax Log Settings

| Menu item                                                                        | Description                                                                 |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Transmission Log Frequency</b><br>Always*<br>Never<br>Only for Error          | Specify how often the printer creates a transmission log.                   |
| <b>Transmission Log Action</b><br>Print<br>Off<br>On*<br><br>Email<br>Off*<br>On | Print or email a log for successful fax transmission or transmission error. |
| <b>Receive Error Log</b><br>Print Never*<br>Print on Error                       | Print a log for fax-receive failures.                                       |
| <b>Auto Print Logs</b><br>On*<br>Off                                             | Print all fax activity.                                                     |
| <b>Log Paper Source</b><br>Tray [x] (1*)                                         | Specify the paper source for printing logs.                                 |
| <b>Logs Display</b><br>Remote Fax Name*<br>Dialed Number                         | Identify the sender by remote fax name or fax number.                       |

| Menu item                                         | Description                              |
|---------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| <b>Enable Job Log</b><br>On*<br>Off               | View a summary of all fax jobs.          |
| <b>Enable Call Log</b><br>On*<br>Off              | View a summary of the fax call history.  |
| <b>Log Output Bin</b><br>Standard Bin*<br>Bin [x] | Specify the output bin for printed logs. |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

## Speaker Settings

| Menu item                                                             | Description                    |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <b>Speaker Mode</b><br>Always Off*<br>Always On<br>On until Connected | Set the fax speaker mode.      |
| <b>Speaker Volume</b><br>Low*<br>High                                 | Adjust the fax speaker volume. |
| <b>Ringer Volume</b><br>Off*<br>On                                    | Enable the ringer volume.      |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

## VoIP Settings

| Menu item                             | Description                                           |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>VoIP Protocol</b><br>SIP*<br>H.323 | Set the Voice over Internet Protocol (VoIP) protocol. |
| <b>STUN Server</b>                    | Specify the STUN server to traverse a firewall.       |

| Menu item                                | Description                                                                  |
|------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Force Fax Mode</b><br>Off<br>On*      | Switch VoIP gateway from analog to T.38 at the beginning of a fax call.      |
| <b>Force Fax Mode Delay</b><br>0–15 (7*) | Set the time delay in seconds when sending another invite of Force Fax Mode. |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

## SIP Settings

| Menu item                                                         | Description                                                                                                                                                                |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Proxy</b>                                                      | Specify the IP address of the system that converts the phone number to an IP address where the fax is sent.                                                                |
| <b>Registrar</b>                                                  | Specify a name or IP address of the system that handles the registration of Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) clients.                                                     |
| <b>User</b>                                                       | Specify the name of the user for SIP.                                                                                                                                      |
| <b>Password</b>                                                   | Specify the password that is used in registering with the SIP Registrar.                                                                                                   |
| <b>Auth ID</b>                                                    | The user name that is used when registering.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> If the Auth ID setting is not set, the setting uses the user name of the User field instead. </div> |
| <b>Transport For Registration</b><br>UDP*<br>TCP                  | Set the SIP transport type for registration.                                                                                                                               |
| <b>Transport For Incoming Calls</b><br>UDP*<br>TCP<br>UDP And TCP | Set the SIP transport type for incoming calls.                                                                                                                             |
| <b>Transport For Outgoing Calls</b><br>UDP*<br>TCP                | Set the SIP transport type for outgoing calls.                                                                                                                             |
| <b>Outbound Proxy</b>                                             | Specify an outbound proxy to forward all SIP communication.                                                                                                                |

| Menu item                      | Description                                                                                                                          |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Contact</b>                 | Specify a contact name for SIP.                                                                                                      |
| <b>Realm</b>                   | Specify a realm name for SIP.<br><br><b>Note:</b> If the Realm setting is not set, the setting uses the name of the Contact instead. |
| <b>SIP Registration Status</b> | Show the status of the SIP Registration.                                                                                             |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

### H.323 Settings

| Menu item                                         | Description                                        |
|---------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Gateway</b>                                    | Specify the H.323 gateway IP address.              |
| <b>Gatekeeper</b>                                 | Specify the H.323 gatekeeper.                      |
| <b>User</b>                                       | Specify the user name used with the H.323 gateway. |
| <b>Password</b>                                   | Specify the password for the H.323 gateway.        |
| <b>Enable Fast Start</b><br>Off*<br>On            | Enable Fast Start.                                 |
| <b>Disable H.245 Tunneling</b><br>Off*<br>On      | Disable H.323 Tunneling.                           |
| <b>Disable Gatekeeper Discovery</b><br>Off<br>On* | Disable H.323 Gatekeeper Discovery.                |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.



## T.38 Settings

| Menu item                                | Description                                                                         |
|------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Indicator Redundancy</b><br>0–5 (3*)  | Set the number of times that a fax indicator is repeated in the T.38 communication. |
| <b>Low Speed Redundancy</b><br>0–5 (3*)  | Set the number of times that low speed data is repeated in the T.38 communication.  |
| <b>High Speed Redundancy</b><br>0–5 (1*) | Set the number of times that high-speed data is repeated in the T.38 communication. |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

## Fax Server Setup

### General Fax Settings

| Menu item                                  | Description                                                                                                                    |
|--------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>To Format</b>                           | Specify a fax recipient.<br><br><b>Note:</b> If you want to use the fax number, then type the number sign (#) before a number. |
| <b>Reply Address</b>                       | Specify a reply address for sending fax.                                                                                       |
| <b>Subject</b>                             | Specify the fax subject and message.                                                                                           |
| <b>Message</b>                             |                                                                                                                                |
| <b>Enable analog receive</b><br>Off*<br>On | Set the printer to receive analog faxes.                                                                                       |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

## Fax Server Email Settings

| Menu item                                                                                                                         | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Use Email SMTP Server</b><br>On<br>Off*                                                                                        | Use the Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) settings for email in receiving and sending faxes.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> When set to On, all other settings of the Fax Server Email Settings menu are not shown.         </div> |
| <b>Primary SMTP Gateway</b>                                                                                                       | Type the IP address or host name of the primary SMTP server.                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>Primary SMTP Gateway Port</b><br>1–65535 (25*)                                                                                 | Enter the port number of the primary SMTP server.                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>Secondary SMTP Gateway</b>                                                                                                     | Type the server IP address or host name of your secondary or backup SMTP server.                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Secondary SMTP Gateway Port</b><br>1–65535 (25*)                                                                               | Enter the server port number of your secondary or backup SMTP server.                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>SMTP Timeout</b><br>5–30 (30*)                                                                                                 | Set the time before the printer times out if the SMTP server does not respond.                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>Reply Address</b>                                                                                                              | Specify a reply address for sending fax.                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>Use SSL/TLS</b><br>Disabled*<br>Negotiate<br>Required                                                                          | Specify whether to send fax using an encrypted link.                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>Require Trusted Certificate</b><br>Off<br>On*                                                                                  | Specify a trusted certificate when accessing the SMTP server.                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>SMTP Server Authentication</b><br>No authentication required*<br>Login / Plain<br>NTLM<br>CRAM-MD5<br>Digest-MD5<br>Kerberos 5 | Set the authentication type for the SMTP server.                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Device-Initiated Email</b><br>None*<br>Use Device SMTP Credentials                                                             | Specify whether credentials are required for device-initiated email.                                                                                                                                                             |

| Menu item                                                                                                                                                        | Description                                                                   |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>User-Initiated Email</b><br>None*<br>Use Device SMTP Credentials<br>Use Session User ID and Password<br>Use Session Email address and Password<br>Prompt user | Specify whether credentials are required for user-initiated email.            |
| <b>Use Active Directory Device Credentials</b><br>Off*<br>On                                                                                                     | Enable user credentials and group destinations to connect to the SMTP server. |
| <b>Device Userid</b>                                                                                                                                             | Specify the user ID and password to connect to the SMTP server.               |
| <b>Device Password</b>                                                                                                                                           |                                                                               |
| <b>Kerberos 5 REALM</b>                                                                                                                                          | Specify the realm for the Kerberos 5 authentication protocol.                 |
| <b>NTLM Domain</b>                                                                                                                                               | Specify the domain name for the NTLM security protocol.                       |
| <b>Disable "SMTP server not set up" error</b><br>Off*<br>On                                                                                                      | Hide the "SMTP server not set up" error message.                              |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

## Fax Server Scan Settings

| Menu item                                                       | Description                                                              |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Image Format</b><br>TIFF (.tif)<br>PDF (.pdf)*<br>XPS (.xps) | Specify the file format for the scanned image.                           |
| <b>Content Type</b><br>Text*<br>Text/Photo<br>Photo<br>Graphics | Improve the output result based on the content of the original document. |

| Menu item                                                                                                                         | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Content Source</b><br>Black and White Laser<br>Color Laser*<br>Inkjet<br>Photo/Film<br>Magazine<br>Newspaper<br>Press<br>Other | Improve the output result based on the source of the original document.                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Fax Resolution</b><br>Standard*<br>Fine<br>Super Fine<br>Ultra Fine                                                            | Set the fax resolution.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Sides</b><br>Off*<br>Short Edge<br>Long Edge                                                                                   | Specify the orientation of the original document when scanning on both sides of the document.                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>Darkness</b><br>1–9 (5*)                                                                                                       | Set the darkness of the output.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>Orientation</b><br>Portrait*<br>Landscape                                                                                      | Specify the orientation of text and graphics on the page.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>Original Size</b><br>[List of paper sizes]                                                                                     | Set the paper size of the original document. <div> <b>Notes</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Mixed Sizes is the U.S. factory default setting. A4 is the international factory default setting.</li> <li>This setting may vary depending on your printer model.</li> </ul> </div> |
| <b>Use Multi-Page TIFF</b><br>Off<br>On*                                                                                          | Choose between single- and multiple-page TIFF files.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

# Email

## Email Setup

| Menu item                                                                                                                         | Description                                                                      |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Primary SMTP Gateway</b>                                                                                                       | Type the IP address or host name of the primary SMTP server for sending email.   |
| <b>Primary SMTP Gateway Port</b><br>1–65535 (25*)                                                                                 | Enter the port number of the primary SMTP server.                                |
| <b>Secondary SMTP Gateway</b>                                                                                                     | Type the server IP address or host name of your secondary or backup SMTP server. |
| <b>Secondary SMTP Gateway Port</b><br>1–65535 (25*)                                                                               | Enter the server port number of your secondary or backup SMTP server.            |
| <b>SMTP Timeout</b><br>5–30 seconds (30*)                                                                                         | Set the time before the printer times out if the SMTP server does not respond.   |
| <b>Reply Address</b>                                                                                                              | Specify a reply address in the email.                                            |
| <b>Always use SMTP default Reply Address</b><br>On<br>Off*                                                                        | Always use the default reply address in the SMTP server.                         |
| <b>Use SSL/TLS</b><br>Disabled*<br>Negotiate<br>Required                                                                          | Specify whether to send email using an encrypted link.                           |
| <b>Require Trusted Certificate</b><br>Off<br>On*                                                                                  | Require a trusted certificate when accessing the SMTP server.                    |
| <b>SMTP Server Authentication</b><br>No authentication required*<br>Login / Plain<br>NTLM<br>CRAM-MD5<br>Digest-MD5<br>Kerberos 5 | Set the authentication type for the SMTP server.                                 |
| <b>Device-Initiated Email</b><br>None*<br>Use Device SMTP Credentials                                                             | Specify whether credentials are required for device-initiated email.             |

| Menu item                                                                                                                                                        | Description                                                        |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>User-Initiated Email</b><br>None*<br>Use Device SMTP Credentials<br>Use Session User ID and Password<br>Use Session Email address and Password<br>Prompt user | Specify whether credentials are required for user-initiated email. |
| <b>Use Active Directory Device Credentials</b><br>Off*<br>On                                                                                                     | Specify whether credentials are required for user-initiated email. |
| <b>Device Userid</b><br><b>Device Password</b>                                                                                                                   | Specify the user ID and password to connect to the SMTP server.    |
|                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                    |
| <b>Kerberos 5 REALM</b>                                                                                                                                          | Specify the realm for the Kerberos 5 authentication protocol.      |
| <b>NTLM Domain</b>                                                                                                                                               | Specify the domain name for the NTLM security protocol.            |
| <b>Disable “SMTP server not set up” error</b><br>Off*<br>On                                                                                                      | Hide the “SMTP server not set up” error message.                   |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

## Email Defaults

| Menu item                                                                                                                                          | Description                                      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Subject:</b><br><b>Message:</b>                                                                                                                 | Specify the email subject and message.           |
|                                                                                                                                                    |                                                  |
| <b>File Name</b>                                                                                                                                   | Specify the filename for the scanned document.   |
| <b>Format</b><br>JPEG (.jpg)<br>PDF (.pdf)*<br>TIFF (.tif)<br>XPS (.xps)<br>TXT (.txt)<br>RTF (.rtf)<br>DOCX (.docx)<br>XLSX (.xlsx)<br>CSV (.csv) | Specify the file format of the scanned document. |

| Menu item                                                                                                                                                              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Global OCR Settings</b><br><br>Recognized Languages<br>Auto Rotate (Off*)<br>Despeckle (Off*)<br>Auto Contrast Enhance (Off*)                                       | Configure the settings for optical character recognition (OCR).<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only if you have purchased and installed an OCR solution. </div>                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>PDF Settings</b><br><br>PDF Version (1.5*)<br>Archival Version (A-1a*)<br>Highly Compressed (Off*)<br>Secure (Off*)<br>Searchable (Off*)<br>Archival (PDF/A) (Off*) | Configure the PDF settings of the scanned document.<br><br><div> <b>Notes</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Archival Version and Archival (PDF/A) are supported only when PDF Version is set to 1.4.</li> <li>Highly Compressed appears only when a hard disk or an intelligent storage drive (ISD) is installed.</li> </ul> </div> |
| <b>Content Type</b><br><br>Text<br>Text/Photo*<br>Photo<br>Graphics                                                                                                    | Improve the output result based on the content type of the original document.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>Content Source</b><br><br>Black and White Laser<br>Color Laser*<br>Inkjet<br>Photo/Film<br>Magazine<br>Newspaper<br>Press<br>Other                                  | Improve the output result based on the content source of the original document.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>Color</b><br><br>Black and White<br>Gray<br>Color*<br>Auto                                                                                                          | Set the printer to capture file content in color or in mono.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |

| Menu item                                                                           | Description                                                                                   |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Resolution</b><br>75 dpi<br>150 dpi*<br>200 dpi<br>300 dpi<br>400 dpi<br>600 dpi | Set the resolution of the scanned image.                                                      |
| <b>Darkness</b><br>1–9 (5*)                                                         | Adjust the darkness of the scanned image.                                                     |
| <b>Orientation</b><br>Portrait*<br>Landscape                                        | Specify the orientation of the original document.                                             |
| <b>Original Size</b><br>Mixed Sizes*                                                | Set the paper size of the original document.                                                  |
| <b>Sides</b><br>Off*<br>Short Edge<br>Long Edge                                     | Specify the orientation of the original document when scanning on both sides of the document. |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item                                                                                                                                        | Description                                                                                 |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Color Balance</b><br>Cyan (0*)<br>Magenta (0*)<br>Yellow (0*)                                                                                 | Adjust the color intensity for cyan, magenta, and yellow.                                   |
| <b>Color Dropout</b><br>Color Dropout (None*)<br>Default Red Threshold (128*)<br>Default Green Threshold (128*)<br>Default Blue Threshold (128*) | Specify which color to drop during scanning, and adjust the dropout setting for that color. |
| <b>Auto Color Detect</b><br>Color Sensitivity (5*)<br>Area Sensitivity (5*)<br>Email Bit Depth (1 bit*)<br>Minimum Scan Resolution (300 dpi*)    | Configure the auto color detection setting.                                                 |
| <b>JPEG Quality</b><br>Best for content*<br>5–95                                                                                                 | Set the JPEG quality of the scanned image.                                                  |



| Menu item                                                                                | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Contrast</b><br>Best for content*<br>0–5                                              | Specify the contrast for the scanned image.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>Background Removal</b><br>Background Detection (Content-based*)<br>Level (0*)         | Remove the background color or image noise from the original document. <div> <b>Notes</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Content-based removes the background color from the original document.</li> <li>Fixed removes image noise from a photo.</li> </ul> </div> |
| <b>Mirror Image</b><br>Off*<br>On                                                        | Create a mirror image of the original document.                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>Negative Image</b><br>Off*<br>On                                                      | Create a negative image of the original document.                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>Shadow Detail</b><br>-4 to 4 (0*)                                                     | Adjust the shadow detail in the scanned image.                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>Scan Edge to Edge</b><br>Off*<br>On                                                   | Scan the original document from edge to edge.                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>Sharpness</b><br>1–5 (3*)                                                             | Adjust the sharpness in the scanned image.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Temperature</b><br>-4 to 4 (0*)                                                       | Generate a bluer or redder output of the original document.                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>Blank Pages</b><br>Blank Page Removal (Do Not Remove*)<br>Blank Page Sensitivity (5*) | Set the sensitivity of scans in relation to blank pages in the original document.                                                                                                                                                                                          |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item                                                                                   | Description                                                                                                                                                                 |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Max Email Size</b><br>0–65535 (0*)                                                       | Set the allowable file size for each email.                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Size Error Message</b>                                                                   | Specify an error message that the printer sends when an email exceeds its allowable file size.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> You can type up to 1024 characters.         </div> |
| <b>Limit Destinations</b>                                                                   | Limit sending of email only to the specified list of domain name.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> Use a comma to separate each domain.         </div>                             |
| <b>Send Me a Copy</b><br><br>Never appears*<br>On by Default<br>Off by Default<br>Always On | Send a copy of the email to yourself.                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>Allow self emails only</b><br><br>Off*<br>On                                             | Set the printer to send emails to yourself only.                                                                                                                            |
| <b>Use cc:/bcc:</b><br><br>Off*<br>On                                                       | Enable carbon copy and blind carbon copy in email.                                                                                                                          |
| <b>Use Multi-Page TIFF</b><br><br>Off<br>On*                                                | Enable scanning of multiple TIFF images in one TIFF file.                                                                                                                   |
| <b>TIFF Compression</b><br><br>JPEG<br>LZW*                                                 | Specify the compression type for TIFF files.                                                                                                                                |
| <b>Text Default</b><br><br>5–95 (75*)                                                       | Set the text quality in the content being scanned.                                                                                                                          |
| <b>Text/Photo Default</b><br><br>5–95 (75*)                                                 | Set the text and photo quality in the content being scanned.                                                                                                                |
| <b>Photo Default</b><br><br>5–95 (50*)                                                      | Set the photo quality of the content being scanned.                                                                                                                         |

| Menu item                                                                         | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Adjust ADF Skew</b><br>Off<br>On*                                              | Set the printer to adjust the skewed images from documents that are scanned from the ADF.                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>Transmission Log</b><br>Print log*<br>Do Not Print Log<br>Print Only For Error | Print a transmission log for email scans.                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>Log Paper Source</b><br>Tray [x] (1*)<br>Multipurpose Feeder                   | Specify the paper source for printing email logs.                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>Custom Job Scanning</b><br>Off*<br>On                                          | Set the printer to scan the first set of original documents using the specified settings, and then scan the next set with the same or different settings.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when a hard disk or an ISD is installed. </div> |
| <b>Scan Preview</b><br>Off*<br>On                                                 | Show a scan preview of the original document.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when a hard disk or an ISD is installed. </div>                                                                                                             |
| <b>Allow Save as Shortcut</b><br>Off<br>On*                                       | Save an email address as a shortcut.                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>Email Images Sent As</b><br>Attachment*<br>Web Link                            | Specify how to send the images that are included in the email.                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>Reset Email Information After Sending</b><br>Off<br>On*                        | Reset the To, Subject, Message, and Filename fields to their default values after sending an email.                                                                                                                                                             |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

## Web Link Setup

| Menu item        | Description                                                                                      |
|------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Server</b>    | Specify the credentials of the server that is hosting the images that are included in the email. |
| <b>Login</b>     |                                                                                                  |
| <b>Password</b>  |                                                                                                  |
| <b>Path</b>      |                                                                                                  |
| <b>File Name</b> |                                                                                                  |
| <b>Web Link</b>  |                                                                                                  |

## FTP

### FTP Defaults

| Menu item                                                                                                                                          | Description                                                                                                                                                                          |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Format</b><br>JPEG (.jpg)<br>PDF (.pdf)*<br>TIFF (.tif)<br>XPS (.xps)<br>TXT (.txt)<br>RTF (.rtf)<br>DOCX (.docx)<br>XLSX (.xlsx)<br>CSV (.csv) | Specify the file format for the scanned image.                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>Global OCR Settings</b><br>Recognized Languages<br>Auto Rotate (Off*)<br>Despeckle (Off*)<br>Auto Contrast Enhance (Off*)                       | Configure the settings for optical character recognition (OCR). <div> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only if you have purchased and installed an OCR solution.           </div> |

| Menu item                                                                                                                                                          | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>PDF Settings</b><br>PDF Version (1.5*)<br>Archival Version (A-1a*)<br>Highly Compressed (Off*)<br>Secure (Off*)<br>Searchable (Off*)<br>Archival (PDF/A) (Off*) | Configure the PDF settings for the scanned image.<br><br><div> <b>Notes</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Archival Version and Archival (PDF/A) are supported only when PDF Version is set to 1.4.</li> <li>Highly Compressed appears only when a hard disk or an intelligent storage drive (ISD) is installed.</li> </ul> </div> |
| <b>Content Type</b><br>Text<br>Text/Photo*<br>Graphics<br>Photo                                                                                                    | Improve the output result based on the content type of the original document.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>Content Source</b><br>Black and White Laser<br>Color Laser*<br>Inkjet<br>Photo/Film<br>Magazine<br>Newspaper<br>Press<br>Other                                  | Improve the output result based on the content source of the original document.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>Color</b><br>Black and White<br>Gray<br>Color*<br>Auto                                                                                                          | Set the printer to capture file content in color or in mono.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>Resolution</b><br>75 dpi<br>150 dpi*<br>200 dpi<br>300 dpi<br>400 dpi<br>600 dpi                                                                                | Set the resolution of the scanned image.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>Darkness</b><br>1–9 (5*)                                                                                                                                        | Adjust the darkness of the scanned image.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>Orientation</b><br>Portrait*<br>Landscape                                                                                                                       | Specify the orientation of the original document.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |

| Menu item                                       | Description                                                          |
|-------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Original Size</b><br>Mixed Sizes*            | Set the paper size of the original document.                         |
| <b>Sides</b><br>Off*<br>Long Edge<br>Short Edge | Specify the orientation when scanning on both sides of the document. |
| <b>File Name</b>                                | Specify the file name of the scanned image.                          |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item                                                                                                                                        | Description                                                                                 |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Color Balance</b><br>Cyan (0*)<br>Magenta (0*)<br>Yellow (0*)                                                                                 | Adjust the color intensity for cyan, magenta, and yellow.                                   |
| <b>Color Dropout</b><br>Color Dropout (None*)<br>Default Red Threshold (128*)<br>Default Green Threshold (128*)<br>Default Blue Threshold (128*) | Specify which color to drop during scanning, and adjust the dropout setting for that color. |
| <b>Auto Color Detect</b><br>Color Sensitivity (5*)<br>Area Sensitivity (5*)<br>FTP Bit Depth (1 bit*)<br>Minimum Scan Resolution (300 dpi*)      | Configure the auto color detection setting.                                                 |
| <b>JPEG Quality</b><br>Best for content*<br>5–95                                                                                                 | Set the JPEG quality of the scanned image.                                                  |
| <b>Contrast</b><br>Best for content*<br>0<br>1<br>2<br>3<br>4<br>5                                                                               | Specify the contrast for the scanned image.                                                 |

| Menu item                                                                                | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Background Removal</b><br>Background Detection (Content-based*)<br>Level (0*)         | Remove the background color or image noise from the original document.<br><br><div> <b>Notes</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Content-based removes the background color from the original document .</li> <li>Fixed removes image noise from a photo.</li> </ul> </div> |
| <b>Mirror Image</b><br>Off*<br>On                                                        | Create a mirror image of the original document.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Negative Image</b><br>Off*<br>On                                                      | Create a negative image of the original document.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>Shadow Detail</b><br>-4 to 4 (0*)                                                     | Adjust the shadow detail in the scanned image.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>Scan Edge to Edge</b><br>Off*<br>On                                                   | Allow edge-to-edge scanning of the original document.                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>Sharpness</b><br>1–5 (3*)                                                             | Adjust the sharpness in the scanned image.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>Temperature</b><br>-4 to 4 (0*)                                                       | Generate a bluer or redder output of the original document.                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>Blank Pages</b><br>Blank Page Removal (Do Not Remove*)<br>Blank Page Sensitivity (5*) | Set the sensitivity of scans in relation to blank pages in the original document.                                                                                                                                                                                                  |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item                         | Description                                   |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| <b>Text Default</b><br>5–95 (75*) | Set the quality of text on the scanned image. |

| Menu item                                                                         | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Text/Photo Default</b><br>5–95 (75*)                                           | Set the quality of text and photo on the scanned image.                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>Photo Default</b><br>5–95 (50*)                                                | Set the quality of photo on the scanned image.                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>Use Multi-Page TIFF</b><br>On*<br>Off                                          | Enable scanning of multiple TIFF images in one TIFF file.                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>TIFF Compression</b><br>LZW*<br>JPEG                                           | Specify the compression type for TIFF files.                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>Transmission Log</b><br>Print Log*<br>Do Not Print Log<br>Print Only For Error | Print a transmission log for FTP scans.                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>Log Paper Source</b><br>Tray [x] (1*)<br>Multipurpose Feeder                   | Specify the paper source for printing FTP logs.                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Custom Job Scanning</b><br>Off*<br>On                                          | Set the printer to scan the first set of original documents using the specified settings, and then scan the next set with the same or different settings. <div> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when a hard disk or an ISD is installed.           </div> |
| <b>Scan Preview</b><br>Off*<br>On                                                 | Show a preview of the original document. <div> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when a hard disk or an ISD is installed.           </div>                                                                                                                  |
| <b>Allow Save as Shortcut</b><br>Off<br>On*                                       | Save an FTP address as a shortcut.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Adjust ADF Skew</b><br>Off*<br>On                                              | Set the printer to adjust the skewed images from documents that are scanned from the ADF.                                                                                                                                                                          |



**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

## USB Drive

### Flash Drive Scan

| Menu item                                                                                                                                                          | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Format</b><br>JPEG (.jpg)<br>PDF (.pdf)*<br>TIFF (.tif)<br>XPS (.xps)<br>TXT (.txt)<br>RTF (.rtf)<br>DOCX (.docx)<br>XLSX (.xlsx)<br>CSV (.csv)                 | Specify the file format for the scanned image.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>Global OCR Settings</b><br>Recognized Languages<br>Auto Rotate (Off*)<br>Despeckle (Off*)<br>Auto Contrast Enhance (Off*)                                       | Configure the settings for optical character recognition (OCR).<br><div> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only if you have purchased and installed an OCR solution.                     </div>                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>PDF Settings</b><br>PDF Version (1.5*)<br>Archival Version (A-1a*)<br>Highly Compressed (Off*)<br>Secure (Off*)<br>Searchable (Off*)<br>Archival (PDF/A) (Off*) | Configure the PDF settings of the scanned image.<br><div> <b>Notes</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Archival Version and Archival (PDF/A) are supported only when PDF Version is set to 1.4.</li> <li>Highly Compressed appears only when a hard disk or an intelligent storage drive (ISD) is installed.</li> </ul> </div> |
| <b>Content Type</b><br>Text<br>Text/Photo*<br>Graphics<br>Photo                                                                                                    | Improve the output result based on the content type of the original document.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |

| Menu item                                                                                                                         | Description                                                                                   |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Content Source</b><br>Black and White Laser<br>Color Laser*<br>Inkjet<br>Photo/Film<br>Magazine<br>Newspaper<br>Press<br>Other | Improve the output result based on the content source of the original document.               |
| <b>Color</b><br>Black and White<br>Gray<br>Color*<br>Auto                                                                         | Set the printer to capture file content in color or in mono.                                  |
| <b>Resolution</b><br>75 dpi<br>150 dpi*<br>200 dpi<br>300 dpi<br>400 dpi<br>600 dpi                                               | Set the resolution of the scanned image.                                                      |
| <b>Darkness</b><br>1–9 (5*)                                                                                                       | Adjust the darkness of the scanned image.                                                     |
| <b>Orientation</b><br>Portrait*<br>Landscape                                                                                      | Specify the orientation of the original document.                                             |
| <b>Original Size</b><br>Mixed Sizes*                                                                                              | Set the paper size of the original document.                                                  |
| <b>Sides</b><br>Off*<br>Long edge<br>Short edge                                                                                   | Specify the orientation of the original document when scanning on both sides of the document. |
| <b>File Name</b>                                                                                                                  | Specify the file name of the scanned image.                                                   |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item                                                        | Description                                               |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Color Balance</b><br>Cyan (0*)<br>Magenta (0*)<br>Yellow (0*) | Adjust the color intensity for cyan, magenta, and yellow. |

| Menu item                                                                                                                                        | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Color Dropout</b><br>Color Dropout (None*)<br>Default Red Threshold (128*)<br>Default Green Threshold (128*)<br>Default Blue Threshold (128*) | Specify which color to drop during scanning, and adjust the dropout setting for that color.                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>Auto Color Detect</b><br>Color Sensitivity (5*)<br>Area Sensitivity (5*)<br>Scan Bit Depth (1 bit*)<br>Minimum Scan Resolution (300 dpi*)     | Configure the auto color detection setting.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>JPEG Quality</b><br>Best for content*<br>5–95                                                                                                 | Set the JPEG quality of the scanned image.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Contrast</b><br>Best for content*<br>0–5                                                                                                      | Specify the contrast for the scanned image.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>Background Removal</b><br>Background Detection (Content-based*)<br>Level (0*)                                                                 | Remove the background color or image noise from the original document. <div> <b>Notes</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Content-based removes the background color from the original document.</li> <li>Fixed removes image noise from a photo.</li> </ul> </div> |
| <b>Mirror Image</b><br>Off*<br>On                                                                                                                | Create a mirror image of the original document.                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>Negative Image</b><br>Off*<br>On                                                                                                              | Create a negative image of the original document.                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>Shadow Detail</b><br>-4 to 4 (0*)                                                                                                             | Adjust the shadow detail in the scanned image.                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>Scan Edge to Edge</b><br>Off*<br>On                                                                                                           | Scan the original document from edge to edge.                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |

| Menu item                                                                                | Description                                                                       |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Sharpness</b><br>1–5 (3*)                                                             | Adjust the sharpness in the scanned image.                                        |
| <b>Temperature</b><br>-4 to 4 (0*)                                                       | Generate a bluer or redder output of the original document.                       |
| <b>Blank Pages</b><br>Blank Page Removal (Do Not Remove*)<br>Blank Page Sensitivity (5*) | Set the sensitivity of scans in relation to blank pages in the original document. |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item                                | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Text Default</b><br>5–95 (75*)        | Set the quality of text on the scanned image.                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <b>Text/Photo Default</b><br>5–95 (75*)  | Set the quality of text and photo on the scanned image.                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>Photo Default</b><br>5–95 (50*)       | Set the quality of a photo on the scanned image.                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>Use Multi-Page TIFF</b><br>Off<br>On* | Enable scanning of multiple TIFF images in one TIFF file.                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>TIFF Compression</b><br>LZW*<br>JPEG  | Specify the compression type for TIFF files.                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>Custom Job Scanning</b><br>Off*<br>On | Set the printer to scan the first set of original documents using the specified settings, and then scan the next set with the same or different settings. <div> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when a hard disk or an ISD is installed.           </div> |

| Menu item                            | Description                                                                                                                                         |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Scan Preview</b><br>Off*<br>On    | Show a scan preview of the original document.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when a hard disk or an ISD is installed. </div> |
| <b>Adjust ADF Skew</b><br>Off*<br>On | Set the printer to adjust the skewed images from documents that are scanned from the ADF.                                                           |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

## Flash Drive Print

| Menu item                                                                                      | Description                                                                                               |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Number of Copies</b><br>1–9999 (1*)                                                         | Set the number of copies.                                                                                 |
| <b>Paper Source</b><br>Tray [x] (1*)<br>Multipurpose Feeder<br>Manual Paper<br>Manual Envelope | Set the paper source for the print job.                                                                   |
| <b>Color</b><br>Off<br>On*                                                                     | Print a flash drive file in color.                                                                        |
| <b>Collate</b><br>(1,1,1) (2,2,2)<br>(1,2,3) (1,2,3)*                                          | Keep the pages of a print job stacked in sequence, particularly when printing multiple copies of the job. |
| <b>Sides</b><br>1-Sided*<br>2-Sided                                                            | Specify whether to print on one side or both sides of the paper.                                          |
| <b>Flip Style</b><br>Long Edge*<br>Short Edge                                                  | Determine which side of the paper is bound when performing two-sided printing.                            |

| Menu item                                                                                                                                                                   | Description                                                                     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Pages per Side</b><br>Off*<br>2 pages per side<br>3 pages per side<br>4 pages per side<br>6 pages per side<br>9 pages per side<br>12 pages per side<br>16 pages per side | Print multiple page images on one side of a sheet of paper.                     |
| <b>Pages per Side Ordering</b><br>Horizontal*<br>Reverse Horizontal<br>Reverse Vertical<br>Vertical                                                                         | Specify the positioning of multiple page images when using Pages per Side menu. |
| <b>Pages per Side Orientation</b><br>Auto*<br>Landscape<br>Portrait                                                                                                         | Specify the orientation of multiple page images when using Pages per Side menu. |
| <b>Pages per Side Border</b><br>None*<br>Solid                                                                                                                              | Print a border around each page image when using Pages per Side menu.           |
| <b>Separator Sheets</b><br>Off*<br>Between Copies<br>Between Jobs<br>Between Pages                                                                                          | Insert blank separator sheets when printing.                                    |
| <b>Separator Sheet Source</b><br>Tray [x] (1*)<br>Multipurpose Feeder                                                                                                       | Specify the paper source for the separator sheet.                               |
| <b>Blank Pages</b><br>Do Not Print*<br>Print                                                                                                                                | Print blank pages in a print job.                                               |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

# Network/Ports

## Network Overview

| Menu item                                                      | Description                                                                                                                                                  |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Active Adapter</b><br>Auto*<br>Standard Network<br>Wireless | Specify the type of the network connection.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> Wireless is available only in printers connected to a wireless network.         </div> |
| <b>Network Status</b>                                          | Show the connectivity status of the printer network.                                                                                                         |
| <b>Display Network Status on Printer</b><br>Off<br>On*         | Show the network status on the display.                                                                                                                      |
| <b>Speed, Duplex</b>                                           | Show the speed of the currently active network card.                                                                                                         |
| <b>IPv4</b>                                                    | Show the IPv4 address.                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>All IPv6 Addresses</b>                                      | Show all IPv6 addresses.                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>Reset Print Server</b>                                      | Reset all active network connections to the printer.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> This setting removes all network configuration settings.         </div>       |
| <b>Network Job Timeout</b><br>Off<br>On* (90 seconds)          | Set the time before the printer cancels a network print job.                                                                                                 |
| <b>Banner Page</b><br>Off*<br>On                               | Print a banner page.                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>Scan to PC Port Range</b>                                   | Specify a valid port range for printers that are behind a port blocking firewall.                                                                            |
| <b>Enable Network Connections</b><br>Off<br>On*                | Enable the printer to connect to a network.                                                                                                                  |

| Menu item                        | Description                                                 |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Enable LLDP</b><br>Off*<br>On | Enable Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP) in the printer. |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

## Wireless

**Note:** This menu is available only in printers connected to a Wi-Fi network or printers that have a wireless network adapter.

| Menu item                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Description                                             |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Setup On Printer Panel</b><br>Choose Network<br>Add Wi-Fi Network<br>Network Name<br>Network Mode<br>Infrastructure<br>Wireless Security Mode<br>Disabled*<br>WEP<br>WPA2/WPA - Personal<br>WPA2 - Personal | Configure the Wi-Fi connection using the control panel. |



| Menu item                                                                                                                 | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Wi-Fi Protected Setup</b><br><br>WPS Auto Detect<br><br>Off<br>On*<br>Start Push Button Method<br><br>Start PIN Method | <p>Establish a Wi-Fi network and enable network security.</p> <div> <b>Notes</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>WPS Auto Detect appears only when the Wireless Security Mode is set to WEP.</li> <li>Start Push-Button Method connects the printer to a Wi-Fi network when buttons on both the printer and the access point (wireless router) are pressed within a given time.</li> <li>Start PIN Method connects the printer to a Wi-Fi network when a PIN on the printer is entered into the wireless settings of the access point.</li> </ul> </div> |
| <b>Network Mode</b><br><br>BSS Type<br><br>Infrastructure*                                                                | <p>Specify the network mode.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>Compatibility</b><br><br>802.11b/g/n (2.4GHz)*<br>802.11a/b/g/n/ac (2.4GHz/5GHz)<br>802.11a/n/ac (5GHz)                | <p>Specify the standard for the Wi-Fi network.</p> <div> <b>Note:</b> 802.11a/b/g/n/ac (2.4GHz/5GHz) and 802.11a/n/ac (5GHz) only appear when a Wi-Fi option is installed. </div>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>Wireless Security Mode</b><br><br>Disabled*<br>WEP<br>WPA2/WPA-Personal<br>WPA2-Personal<br>802.1x - RADIUS            | <p>Set the security mode for connecting the printer to Wi-Fi devices.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>WEP Authentication Mode</b><br><br>Auto*<br>Open<br>Shared                                                             | <p>Set the type of Wireless Encryption Protocol (WEP) for the printer.</p> <div> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when the Wireless Security Mode is set to WEP. </div>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |

| Menu item                                                                                                     | Description                                                                                                                                                                       |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Set WEP Key</b>                                                                                            | Specify a WEP password for secure Wi-Fi connection.                                                                                                                               |
| <b>WPA2/WPA Personal</b><br>AES                                                                               | <p>Enable Wi-Fi security through Wi-Fi Protected Access® (WPA™).</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when the Wireless Security Mode is set to WPA2/WPA-Personal.</p> |
| <b>Set Pre-Shared Key</b>                                                                                     | Set the password for secure Wi-Fi connection.                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>WPA2-Personal</b><br>AES                                                                                   | <p>Enable Wi-Fi security through WPA2™.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when the Wireless Security Mode is set to WPA2-Personal.</p>                              |
| <b>802.1x Encryption Mode</b><br>WPA+<br>WPA2*                                                                | <p>Enable Wi-Fi security through 802.1x standard.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when the Wireless Security Mode is set to 802.1x - RADIUS.</p>                  |
| <b>IPv4</b><br>Enable DHCP<br><br>On*<br>Off<br>Set Static IP Address<br><br>IP Address<br>Netmask<br>Gateway | Enable and configure IPv4 settings in the printer.                                                                                                                                |

| Menu item                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>IPv6</b><br>Enable IPv6<br>On*<br>Off<br>Enable DHCPv6<br>On<br>Off*<br>Stateless Address Autoconfiguration<br>On*<br>Off<br>DNS Server Address<br>Manually Assigned IPv6 Address<br>Manually Assigned IPv6 Router<br>Address Prefix<br>All IPv6 Addresses<br>All IPv6 Router Addresses | Enable and configure IPv6 settings in the printer.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>Network Address</b><br>UAA<br>LAA                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | View the network addresses.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>PCL SmartSwitch</b><br>Off<br>On*                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Set the printer to switch automatically to PCL emulation when a print job requires it, regardless of the default printer language. <div> <p><b>Note:</b> If PCL SmartSwitch is off, then the printer does not examine incoming data and uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu.</p> </div> |
| <b>PS SmartSwitch</b><br>Off<br>On*                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Set the printer to switch automatically to PS emulation when a print job requires it, regardless of the default printer language. <div> <p><b>Note:</b> If PS SmartSwitch is off, then the printer does not examine incoming data and uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu.</p> </div>   |

| Menu item                                  | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|--------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Job Buffering</b><br>On<br>Off*         | Temporarily store print jobs in the hard disk or intelligent storage drive (ISD) before printing.<br><br><b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when a hard disk or an ISD is installed.                                                                                |
| <b>Mac Binary PS</b><br>Auto*<br>On<br>Off | Set the printer to process Macintosh binary PostScript emulation print jobs.<br><br><b>Notes</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• On processes raw binary PostScript emulation print jobs.</li><li>• Off filters print jobs using the standard protocol.</li></ul> |

## Wi-Fi Direct

**Note:** This menu is available only in printers connected to a Wi-Fi network or printers that have a wireless network adapter.

| Menu item                                        | Description                                                                |
|--------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Enable Wi-Fi Direct</b><br>On<br>Off*         | Set the printer to connect directly to Wi-Fi devices.                      |
| <b>Wi-Fi Direct Name</b>                         | Specify the name of the Wi-Fi Direct network.                              |
| <b>Wi-Fi Direct Password</b>                     | Set the password to authenticate and validate users on a Wi-Fi connection. |
| <b>Show Password on Setup Page</b><br>Off<br>On* | Show the Wi-Fi Direct Password on the Network Setup Page.                  |
| <b>Preferred Channel Number</b><br>1–11<br>Auto* | Set the preferred channel of the Wi-Fi network.                            |

| Menu item                                             | Description                                                                                                                               |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Group Owner IP Address</b>                         | Specify the IP address of the group owner.                                                                                                |
| <b>Auto-Accept Push Button Requests</b><br>Off*<br>On | Accept requests to connect to the network automatically.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> Accepting clients automatically is not secured. </div> |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

## AirPrint

**Note:** This menu appears only in the Embedded Web Server.

| Menu item                            | Description                                                                                                                                        |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>All AirPrint Functions</b>        | Show the AirPrint status of the printer.                                                                                                           |
| <b>Enable AirPrint</b><br>On*<br>Off | Enable the AirPrint feature.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only if Internet Printing Protocol (IPP) or mDNS is disabled. </div> |
| <b>Enable iBeacon</b><br>On<br>Off*  | Enable the iBeacon feature.                                                                                                                        |
| <b>Bonjour Name</b>                  | Identify printer designation and location.                                                                                                         |
| <b>Organization Name</b>             |                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Organizational Unit</b>           |                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Printer Location</b>              |                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Printer's Latitude</b>            |                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Printer's Longitude</b>           |                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Printer's Altitude</b>            |                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>More Options</b>                  |                                                                                                                                                    |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

## Mobile Services Management

| Menu item                                    | Description                                                                |
|----------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Enable IPP Print</b><br>On*<br>Off        | Allow printing from mobile devices using Internet Printing Protocol (IPP). |
| <b>Enable IPP Fax</b><br>On*<br>Off          | Allow sending faxes using Internet Printing Protocol (IPP).                |
| <b>Enable IPP Over USB</b><br>On*<br>Off     | Allow print or scan jobs using USB connection.                             |
| <b>Enable Scan</b><br>On*<br>Off             | Allow scanning using eSCL protocol.                                        |
| <b>Enable Mopria Discovery</b><br>On*<br>Off | Allow the printer to be detected by Mopria-enabled devices.                |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

## Ethernet

| Menu item                                                 | Description                                   |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| <b>Network Speed</b>                                      | Show the speed of the active network adapter. |
| <b>IPv4</b><br>Enable DHCP (On*)<br>Set Static IP Address | Configure the IPv4 settings.                  |

| Menu item                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>IPv6</b><br>Enable IPv6 (On*)<br>Enable DHCPv6 (Off*)<br>Stateless Address Autoconfiguration (On*)<br>DNS Server Address<br>Manually Assigned IPv6 Address<br>Manually Assigned IPv6 Router<br>Address Prefix (64*)<br>All IPv6 Addresses<br>All IPv6 Router Addresses | Configure the IPv6 settings.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>Network Address</b><br>UAA<br>LAA                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Specify the network address.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>PCL SmartSwitch</b><br>Off<br>On*                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Set the printer to switch automatically to PCL emulation when a print job requires it, regardless of the default printer language.<br><div> <b>Note:</b> When this setting is disabled, the printer does not examine incoming data and uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu.         </div>        |
| <b>PS SmartSwitch</b><br>Off<br>On*                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Set the printer to switch automatically to PostScript emulation when a print job requires it, regardless of the default printer language.<br><div> <b>Note:</b> When this setting is disabled, the printer does not examine incoming data and uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu.         </div> |
| <b>Job Buffering</b><br>Off*<br>On                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Temporarily store print jobs in the hard disk or intelligent storage drive (ISD) before printing.<br><div> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when a hard disk or an ISD is installed.         </div>                                                                                                                 |

| Menu item                                                  | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Mac Binary PS</b><br><br>Auto*<br>On<br>Off             | Set the printer to process Macintosh binary PostScript emulation print jobs.<br><br><div><b>Notes</b><ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Auto processes print jobs from computers using either Windows or Macintosh operating systems.</li><li>• Off filters PostScript emulation print jobs using the standard protocol.</li></ul></div> |
| <b>Energy Efficient Ethernet</b><br><br>On<br>Off<br>Auto* | Reduce power consumption when the printer does not receive data from the Ethernet network.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

## TCP/IP

**Note:** This menu appears only in network printers or printers attached to print servers.

| Menu item                                                      | Description                                                                 |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Set Hostname</b>                                            | Set the current TCP/IP host name.                                           |
| <b>Domain Name</b>                                             | Set the domain name.                                                        |
| <b>Allow DHCP/BOOTP to update NTP server</b><br><br>On*<br>Off | Allow the DHCP and BOOTP clients to update the NTP settings of the printer. |
| <b>Zero Configuration Name</b>                                 | Specify a service name for the zero configuration network.                  |
| <b>Enable Auto IP</b><br><br>Off<br>On*                        | Assign an IP address automatically.                                         |
| <b>DNS Server Address</b>                                      | Specify the current Domain Name System (DNS) server address.                |



| Menu item                                                                                                        | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Backup DNS Address</b>                                                                                        | Specify the backup DNS server addresses.                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <b>Backup DNS Address 2</b>                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Backup DNS Address 3</b>                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Domain Search Order</b>                                                                                       | Specify a list of domain names to locate the printer and its resources that reside in different domains on the network.                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>Enable DDNS</b><br>Off*<br>On                                                                                 | Update the Dynamic DNS settings.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>DDNS TTL</b>                                                                                                  | Specify the current DDNS settings.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Default TTL</b>                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>DDNS Refresh Time</b>                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Enable mDNS</b><br>Off<br>On*                                                                                 | Update the multicast DNS settings.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>WINS Server Address</b>                                                                                       | Specify a server address for Windows Internet Name Service (WINS).                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Enable BOOTP</b><br>Off*<br>On                                                                                | Allow the BOOTP to assign a printer IP address.                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Restricted Server List</b>                                                                                    | Specify the IP addresses that are allowed to communicate with the printer over TCP/IP.<br><br><div> <b>Notes</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use a comma to separate each IP address.</li> <li>• You can add up to 50 IP addresses.</li> </ul> </div> |
| <b>Restricted Server List Options</b><br>Block All Ports*<br>Block Printing Only<br>Block Printing and HTTP Only | Specify the access option for IP addresses that are not in the list.                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>MTU</b><br>256–1500 Ethernet (1500*)                                                                          | Specify a maximum transmission unit (MTU) parameter for the TCP connections.                                                                                                                                                                                       |

| Menu item                                                                                   | Description                                                                                                                                                      |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Raw Print Port</b><br>1–65535 (9100*)                                                    | Specify a raw port number for printers connected on a network.                                                                                                   |
| <b>Outbound Traffic Maximum Speed</b><br>Off*<br>On                                         | Set the maximum transfer rate of the printer.<br><div> <b>Note:</b> When enabled, the option for this setting is 100–1000000 Kilobits/second.             </div> |
| <b>TLS Support</b><br>Enable TLSv1.0 (Off)<br>Enable TLSv1.1 (Off*)<br>Enable TLSv1.2 (On*) | Enable the Transport Layer Security protocol.                                                                                                                    |
| <b>SSL Cipher List</b>                                                                      | Specify the cipher algorithms to use for the SSL or the TLS connections.                                                                                         |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

## SNMP

**Note:** This menu appears only in network printers or printers that are attached to print servers.

| Menu item                                                                                                                                | Description                                                                                                      |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>SNMP Versions 1 and 2c</b><br>Enabled<br>Off<br>On*<br>Allow SNMP Set<br>Off<br>On*<br>Enable PPM MIB<br>Off<br>On*<br>SNMP Community | Configure Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) versions 1 and 2c to install print drivers and applications. |

| Menu item                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Description                                                          |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>SNMP Version 3</b><br>Enabled<br>Off<br>On*<br>Context name<br>Set Read/Write Credentials<br>User Name<br>Authentication Password<br>Privacy Password<br>Set Read-only Credentials<br>User Name<br>Authentication Password<br>Privacy Password<br>Authentication Hash<br>MD5<br>SHA1*<br>Minimum Authentication Level<br>No Authentication, No Privacy<br>Authentication, No Privacy<br>Authentication, Privacy*<br>Privacy Algorithm<br>Des<br>AES-128* | Configure SNMP version 3 to install and update the printer security. |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

## IPSec

**Note:** This menu appears only in network printers or printers that are attached to print servers.

| Menu item                                                        | Description                                                                                                                       |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Enable IPSec</b><br>Off*<br>On                                | Enable Internet Protocol Security (IPSec).                                                                                        |
| <b>Base Configuration</b><br>Default*<br>Compatibility<br>Secure | Set the IPSec base configuration. <div> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when Enable IPSec is set to On.           </div> |

| Menu item                                                                                                          | Description                                                                                                                                     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>DH (Diffie-Hellman) Group Proposal</b><br><br>modp2048 (14)*<br>modp3072 (15)<br>modp4096 (16)<br>modp6144 (17) | Set the IPsec base configuration.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when Base Configuration is set to Compatibility. </div> |
| <b>Proposed Encryption Method</b><br><br>3DES<br>AES*                                                              | Set the encryption method.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when Base Configuration is set to Compatibility. </div>        |
| <b>Proposed Authentication Method</b><br><br>SHA1<br>SHA256*<br>SHA512                                             | Set the authentication method.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when Base Configuration is set to Compatibility. </div>    |
| <b>IKE SA Lifetime (Hours)</b><br><br>1<br>2<br>4<br>8<br>24*                                                      | Specify the IKE SA expiry period.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when Base Configuration is set to Secure. </div>        |
| <b>IPsec SA Lifetime (Hours)</b><br><br>1<br>2<br>4<br>8*<br>24                                                    | Specify the IPsec SA expiry period.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when Base Configuration is set to Secure. </div>      |
| <b>IPsec Device Certificate</b>                                                                                    | Specify an IPsec certificate.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when Enable IPsec is set to On. </div>                      |

| Menu item                                                                 | Description                                                                                                                              |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Pre-Shared Key Authenticated Connections</b><br>Host [x]               | Configure the authenticated connections of the printer.<br><br><b>Note:</b> These menu items appear only when Enable IPsec is set to On. |
| <b>Certificate Authenticated Connections</b><br>Host [x] Address[/subnet] |                                                                                                                                          |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

## 802.1x

**Note:** This menu appears only in network printers or printers that are attached to print servers.

| Menu item                                                                                                                                                                                          | Description                                                                       |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Active</b><br>Off*<br>On                                                                                                                                                                        | Let the printer join networks that require authentication before allowing access. |
| <b>802.1x Authentication</b><br>Device Login Name<br>Device Login Password<br>Validate Serve Certificate (On*)<br>Enable Event Logging (Off*)<br>802.1x Device Certificate                         | Configure the settings for authenticating the 802.1x connection.                  |
| <b>Allowable Authentication Mechanisms</b><br>EAP - MD5 (On*)<br>EAP - MSCHAPv2 (On*)<br>LEAP (On*)<br>PEAP (On*)<br>EAP - TLS (On*)<br>EAP - TTLS (On*)<br>TTLS Authentication Method (MSCHAPv2*) | Configure the allowed authentication mechanisms for the 802.1x connection.        |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

## LPD Configuration

**Note:** This menu appears only in network printers or printers that are attached to print servers.

| Menu item                                           | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|-----------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>LPD Timeout</b><br>0–65535 seconds (90*)         | Set the time-out value to stop the Line Printer Daemon (LPD) server from waiting indefinitely for hung or invalid print jobs.                                                                                                    |
| <b>LPD Banner Page</b><br>Off*<br>On                | Print a banner page for all LPD print jobs.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> A banner page is the first page of a print job used as a separator of print jobs and to identify the originator of the print job request.           </div> |
| <b>LPD Trailer Page</b><br>Off*<br>On               | Print a trailer page for all LPD print jobs.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> A trailer page is the last page of a print job.           </div>                                                                                          |
| <b>LPD Carriage Return Conversion</b><br>Off*<br>On | Enable carriage return conversion.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> Carriage return is a mechanism that commands the printer to move the position of the cursor to the first position on the same line.           </div>                |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

## HTTP/FTP Settings

| Menu item                                                                                                                                                                | Description                                                                                                  |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Proxy</b><br>HTTP Proxy IP Address<br>HTTP Default IP Port<br>FTP Proxy IP Address<br>FTP Default IP Port<br>Authentication<br>User Name<br>Password<br>Local Domains | Configure the HTTP and FTP server settings.                                                                  |
| <b>Other Settings</b><br>Enable HTTP Server (On*)                                                                                                                        | Access the Embedded Web Server to monitor and manage the printer.                                            |
| <b>Other Settings</b><br>Enable HTTPPS (On*)                                                                                                                             | Enable Hypertext Transfer Protocol Secure (HTTPS) to encrypt data transferring to and from the print server. |
| <b>Other Settings</b><br>Force HTTPS Connections (Off*)                                                                                                                  | Force the printer to use HTTPS connections.                                                                  |
| <b>Other Settings</b><br>Enable FTP/TFTP (On*)                                                                                                                           | Send files using FTP/TFTP.                                                                                   |
| <b>Other Settings</b><br>HTTPS Device Certificate (default*)                                                                                                             | View the HTTP device certificate used on the printer.                                                        |
| <b>Other Settings</b><br>Timeout for HTTP/FTP Requests (30*)                                                                                                             | Specify the amount of time before the server connection stops.                                               |
| <b>Other Settings</b><br>Retries for HTTP/FTP Requests (3*)                                                                                                              | Set the number of retries to connect to the HTTP/FTP server.                                                 |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

## ThinPrint

| Menu item                               | Description                                   |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| <b>Enable ThinPrint</b><br>Off*<br>On   | Print using ThinPrint.                        |
| <b>Port Number</b><br>4000–4999 (4000*) | Set the port number for the ThinPrint server. |

| Menu item                                       | Description                                                |
|-------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Bandwidth (bits/sec)</b><br>100–1000000 (0*) | Set the speed to transmit data in a ThinPrint environment. |
| <b>Packet Size (kbytes)</b><br>0–64000 (0*)     | Set the packet size for data transmission.                 |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

## USB

| Menu item                            | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>PCL SmartSwitch</b><br>Off<br>On* | <p>Set the printer to switch to PCL emulation when a print job received through a USB port requires it, regardless of the default printer language.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> When this setting is disabled, the printer does not examine incoming data and uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu.</p>        |
| <b>PS SmartSwitch</b><br>Off<br>On*  | <p>Set the printer to switch to PostScript emulation when a print job received through a USB port requires it, regardless of the default printer language.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> When this setting is disabled, the printer does not examine incoming data and uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu.</p> |
| <b>Job Buffering</b><br>Off*<br>On   | <p>Temporarily store print jobs in the hard disk or intelligent storage drive (ISD) before printing.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when a hard disk or an ISD is installed.</p>                                                                                                                               |



| Menu item                                  | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|--------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Mac Binary PS</b><br>Auto*<br>On<br>Off | <p>Set the printer to process Macintosh binary PostScript emulation print jobs.</p> <div><b>Notes</b><ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Auto processes print jobs from computers using either Windows or Macintosh operating systems.</li><li>• Off filters PostScript emulation print jobs using the standard protocol.</li></ul></div> |
| <b>Enable USB Port</b><br>Off<br>On*       | Enable the front USB drive port.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

## Restrict external network access

| Menu item                                             | Description                                                       |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Restrict external network access</b><br>Off*<br>On | Restrict access to network sites.                                 |
| <b>External network address</b>                       | Specify the network addresses with restricted access.             |
| <b>Email address for notification</b>                 | Specify an email address to send a notification of logged events. |
| <b>Ping frequency</b><br>1–300 (10*)                  | Specify the network query interval in seconds.                    |
| <b>Subject</b>                                        | Specify the subject and message of the notification email.        |
| <b>Message</b>                                        |                                                                   |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

# Security

## Login Methods

## Manage Permissions

| Menu item                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Description                                                                                                                                                                    |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Function Access</b><br><br>Access Address Book in Apps<br>Modify Address Book<br>Manage Shortcuts<br>Create Profiles<br>Manage Bookmarks<br>Flash Drive Print<br>Flash Drive Color Printing<br>Flash Drive Scan<br>Copy Function<br>Copy Color Printing<br>Color Dropout<br>Email Function<br>Fax Function<br>FTP Function<br>Release Held Faxes<br>Held Jobs Access<br>Use Profiles<br>Cancel Jobs at the Device<br>Change Language<br>Internet Printing Protocol (IPP)<br>Initiate Scans Remotely<br>B/W Print<br>Color Print<br>Network Folder - Scan<br>Hard Disk - Print<br>Hard Disk - Color Print<br>Hard Disk - Scan | Control access to the printer functions.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> Some menu items appear only when a hard disk or an intelligent storage drive is installed.           </div> |
| <b>Administrative Menus</b><br><br>Security Menu<br>Network/Ports Menu<br>Paper Menu<br>Reports Menu<br>Function Configuration Menus<br>Supplies Menu<br>Option Card Menu<br>SE Menu<br>Device Menu                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Control access to the printer menu settings.                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>Device Management</b><br><br>Remote Management<br>Firmware Updates<br>Apps Configuration<br>Operator Panel Lock<br>Embedded Web Server Access<br>Import / Export All Settings<br>Out of Service Erase<br>Cloud Services Enrollment                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Control access to the printer management options.                                                                                                                              |

| Menu item                                                                                                                      | Description                             |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <b>Apps</b><br>New Apps<br>Slideshow<br>Change Wallpaper<br>Screen Saver<br>Card Copy<br>Scan Center<br>Scan Center Custom [x] | Control access to printer applications. |

## Local Accounts

| Menu item                                                             | Description                                                                                                                                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Manage Groups/Permissions</b>                                      | Show a list of all saved groups in the printer.                                                                                              |
| <b>Add User</b><br>User Name/Password<br>User Name<br>Password<br>PIN | Create local accounts and specify their access to the printer functions, administrative menus, printer management options, and applications. |

## Default Login Methods

**Note:** This menu appears only when you configure the settings in the Local Accounts menu.

| Menu item                                                                  | Description                                                   |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Control Panel</b><br>User Name/Password<br>User Name<br>Password<br>PIN | Specify the default login method to access the control panel. |
| <b>Browser</b><br>User Name/Password<br>User Name<br>Password<br>PIN       | Specify the default login method to access the browser.       |

## Schedule USB Devices

| Menu item                            | Description                            |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| <b>Schedules</b><br>Add New Schedule | Schedule access to the front USB port. |

## Security Audit Log

| Menu item                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Description                                                                               |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Enable Audit</b><br>Off*<br>On                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Record the events in the secure audit log and remote syslog.                              |
| <b>Enable Remote Syslog</b><br>Off*<br>On                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Send audit logs to a remote server.                                                       |
| <b>Remote Syslog Server</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Specify the remote syslog server.                                                         |
| <b>Remote Syslog Port</b><br>1–65535 (514*)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Specify the remote syslog port.                                                           |
| <b>Remote Syslog Method</b><br>Normal UDP*<br>Stunnel                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Specify a syslog method to transmit logged events to a remote server.                     |
| <b>Remote Syslog Facility</b><br>0 - Kernel Messages<br>1 - User-Level Messages<br>2 - Mail System<br>3 - System Daemons<br>4 - Security/Authorization Messages*<br>5 - Messages Generated Internally by Syslogs<br>6 - Line Printer Subsystem<br>7 - Network News Subsystem<br>8 - UUCP Subsystem<br>9 - Clock Daemon<br>10 - Security/Authorization Messages<br>11 - FTP Daemon<br>12 - NTP Subsystem<br>13 - Log Audit<br>14 - Log Alert<br>15 - Clock Daemon<br>16 - Local Use 0 (local0)<br>17 - Local Use 1 (local1)<br>18 - Local Use 2 (local2)<br>19 - Local Use 3 (local3)<br>20 - Local Use 4 (local4)<br>21 - Local Use 5 (local5)<br>22 - Local Use 6 (local6)<br>23 - Local Use 7 (local7) | Specify a facility code that the printer uses when sending log events to a remote server. |

| Menu item                                                                                                                                                   | Description                                                                                                        |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Severity of Events to Log</b><br>0 - Emergency<br>1 - Alert<br>2 - Critical<br>3 - Error<br>4 - Warning*<br>5 - Notice<br>6 - Informational<br>7 - Debug | Specify the priority level cutoff for logging messages and events.                                                 |
| <b>Remote Syslog Non-Logged Events</b><br>Off*<br>On                                                                                                        | Send all events, regardless of severity level, to the remote server.                                               |
| <b>Admin's Email Address</b>                                                                                                                                | Send email notification of logged events to the administrator.                                                     |
| <b>Email Log Cleared Alert</b><br>Off*<br>On                                                                                                                | Send email notification to the administrator when a log entry is deleted.                                          |
| <b>Email Log Wrapped Alert</b><br>Off*<br>On                                                                                                                | Send email notification to the administrator when the log becomes full and begins to overwrite the oldest entries. |
| <b>Log Full Behavior</b><br>Wrap Over Oldest Entries*<br>Email Log Then Delete All Entries                                                                  | Resolve log storage issues when the log fills its allotted memory.                                                 |
| <b>Email % Full Alert</b><br>Off*<br>On                                                                                                                     | Send email notification to the administrator when the log fills its allotted memory.                               |
| <b>% Full Alert Level</b><br>1–99 (90*)                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Email Log Exported Alert</b><br>Off*<br>On                                                                                                               | Send email notification to the administrator when a log is exported.                                               |
| <b>Email Log Settings Changed Alert</b><br>Off*<br>On                                                                                                       | Send email notification to the administrator when Enable Audit is set.                                             |
| <b>Log Line Endings</b><br>LF (\n)*<br>CR (\r)<br>CRLF (\r\n)                                                                                               | Specify how the log file terminates the end of each line.                                                          |

| Menu item                                                          | Description                                        |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Digitally Sign Exports</b><br>Off*<br>On                        | Add a digital signature to each exported log file. |
| <b>Clear Log</b>                                                   | Delete all audit logs.                             |
| <b>Export Log</b><br>Syslog (RFC 5424)<br>Syslog (RFC 3164)<br>CSV | Export a security log to a flash drive.            |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

## Login Restrictions

| Menu item                                       | Description                                                                           |
|-------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Login failures</b><br>1–10 (3*)              | Specify the number of failed login attempts before the user gets locked out.          |
| <b>Failure time frame</b><br>1–60 minutes (5*)  | Specify the time frame between failed login attempts before the user gets locked out. |
| <b>Lockout time</b><br>1–60 minutes (5*)        | Specify the lockout duration.                                                         |
| <b>Web Login Timeout</b><br>1–120 minutes (10*) | Specify the delay for a remote login before the user is logged off automatically.     |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

## Confidential Print Setup

| Menu item                      | Description                                                                                                                              |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Max Invalid PIN</b><br>2–10 | Set the limit for entering an invalid PIN.<br><br><b>Note:</b> When the limit is reached, the print jobs for that user name are deleted. |

| Menu item                                                                             | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Confidential Job Expiration</b><br>Off*<br>1 Hour<br>4 Hours<br>24 Hours<br>1 Week | Set an individual expiration time for each held job before it is automatically deleted from the hard disk or intelligent storage drive.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> A held job is either Confidential, Repeat, Reserve, or Verify. </div> |
| <b>Repeat Job Expiration</b><br>Off*<br>1 Hour<br>4 Hours<br>24 Hours<br>1 Week       | Set the expiration time for a print job that you want to repeat.                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>Verify Job Expiration</b><br>Off*<br>1 Hour<br>4 Hours<br>24 Hours<br>1 Week       | Set the expiration time for printing a copy of a job for you to check its quality before printing the remaining copies.                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Reserve Job Expiration</b><br>Off*<br>1 Hour<br>4 Hours<br>24 Hours<br>1 Week      | Set the expiration time for jobs that you want to store in the printer for printing later.                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>Require All Jobs to be Held</b><br>Off*<br>On                                      | Set the printer to hold all print jobs.                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>Keep duplicate documents</b><br>Off*<br>On                                         | Set the printer to keep all documents with the same file name.                                                                                                                                                                          |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

## Disk Encryption

**Note:** This menu appears only when a hard disk or an intelligent storage drive is installed.

| Menu item                | Description                                                         |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Status</b><br>Enabled | Encryption happens automatically when a storage drive is installed. |

## Erase Temporary Data Files

| Menu item                                                                   | Description                                                                                                                              |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Stored in onboard memory</b><br>Off*<br>On                               | Delete all files stored on the printer memory.                                                                                           |
| <b>Stored on hard disk</b><br>1 Pass Erase*<br>3 Pass Erase<br>7 Pass Erase | Delete all files stored on the printer hard disk.<br><br><b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when a printer hard disk is installed. |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

## Solutions LDAP Settings

| Menu item                                          | Description                                                                |
|----------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Follow LDAP Referrals</b><br>Off*<br>On         | Search the different servers in the domain for the logged-in user account. |
| <b>LDAP Certificate Verification</b><br>Yes<br>No* | Enable verification of LDAP certificates.                                  |



## Miscellaneous

| Menu item                                                                     | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Protected Features</b><br><br>Show*<br>Hide                                | Show all the features that Function Access Control (FAC) protects regardless of the security permission that the user has.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> Hide displays only FAC-protected features that the user has access.         </div>                                                                                    |
| <b>Print Permission</b><br><br>Off*<br>On                                     | Let the user log in before printing.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>Default Print Permission Login</b><br><br>User Name/Password*<br>User Name | Set the default login for Print Permission.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>Security Reset Jumper</b><br><br>Enable "Guest" access*<br>No Effect       | Specify user access to the printer.<br><br><div> <b>Notes</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enable "Guest" access provides anyone access to all aspects of the printer.</li> <li>• No Effect may make access to the printer impossible when the required security information is unavailable.</li> </ul> </div> |
| <b>Use Intelligent Storage Drive for User Data</b><br><br>Off<br>On*          | Enable intelligent storage drive to store user data.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>Minimum Password Length</b><br><br>0–32 (0*)                               | Specify the password length.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>Enable Password/PIN Reveal</b><br><br>Off*<br>On                           | Show the password or personal identification number.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

# Cloud Services

## Cloud Services Enrollment

| Menu item                                                                 | Description                                                                |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>View More Information</b>                                              | View additional information on the usage of Lexmark Cloud Services.        |
| <b>Enable communication with Lexmark Cloud Services</b><br><br>Off*<br>On | Enable the printer to communicate with Lexmark Cloud Services.             |
| <b>View Current Status</b>                                                | View the connection status between the printer and Lexmark Cloud Services. |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

# Reports

## Menu Settings Page

| Menu item                 | Description                                     |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Menu Settings Page</b> | Print a report that contains the printer menus. |

## Device

| Menu item                 | Description                                                                                                                                               |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Device Information</b> | Print a report that contains information about the printer.                                                                                               |
| <b>Device Statistics</b>  | Print a report about printer usage and supply status.                                                                                                     |
| <b>Profiles List</b>      | Print a list of profiles that are stored in the printer.                                                                                                  |
| <b>Asset Report</b>       | Print a diagnostic tool for print problems.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> To avoid clipping the content, print the report on letter- or A4-size paper. </div> |

## Print

| Menu item                                   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Print Fonts</b><br>PCL Fonts<br>PS Fonts | Print samples and information about the fonts that are available in each printer language.                                                                                                                                           |
| <b>Print Demo</b><br>Demo Page              | Print a page that shows the printer capabilities and supported solutions.                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>Print Directory</b>                      | Print the resources that are stored in the flash drive, hard disk, or intelligent storage drive (ISD).<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when a flash drive, a hard disk, or an ISD is installed.         </div> |

## Shortcuts

| Menu item                       | Description                                                                                                                                                        |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>All Shortcuts</b>            | Print a report that lists the shortcuts that are stored in the printer.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> Fax Shortcuts appears only when fax is installed.         </div> |
| <b>Fax Shortcuts</b>            |                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Copy Shortcuts</b>           |                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Email Shortcuts</b>          |                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>FTP Shortcuts</b>            |                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Network Folder Shortcuts</b> |                                                                                                                                                                    |

## Fax

**Note:** This menu appears only if Fax is configured, and Enable Job Log is set to On.

| Menu item           | Description                                                               |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Fax Job Log</b>  | Print a report about the last 200 completed fax jobs.                     |
| <b>Fax Call Log</b> | Print a report about the last 100 attempted, received, and blocked calls. |

## Network

| Menu item                             | Description                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Network Setup Page</b>             | <p>Print a page that shows the configured network and wireless settings on the printer.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only in network printers or printers connected to print servers.</p> |
| <b>Wi-Fi Direct Connected Clients</b> | <p>Print a page that shows the list of devices that are connected to the printer using Wi-Fi Direct.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when <b>Enable Wi-Fi Direct</b> is set to On.</p>  |

## Troubleshooting

| Menu item                       | Description                                                       |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Print Quality Test Pages</b> | Print sample pages to identify and correct print quality defects. |
| <b>Cleaning the Scanner</b>     | Print instructions on how to clean the scanner.                   |

## Forms Merge

**Note:** This menu appears only when a hard disk or an intelligent storage drive is installed.

| Menu item                                               | Description                                    |
|---------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Merge Mode</b><br>Print*<br>Data Capture<br>Disabled | Specify the mode of operation for Forms Merge. |

| Menu item                                                                                                                                          | Description                                                                                                                                                           |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Data Capture Target</b><br>Flash*                                                                                                               | Set the target destination where the captured data is forwarded.<br><br><div> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when Merge Mode is set to Data Capture. </div> |
| <b>Print Port and Filter Settings</b><br>Network Port<br><br>On*<br>Off                                                                            | Enable Forms Merge to process all data that are sent to the network port.                                                                                             |
| <b>Print Port and Filter Settings</b><br>Network Filter<br><br>Disabled*<br>NULL<br>OFIS<br>OFIS+NULL<br>OFIS+AS400<br>AS400<br>PCL<br>ZPL<br>ZPLF | Specify the network filter for all data sent to the printer.                                                                                                          |
| <b>Print Port and Filter Settings</b><br>USB Port<br><br>On*<br>Off                                                                                | Enable Forms Merge to process all data that are sent to the USB port.                                                                                                 |
| <b>Print Port and Filter Settings</b><br>USB Filter<br><br>Disabled*<br>NULL<br>OFIS<br>OFIS+NULL<br>OFIS+AS400<br>AS400<br>PCL<br>ZPL<br>ZPLF     | Specify the USB filter for all data sent to the printer.                                                                                                              |
| <b>Print Port and Filter Settings</b><br>Local Port Timeout<br>1–100 (10*)                                                                         | Specify the time-out value for Forms Merge jobs that are sent to the local port.                                                                                      |
| <b>Miscellaneous</b><br>Print All Forms                                                                                                            | Print all form sets stored in the intelligent storage drive or hard disk of the printer.                                                                              |

| Menu item            | Description                                                                         |
|----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Miscellaneous</b> |                                                                                     |
| Error Page Print     |                                                                                     |
| On*                  | Enable printing of an error page when an error is encountered in a Forms Merge job. |
| Off                  |                                                                                     |

**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

## Printing the Menu Settings Page

From the home screen, touch **Settings › Reports › Menu Settings Page** .

# Maintain the printer

## Checking the status of parts and supplies

1. From the home screen, touch **Status/Supplies**.
2. Select the parts or supplies that you want to check.

**Note:** You can also access this setting by touching the top section of the home screen.

## Configuring supply notifications

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

### Notes

- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

2. Click **Settings** > **Device** > **Notifications**.
3. Click **Custom Supply Notifications**.
4. Select a notification for each supply item.
5. Apply the changes.

## Setting up email alerts

Email alerts let you set up a mail server so the printer can automatically send messages to a group of email addresses when certain events happen.

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

### Notes

- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

2. Click **Settings** > **Device** > **Notifications**.
3. Click **Email Alert Setup**.
4. In the **Email Setup** section, configure the settings.

**Note:** For more information on SMTP settings, see [Configuring the email SMTP settings on page 54](#).

5. Click **Save**.

6. Click **Setup Email Lists and Alerts**, and then do the following:
  - Specify the email addresses that you want to send the alerts to.
  - Specify the subject of the email alert.
  - Specify the printer events that you want to send.
7. Click **Save**.

## Printing printer reports and logs

Printer reports show the printer status, toner levels, number of pages printed or scanned, and any errors.

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings > Reports**.
2. Select the report or log that you want to print.

**Menu Settings Page**—Show the current printer preferences, settings, and configurations.

### Device

- **Device Information**—Show printer information such as serial number, installed memory, and page count.
- **Device Information**—Show printer information such as serial number, installed memory, and page count.
- **Device Statistics**—Show printer information such as supply status, total printed sheets, and printer job information.
- **Profiles List**—Show a list of profiles or shortcuts that are stored in the printer.
- **Asset Report**— Show printer information such as color and mono print counts, IP address, and firmware levels.

### Print

- **Print Fonts**—Show the fonts that are available in each printer language.
- **Print Demo**—Show the demo files that are available in the firmware, the flash option, and the disk option.
- **Print Directory**—Show the resources that are stored on the flash drive, hard disk, or intelligent storage drive (ISD).

**Note:** This report appears only when a flash drive, a printer hard disk, or an ISD is installed.

### Shortcuts

- **All Shortcuts**—Show a list of all the shortcuts that are stored on the printer.
- **Fax Shortcuts**—Show a list of fax shortcuts that are stored on the printer.
- **Copy Shortcuts**—Show a list of copy shortcuts that are stored on the printer.
- **Email Shortcuts**—Show a list of email shortcuts that are stored on the printer.
- **FTP Shortcuts**—Show a list of File Transfer Protocol (FTP) shortcuts that are stored on the printer.
- **Network Folder Shortcuts**—Show a list of network folder shortcuts that are stored on the printer.

### Fax

- **Fax Job Log**—List the last 200 completed fax jobs.

**Note:** This report appears only when **Enable Job Log** is enabled.



- **Fax Call Log**—Show the resources that are stored on the flash drive or storage drive.

**Note:** This report appears only when a flash drive or storage drive is installed.

### Network

- **Network Setup Page**—Show the configured network and wireless settings on the printer.

**Note:** This report appears only in network printers and printers connected to print servers.

- **Wi-Fi Direct Connected Clients**—Show the list of devices that are connected to the printer using Wi-Fi Direct.

**Note:** This report appears only when **Enable Wi-Fi Direct** is set to **On**.

## Ordering parts and supplies

### Contact information and precaution

To order supplies in the U.S., contact Lexmark at 1-800-539-6275 for information about Lexmark authorized supplies dealers in your area. In other countries or regions, go to [www.lexmark.com](http://www.lexmark.com) or contact the place where you purchased the printer.

**Note:** All life estimates for printer supplies assume printing on letter- or A4-size plain paper.

#### **Warning—Potential Damage**

Failure to maintain optimum printer performance, or to replace parts and supplies, may cause damage to your printer.

## Using genuine Lexmark parts and supplies

Your Lexmark printer is designed to function best with genuine Lexmark parts and supplies. Use of third-party supplies or parts may affect the performance, reliability, or life of the printer and its imaging components. It can also affect warranty coverage. Damage caused by the use of third-party parts and supplies is not covered by the warranty. All life indicators are designed to function with Lexmark parts and supplies, and may deliver unpredictable results if third-party parts and supplies are used. Imaging component usage beyond the intended life may damage your Lexmark printer or its associated components.

### Warning—Potential Damage

Supplies and parts without Return Program agreement terms may be reset and remanufactured. However, the manufacturer's warranty does not cover any damage caused by non-genuine supplies or parts. Resetting counters on the supply or part without proper remanufacturing can cause damage to your printer. After resetting the supply or part counter, your printer may display an error indicating the presence of the reset item.

## Ordering a toner cartridge

### Notes

- The estimated cartridge yield is based on the ISO/IEC 19798 standard.
- Extremely low print coverage for extended periods of time may negatively affect actual yield.

## Lexmark CX532 and CX635 Return Program toner cartridges

| Item                                                                 | North America, Australia, and New Zealand | European Economic Area, Iceland, Liechtenstein, and Norway | Rest of Asia Pacific | Latin America | Rest of Europe, Middle East, and Africa |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|---------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <b>Return Program toner cartridges</b>                               |                                           |                                                            |                      |               |                                         |
| Cyan                                                                 | 75M10C0                                   | 75M20C0                                                    | 75M30C0              | 75M40C0       | 75M50C0                                 |
| Magenta                                                              | 75M10M0                                   | 75M20M0                                                    | 75M30M0              | 75M40M0       | 75M50M0                                 |
| Yellow                                                               | 75M10Y0                                   | 75M20Y0                                                    | 75M30Y0              | 75M40Y0       | 75M50Y0                                 |
| Black                                                                | 75M10K0                                   | 75M20K0                                                    | 75M30K0              | 75M40K0       | 75M50K0                                 |
| <b>High Yield Return Program toner cartridges <sup>1</sup></b>       |                                           |                                                            |                      |               |                                         |
| Cyan                                                                 | 75M1HC0                                   | 75M2HC0                                                    | 75M3HC0              | 75M4HC0       | 75M5HC0                                 |
| Magenta                                                              | 75M1HM0                                   | 75M2HM0                                                    | 75M3HM0              | 75M4HM0       | 75M5HM0                                 |
| Yellow                                                               | 75M1HY0                                   | 75M2HY0                                                    | 75M3HY0              | 75M4HY0       | 75M5HY0                                 |
| Black                                                                | 75M1HK0                                   | 75M2HK0                                                    | 75M3HK0              | 75M4HK0       | 75M5HK0                                 |
| <b>Extra High Yield Return Program toner cartridges <sup>2</sup></b> |                                           |                                                            |                      |               |                                         |
| Cyan                                                                 | 75M1XC0                                   | 75M2XC0                                                    | 75M3XC0              | 75M4XC0       | 75M5XC0                                 |
| Magenta                                                              | 75M1XM0                                   | 75M2XM0                                                    | 75M3XM0              | 75M4XM0       | 75M5XM0                                 |

| Item   | North America, Australia, and New Zealand | European Economic Area, Iceland, Liechtenstein, and Norway | Rest of Asia Pacific | Latin America | Rest of Europe, Middle East, and Africa |
|--------|-------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|---------------|-----------------------------------------|
| Yellow | 75M1XY0                                   | 75M2XY0                                                    | 75M3XY0              | 75M4XY0       | 75M5XY0                                 |
| Black  | 75M1XK0                                   | 75M2XK0                                                    | 75M3XK0              | 75M4XK0       | 75M5XK0                                 |

<sup>1</sup> Supported only in the Lexmark CX532 printer model.

<sup>2</sup> Supported only in the Lexmark CX635 printer model.

For more information on countries in each region, go to [www.lexmark.com/regions](http://www.lexmark.com/regions).

### Lexmark CX532 Regular toner cartridges

| Item    | Worldwide |
|---------|-----------|
| Cyan    | 75M0H20   |
| Magenta | 75M0H30   |
| Yellow  | 75M0H40   |
| Black   | 75M0H10   |

### Lexmark CX635 Regular toner cartridges

| Item    | Worldwide |
|---------|-----------|
| Cyan    | 75M0X20   |
| Magenta | 75M0X30   |
| Yellow  | 75M0X40   |
| Black   | 75M0X10   |

### Lexmark XC2335 Toner cartridges

| Item    | North America, Australia, and New Zealand | Europe, Middle East, and Africa |
|---------|-------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Cyan    | 24B7537                                   | 24B7549                         |
| Magenta | 24B7538                                   | 24B7550                         |
| Yellow  | 24B7539                                   | 24B7551                         |

| Item  | North America, Australia, and New Zealand | Europe, Middle East, and Africa |
|-------|-------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Black | 24B7540                                   | 24B7552                         |

## Lexmark XC2342 Toner cartridges

| Item    | Europe, Middle East, and Africa |
|---------|---------------------------------|
| Cyan    | 24B7620                         |
| Magenta | 24B7621                         |
| Yellow  | 24B7622                         |
| Black   | 24B7623                         |

## Ordering an imaging kit

| Item                                       | Part number |
|--------------------------------------------|-------------|
| <b>Return Program imaging kit</b>          |             |
| Black Return Program imaging kit           | 75M0ZK0     |
| Black and color Return Program imaging kit | 75M0ZV0     |
| <b>Regular imaging kit</b>                 |             |
| Black imaging kit                          | 75M0Z10     |
| Black and color imaging kit                | 75M0Z50     |

## Ordering a waste toner bottle

| Item               | Part number |
|--------------------|-------------|
| Waste toner bottle | 75M0W00     |

## Ordering a maintenance kit

Match the maintenance kit to the printer voltage.

### Notes

- Using certain types of paper may require more frequent replacement of the maintenance kit.
- The maintenance kit includes a fuser and pick tires. These parts may be individually ordered and replaced if necessary.

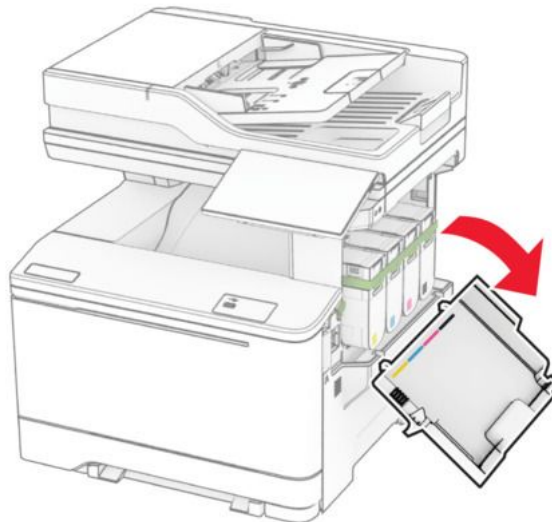
| Item                        | Part number |
|-----------------------------|-------------|
| 100 V fuser maintenance kit | 41X4999     |
| 110 V fuser maintenance kit | 41X5000     |
| 220 V fuser maintenance kit | 41X5001     |

**Note:** Only an authorized service technician can replace the maintenance kit. Contact your service provider.

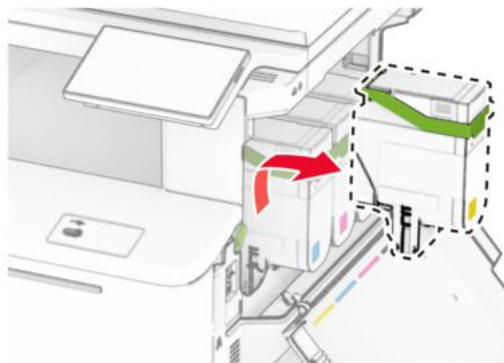
## Replacing parts and supplies

### Replacing a toner cartridge

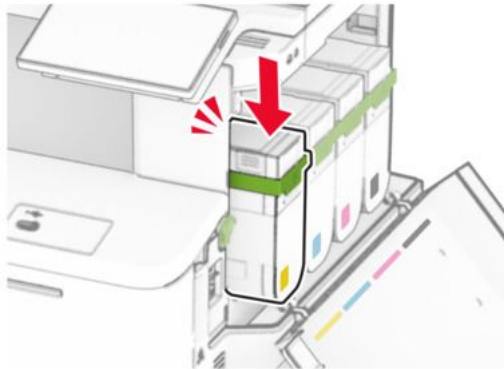
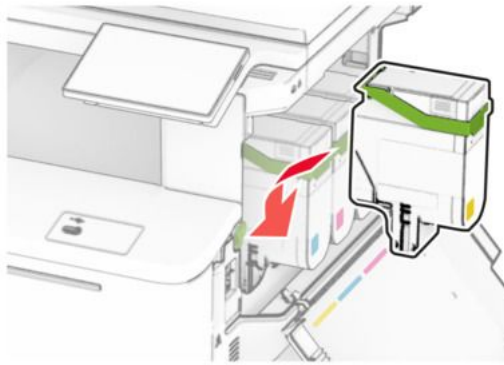
1. Open door B.



2. Remove the used toner cartridge.



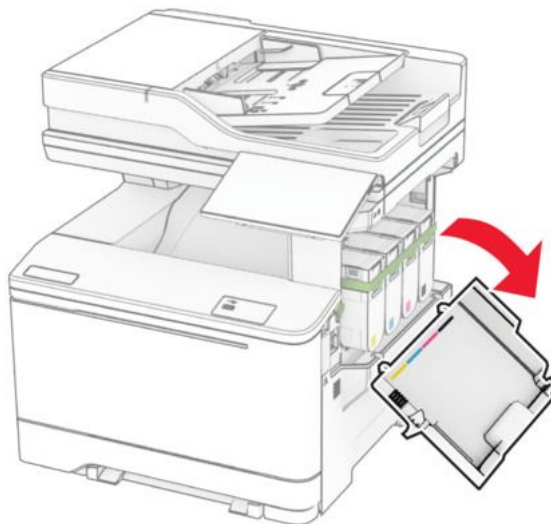
3. Unpack the new toner cartridge.
4. Insert the new toner cartridge until it clicks into place.



5. Close the door.

## Replacing an imaging kit

1. Open door B.

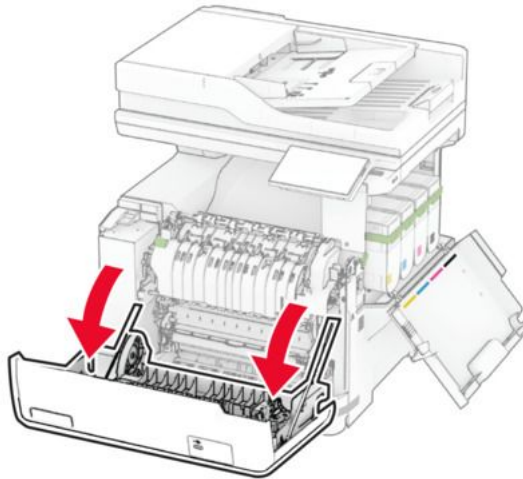


2. Open door A.

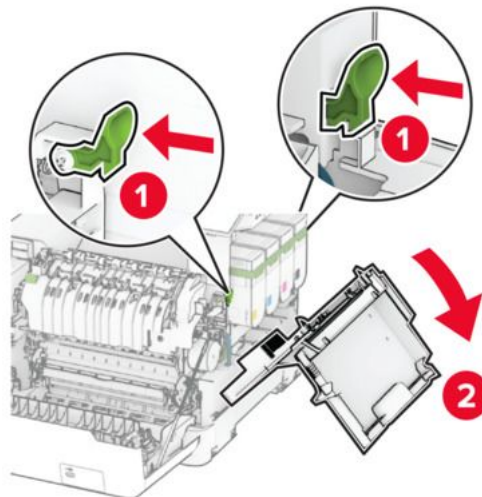


**CAUTION—HOT SURFACE**

The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching it.

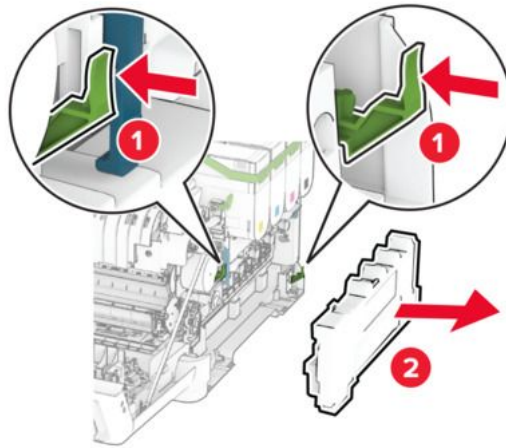


3. Remove the right cover.

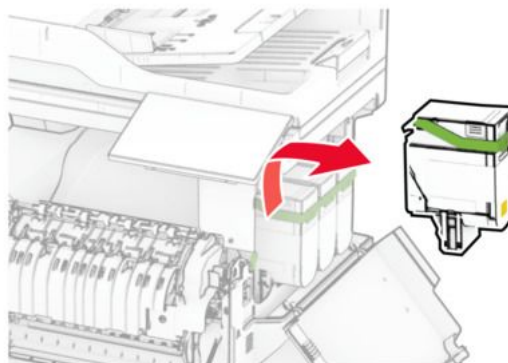
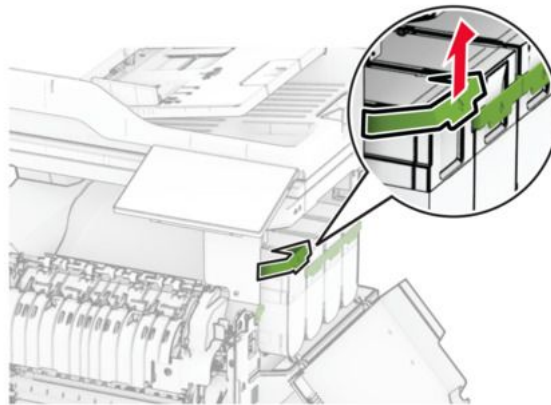


4. Remove the waste toner bottle.

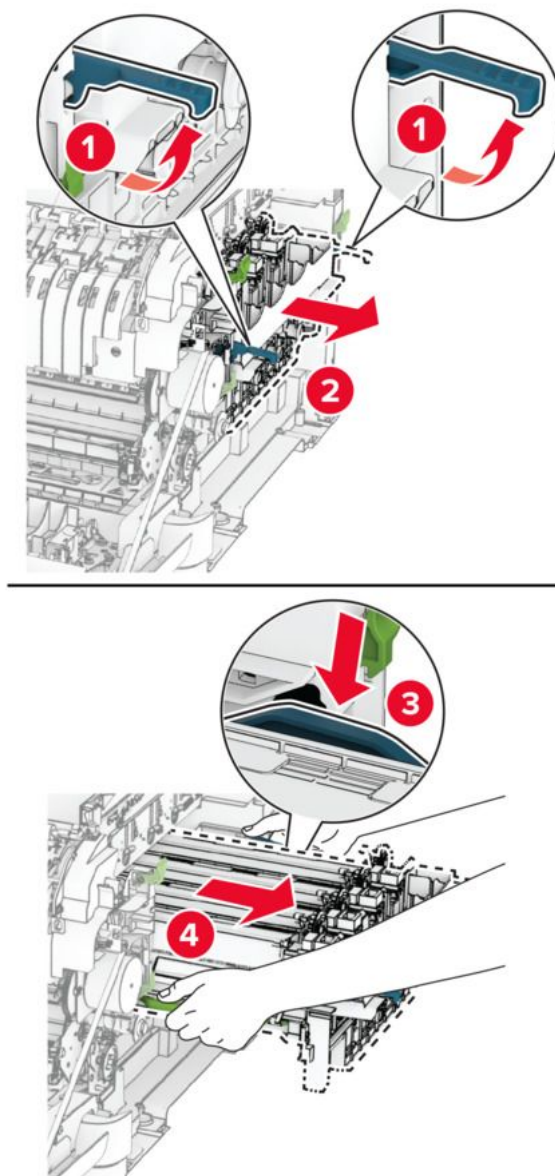




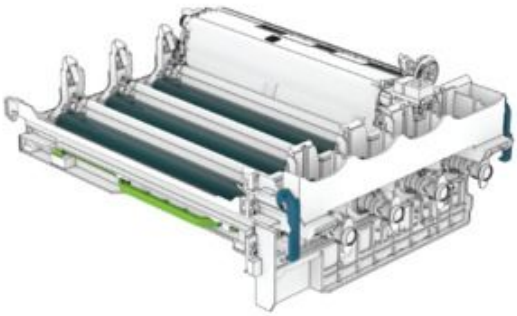
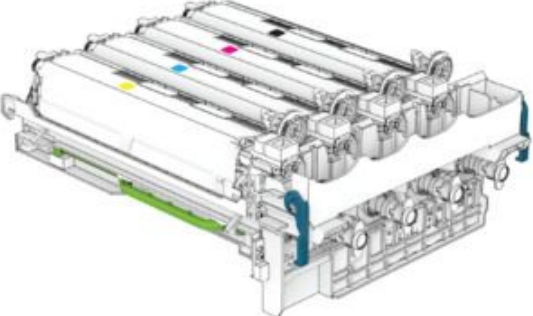
5. Remove the toner cartridges.



6. Remove the used imaging kit.



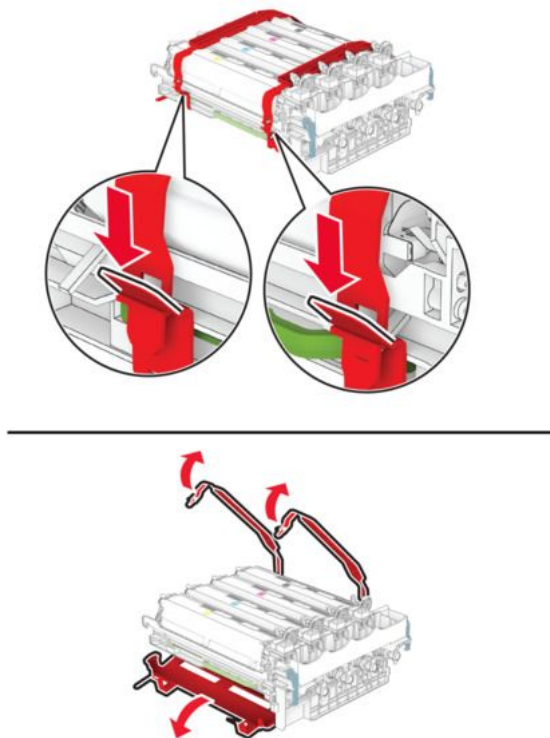
7. Unpack the new imaging kit.

| Black imaging kit                                                                 | Black and color imaging kit                                                        |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  |  |

### Notes

- The black imaging kit includes the imaging kit and the black developer unit.
- The black and color imaging kit includes the imaging kit and the black, cyan, magenta, and yellow developer units.
- When replacing the black imaging kit, save the cyan, magenta, and yellow developer units from the used imaging kit.

8. Remove the packing material.



**Note:** If you are replacing the black imaging kit, then insert the magenta, cyan, and yellow developer units into the new imaging kit.

### **Warning—Potential Damage**

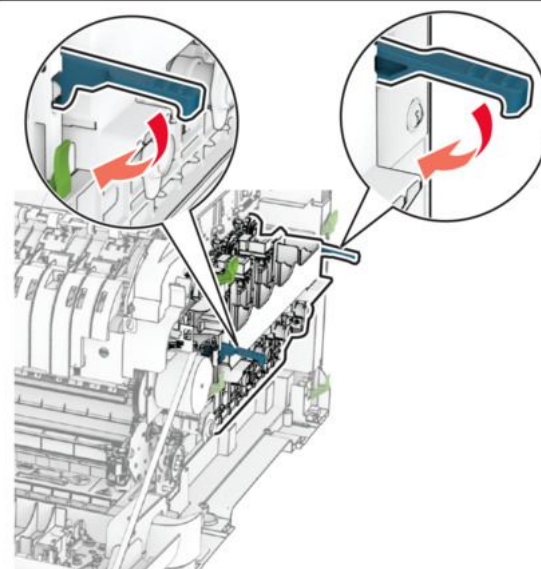
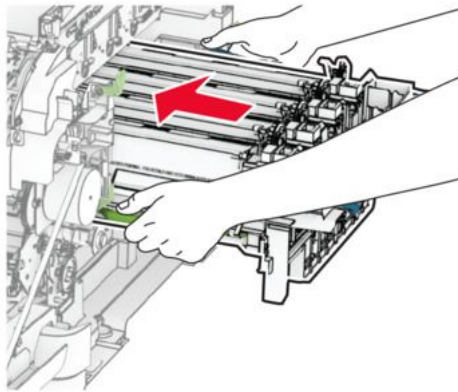
Do not expose the imaging kit to direct light. Extended exposure to light may cause print quality problems.

### **Warning—Potential Damage**

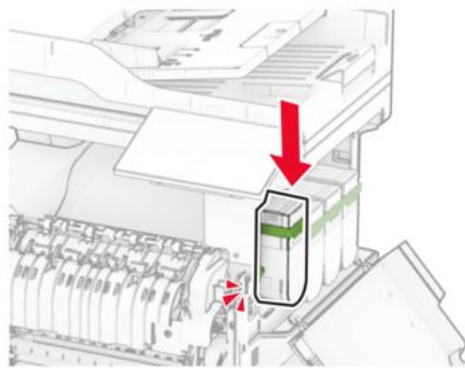
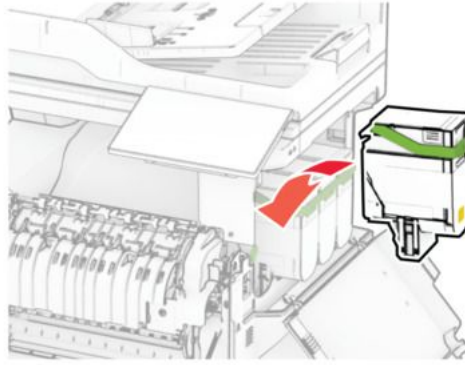
Do not touch the photoconductor drum. Doing so may affect the quality of future print jobs.



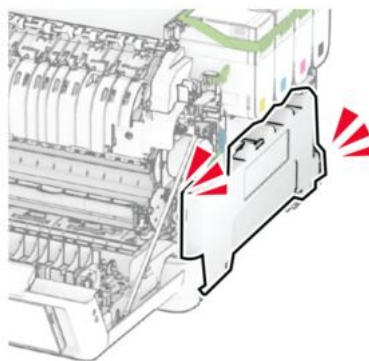
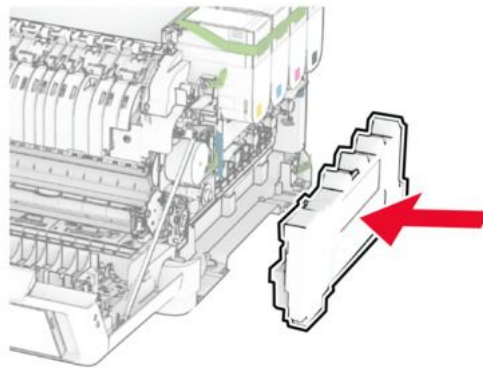
9. Insert the new imaging kit until it is fully seated.



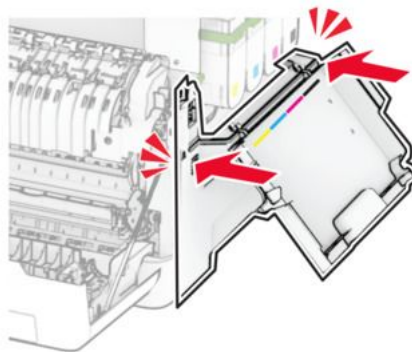
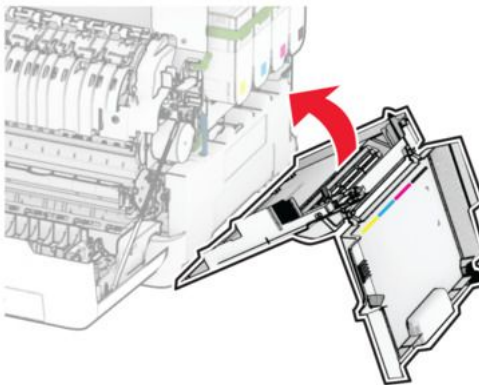
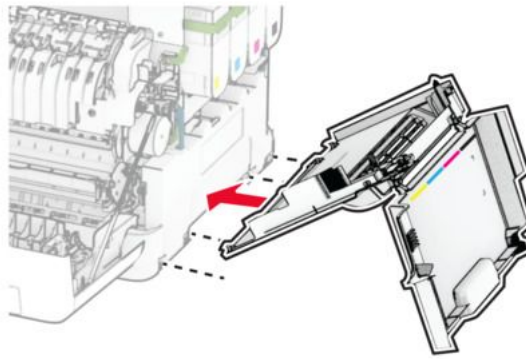
10. Insert the toner cartridges until they click into place.



11. Insert the waste toner bottle until it clicks into place.



12. Attach the right cover until it clicks into place.

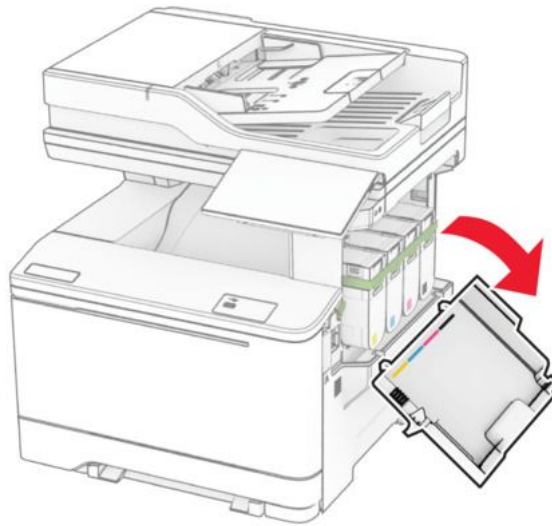


13. Close door A, and then close door B.

## Replacing the waste toner bottle

1. Open door B.



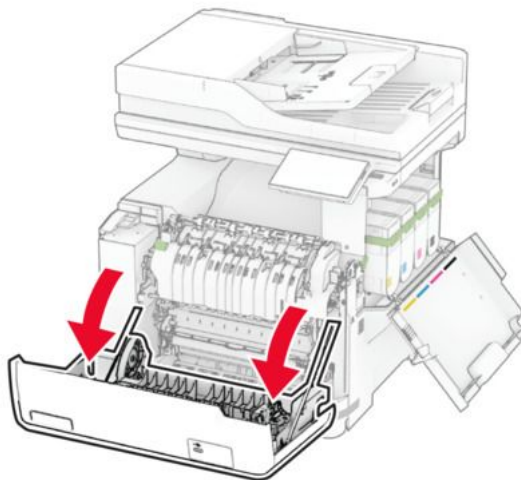


2. Open door A.

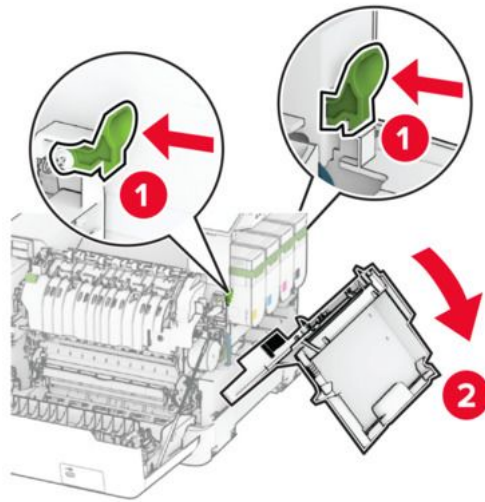


**CAUTION—HOT SURFACE**

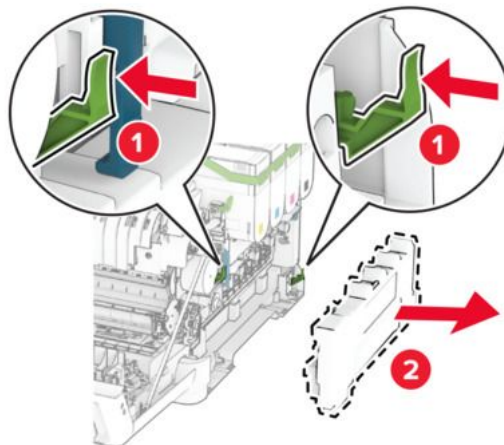
The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching it.



3. Remove the right cover.

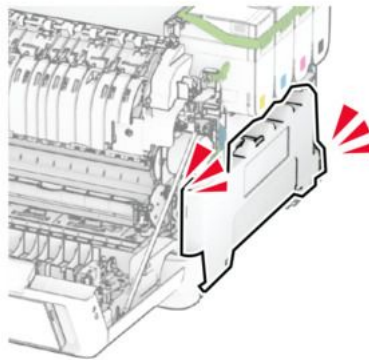
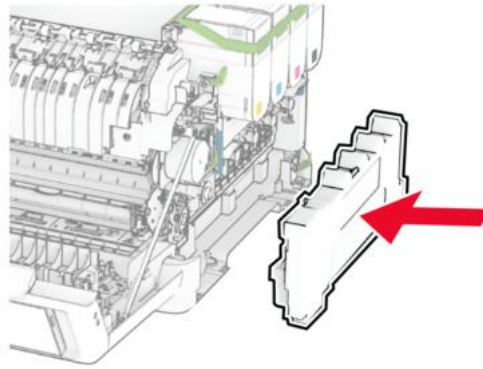


4. Remove the used waste toner bottle.

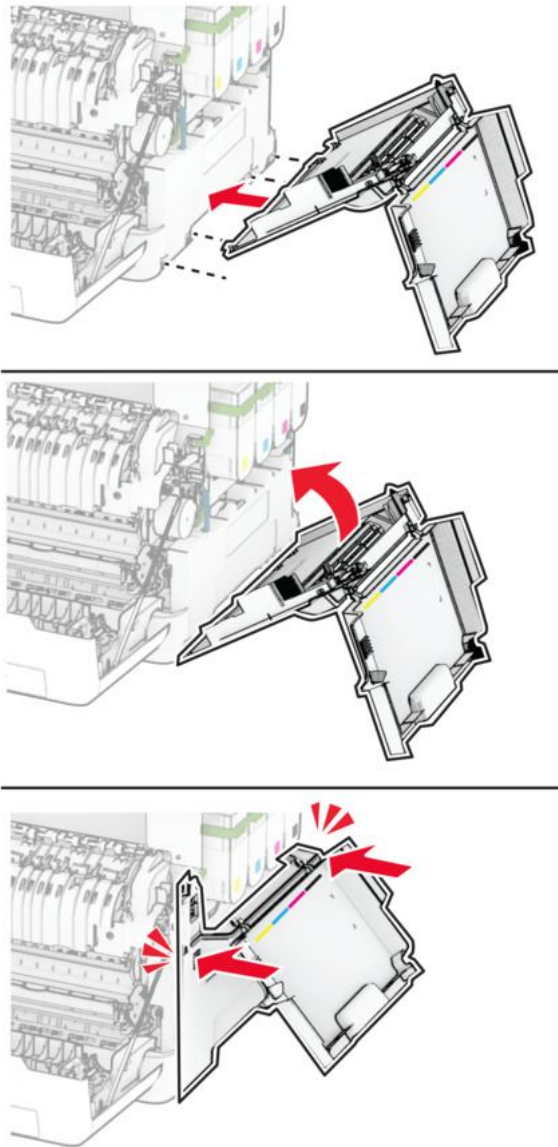


**Note:** To avoid spilling the toner, place the bottle in an upright position.

5. Unpack the new waste toner bottle.
6. Insert the new waste toner bottle until it clicks into place.



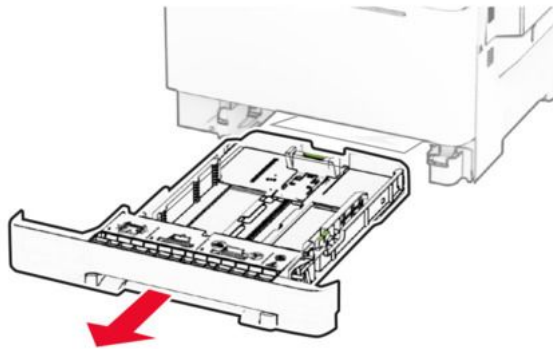
7. Attach the right cover until it clicks into place.



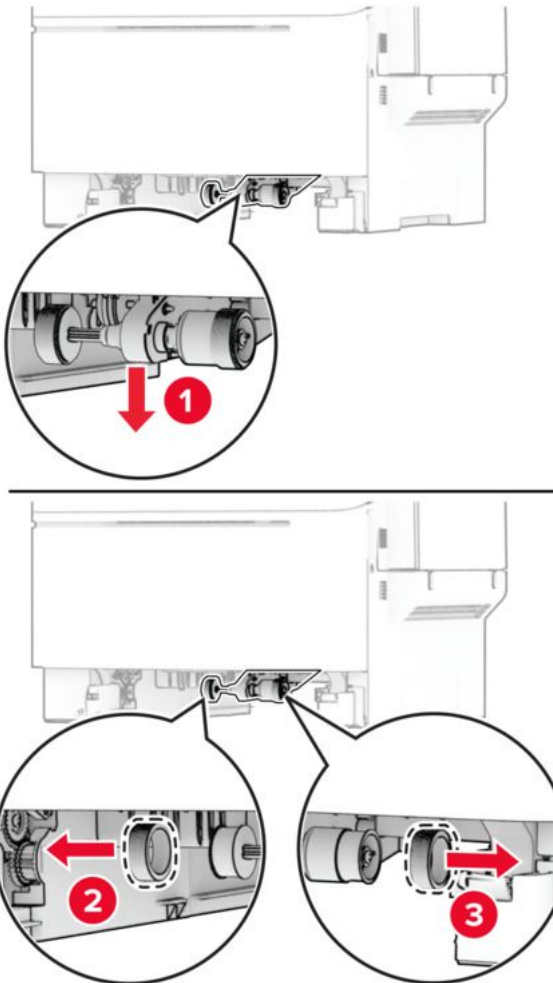
8. Close door A, and then close door B.

## Replacing the pick tires

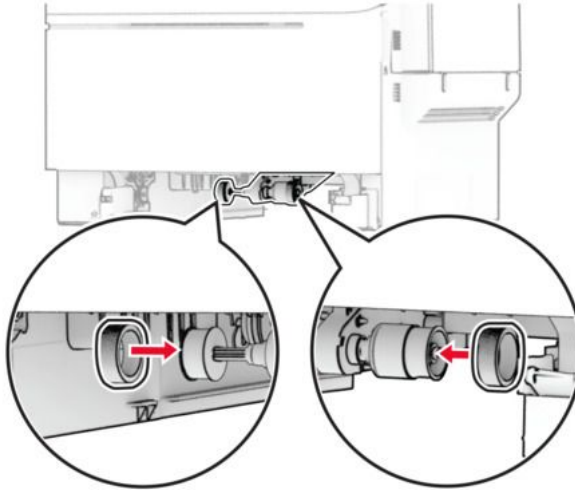
1. Turn off the printer.
2. Unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet, and then from the printer.
3. Remove the tray.



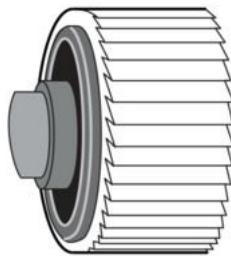
4. Remove the used pick tires.



5. Unpack the new pick tires.
6. Insert the new pick tires.



**Note:** Make sure that the edges of the pick tire treads are facing downward.



7. Insert the tray.
8. Connect the power cord to the printer, and then to the electrical outlet.



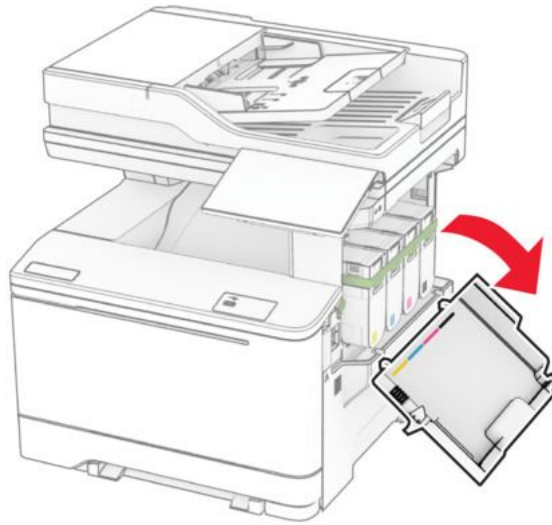
**CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY**

To avoid the risk of fire or electrical shock, connect the power cord to an appropriately rated and properly grounded electrical outlet that is near the product and easily accessible.

9. Turn on the printer.

## Replacing the right cover

1. Open door B.

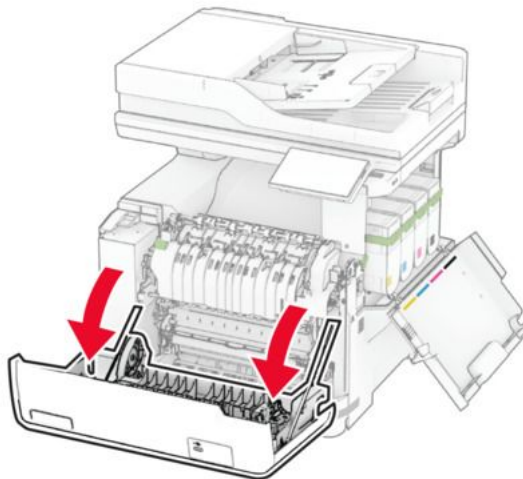


2. Open door A.

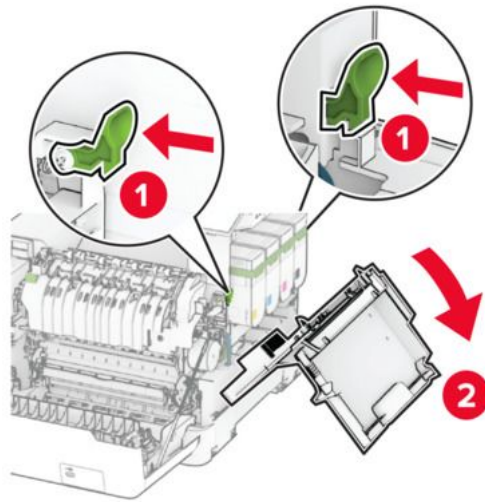


### **CAUTION—HOT SURFACE**

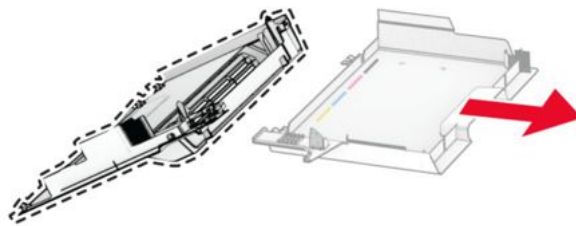
The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching it.



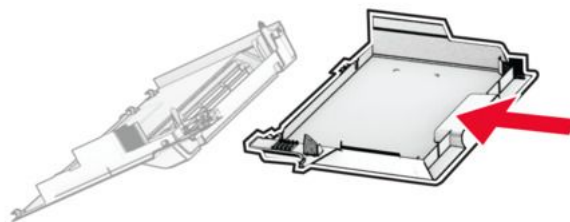
3. Remove the used right cover.



4. Remove door B from the used right cover.

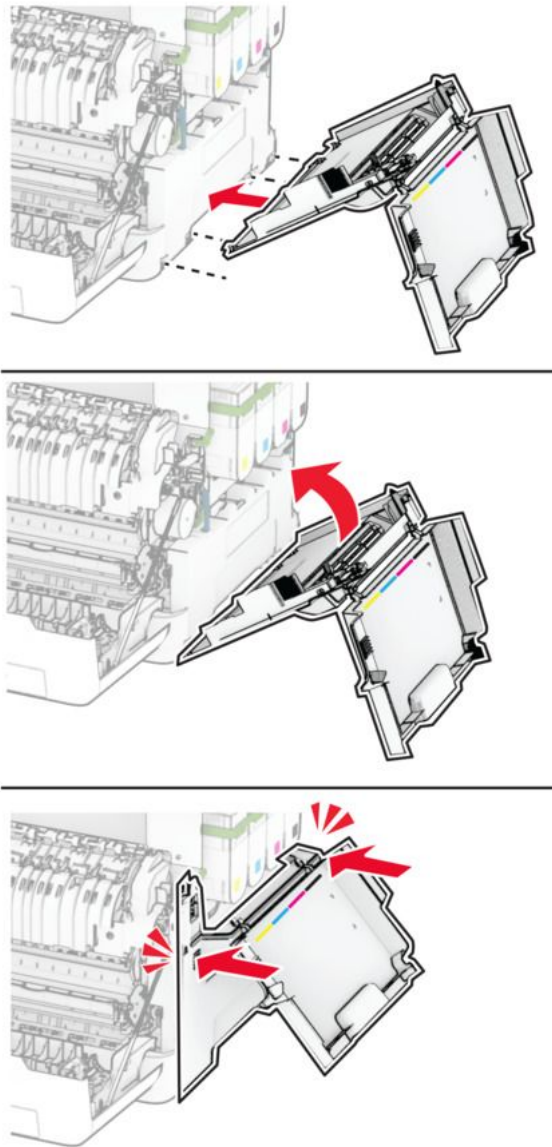


5. Unpack the new right cover.
6. Attach door B to the new right cover.



7. Attach the new right cover until it clicks into place.





8. Close door A, and then close door B.

## Replacing MarkNet™ N8450 Wireless Print Server



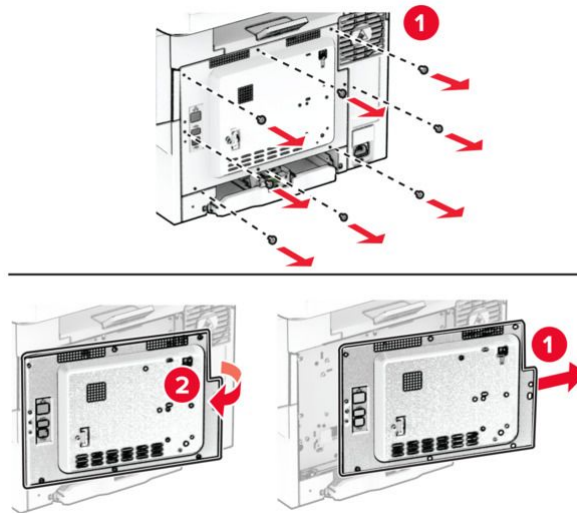
### **CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD**

To avoid the risk of electrical shock, if you are accessing the controller board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

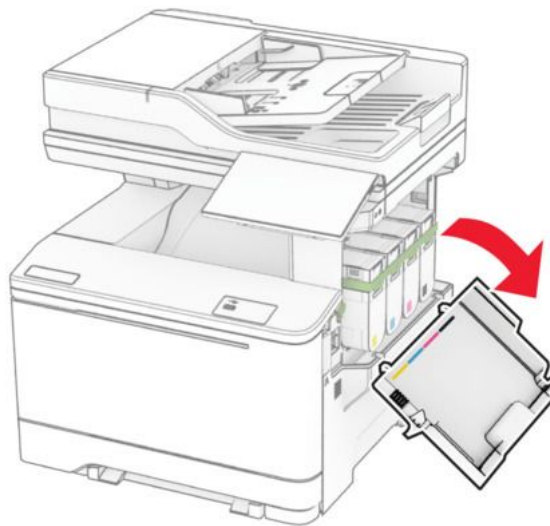
1. Turn off the printer.
2. Unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet, and then from the printer.
3. Using a flat-head screwdriver, remove the controller board shield.

### Warning—Potential Damage

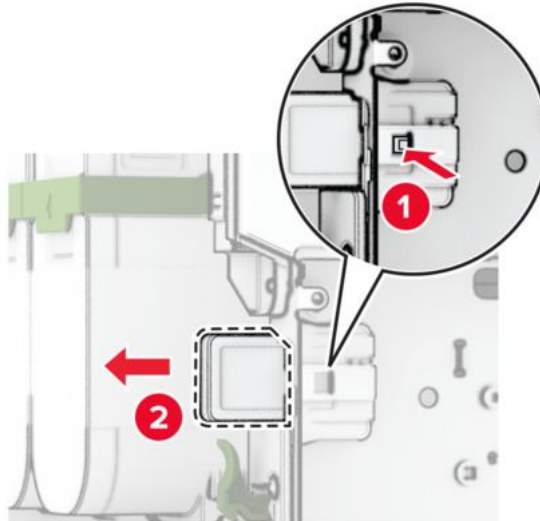
Controller board electronic components are easily damaged by static electricity. Touch a metal surface on the printer before touching any controller board components or connectors.



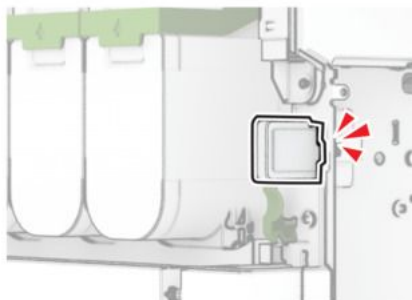
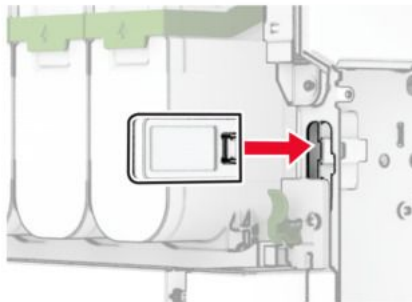
4. Open door B.



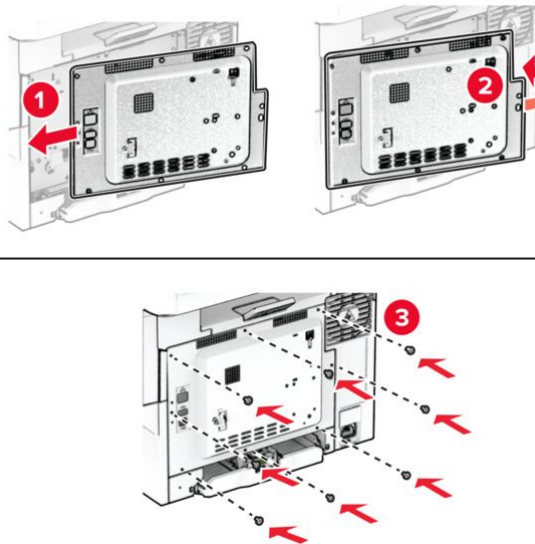
5. Remove the used wireless print server.



6. Unpack the new wireless print server.
7. Insert the new wireless print server until it clicks into place.



8. Close door B.
9. Attach the controller board shield, and then install the screws.



10. Connect the power cord to the printer, and then to the electrical outlet.



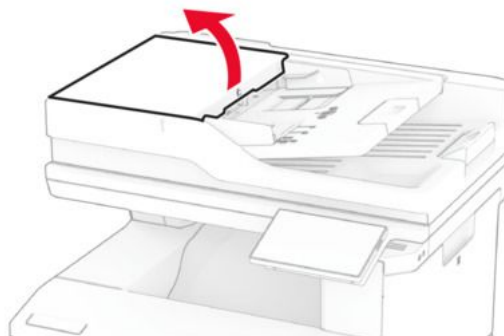
### **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY**

To avoid the risk of fire or electrical shock, connect the power cord to an appropriately rated and properly grounded electrical outlet that is near the product and easily accessible.

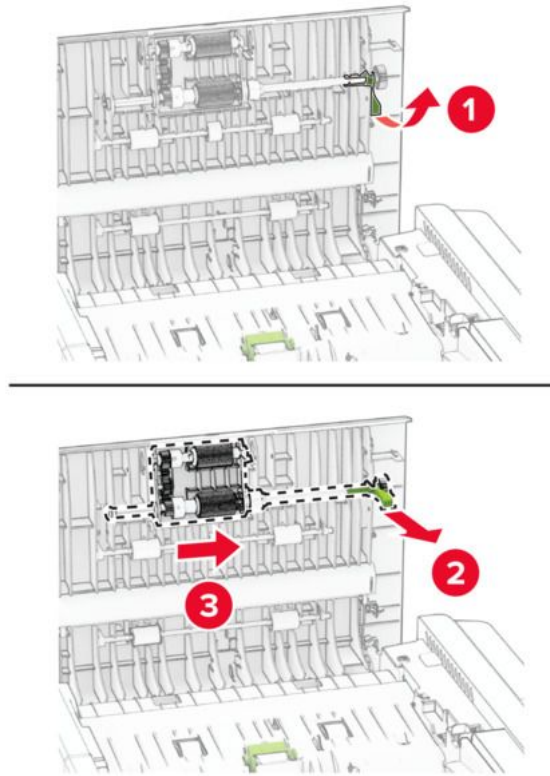
11. Turn on the printer.

## Replacing the ADF rollers

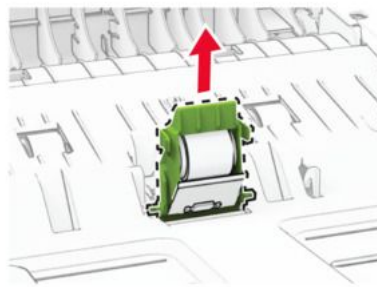
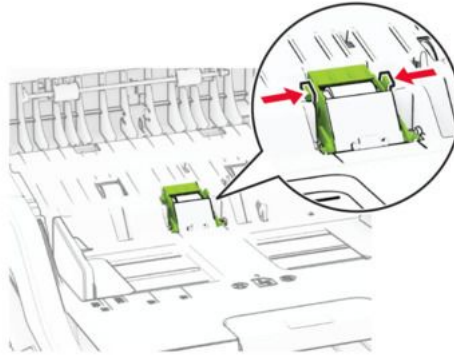
1. Open door C.



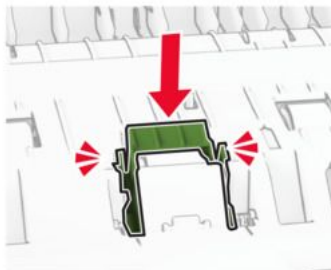
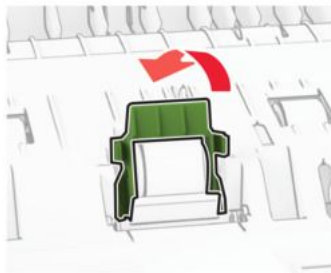
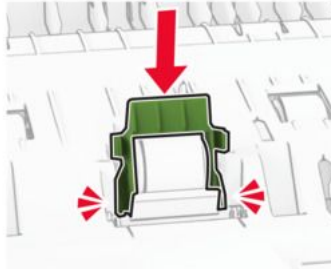
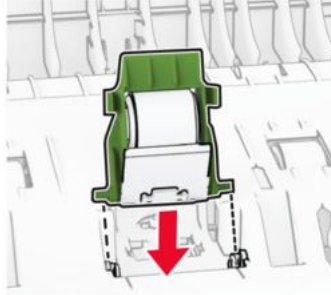
2. Remove the used ADF pick roller.



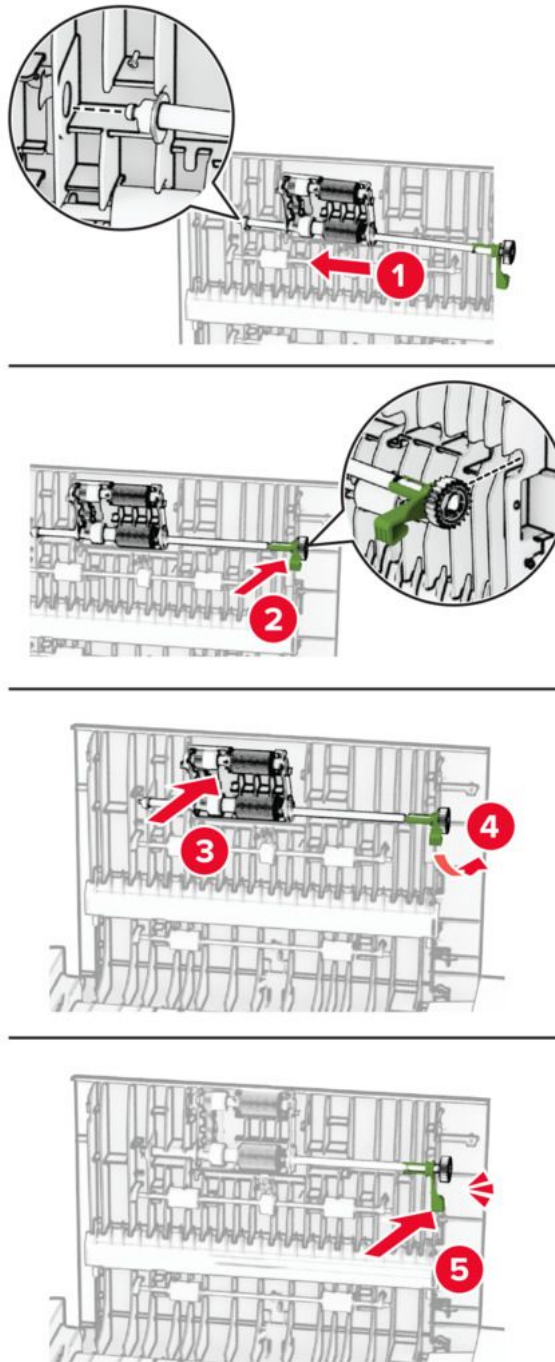
3. Remove the used ADF separator roller.



4. Unpack the new ADF pick roller and ADF separator roller.
5. Insert the new ADF separator roller until it clicks into place.



6. Insert the new ADF pick roller until it clicks into place.

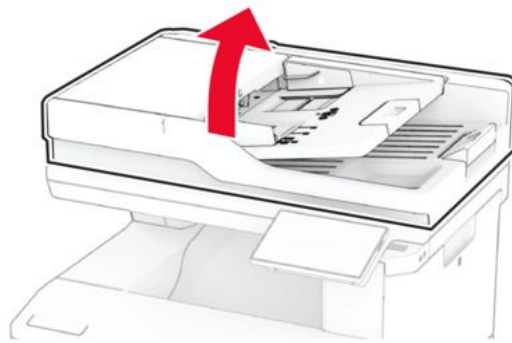


7. Close door C.

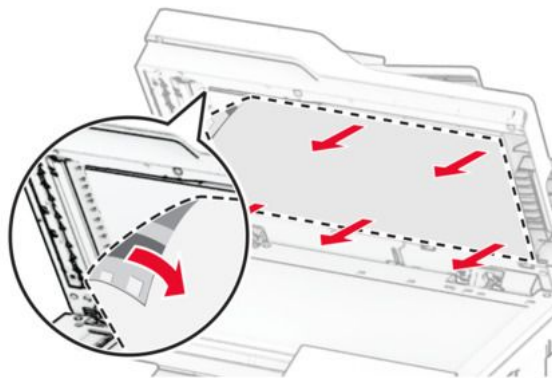
## Replacing the scanner glass pad

1. Open the scanner cover.

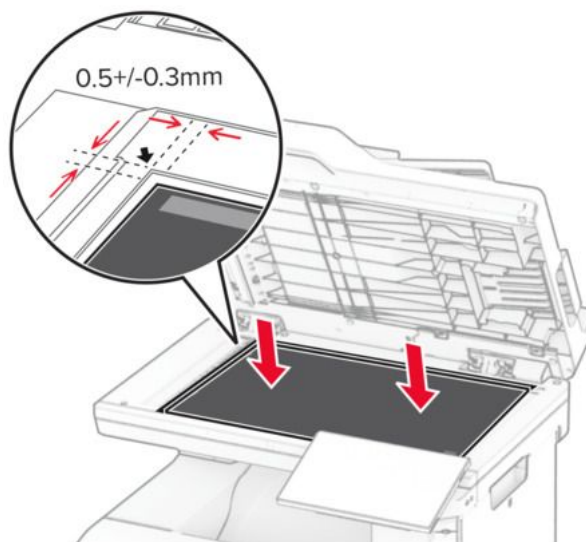




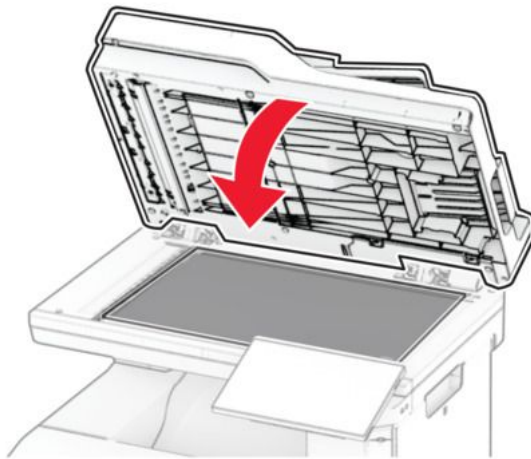
2. Remove the used scanner glass pad.



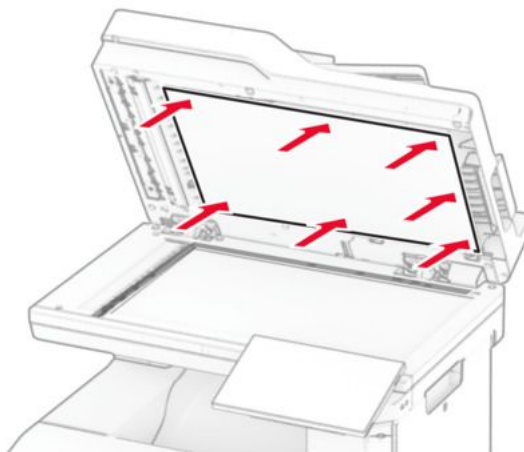
3. Unpack the new scanner glass pad.
4. Align the new scanner glass pad to the scanner glass.



5. Close the scanner cover to attach the new scanner glass pad.



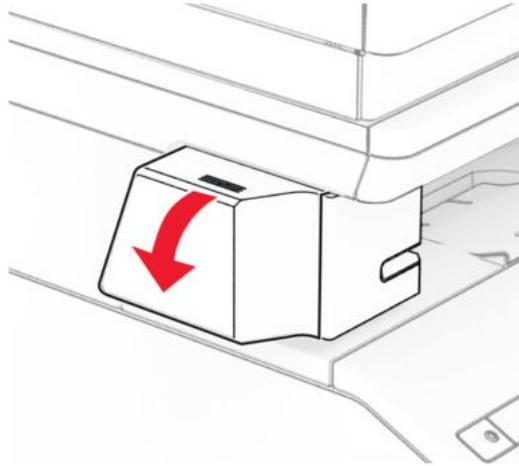
6. Open the scanner cover.
7. Apply pressure to the scanner glass pad to secure it.



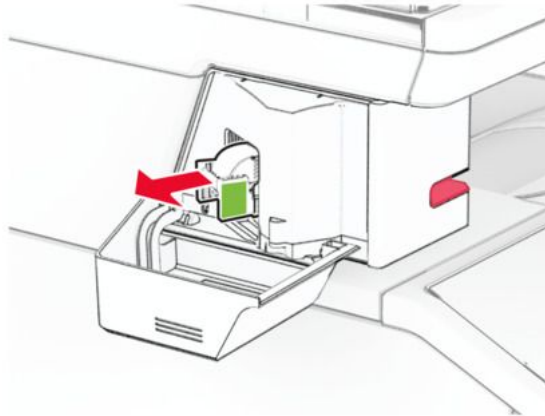
8. Close the scanner cover.

## Replacing the staple refill

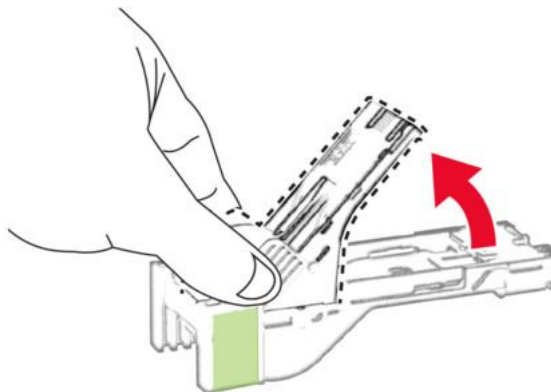
1. Open the convenience stapler access door.



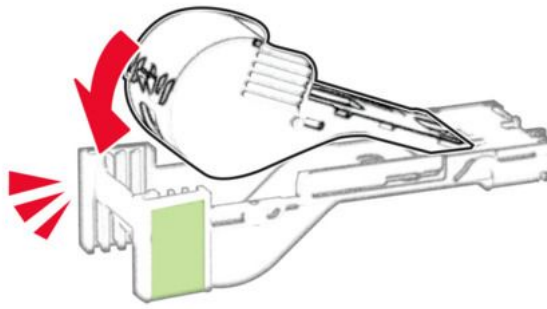
2. Remove the staple cartridge.



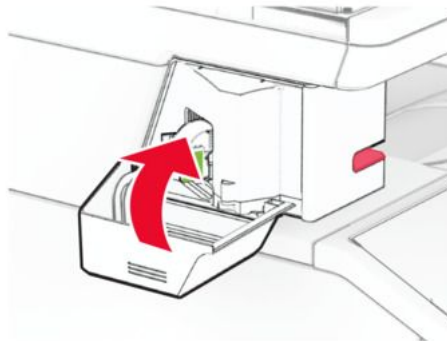
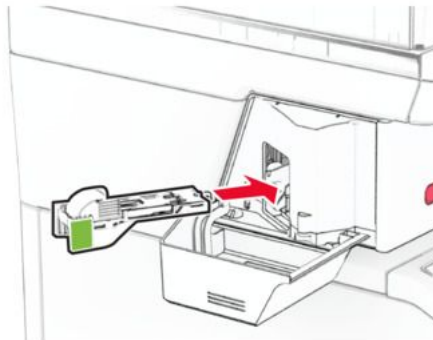
3. Remove the empty staple refill.



4. Insert the new staple refill until it clicks into place.



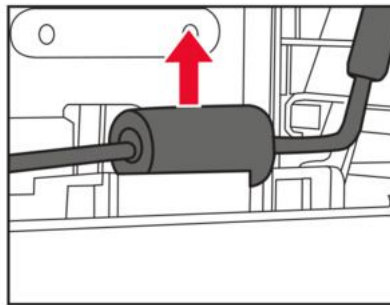
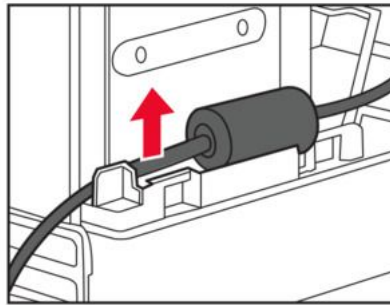
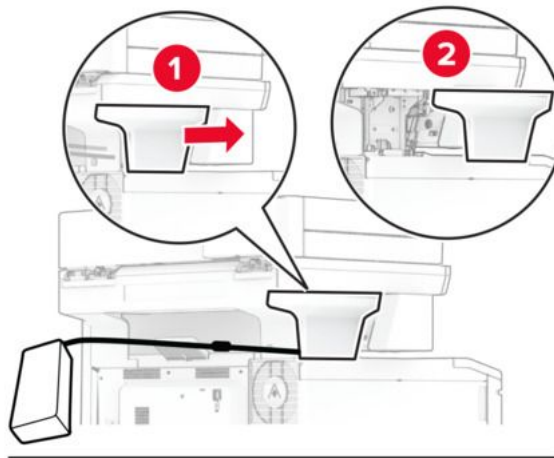
5. Insert the staple cartridge, and then close the convenience stapler access door.



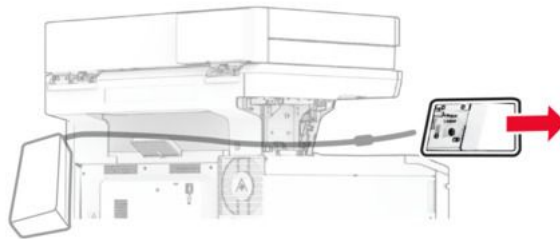
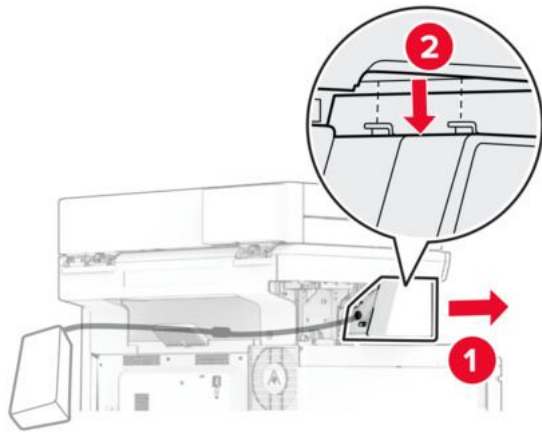
**Note:** Check the LED indicator status. The convenience stapler is ready to use when the blue light comes on.

## Replacing the convenience stapler power supply

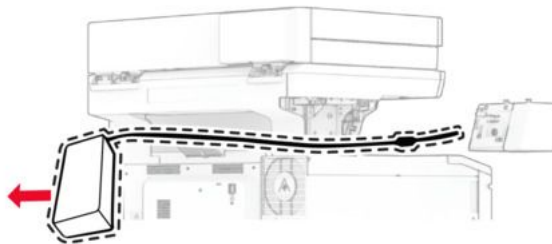
1. Turn off the printer.
2. Unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet, and then from the printer.
3. Unplug the power supply from the electrical outlet.
4. Remove the column cover and power supply cable.



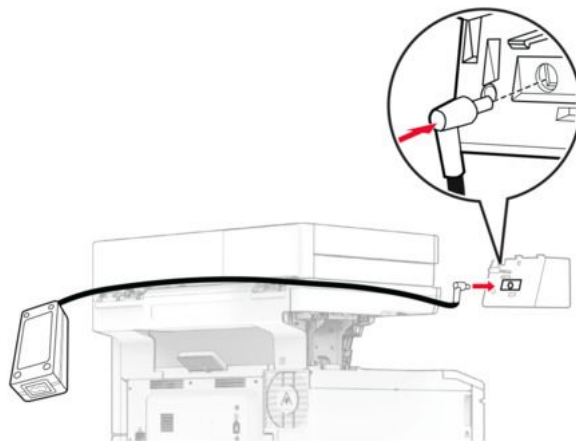
5. Remove the convenience stapler.



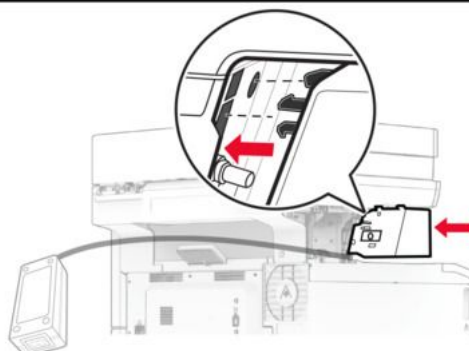
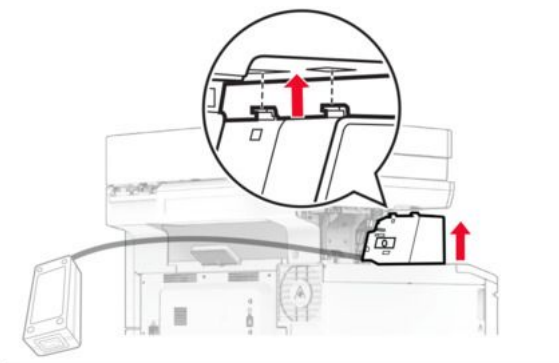
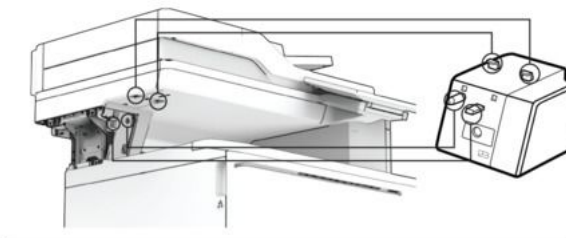
6. Remove the used power supply.



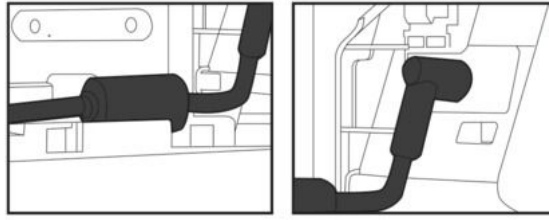
7. Unpack the new power supply.
8. Insert the new power supply through the printer, and then connect it to the convenience stapler.



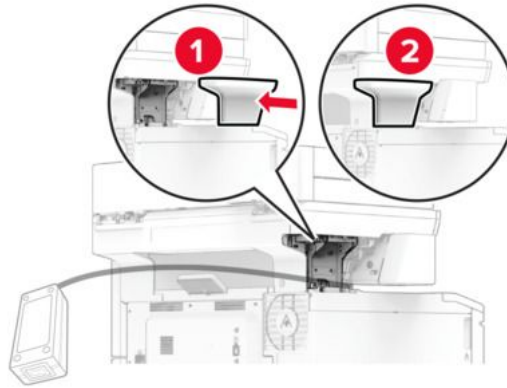
9. Install the convenience stapler.



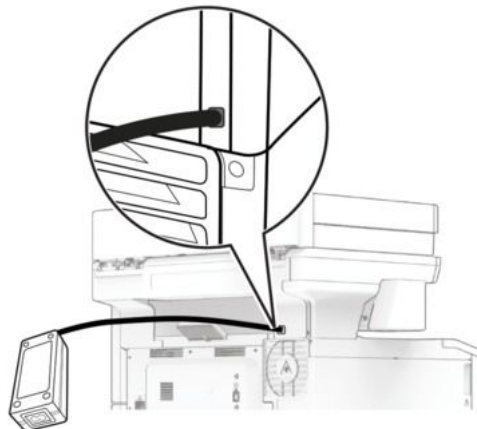
10. Position the power supply properly.



11. Attach the column cover.



**Note:** Secure the power supply properly.



12. Connect one end of the stapler power cord to the power supply, and then the other end to the electrical outlet.
13. Connect one end of the printer power cord to the printer, and then the other end to the electrical outlet.





### CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY

To avoid the risk of fire or electrical shock, connect the power cord to an appropriately rated and properly grounded electrical outlet that is near the product and easily accessible.

14. Turn on the printer.

## Resetting the supply usage counters

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Device** › **Maintenance** › **Configuration Menu** › **Supply Usage And Counters**.
2. Select the counter that you want to reset.

### Warning—Potential Damage

Supplies and parts without Return Program agreement terms may be reset and remanufactured. However, the manufacturer's warranty does not cover any damage caused by non-genuine supplies or parts. Resetting counters on the supply or part without proper remanufacturing can cause damage to your printer. After resetting the supply or part counter, your printer may display an error indicating the presence of the reset item.

## Cleaning printer parts

### Cleaning the exterior of the printer

Regular maintenance of your printer is essential to ensure its longevity and optimal performance. When cleaning the printer, take the necessary precautions to avoid damage. Damage to the printer caused by improper handling is not covered by the printer warranty.

1. Turn off the printer, and then unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet.



### CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD

To avoid the risk of electrical shock when cleaning the exterior of the printer, unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet and disconnect all cables from the printer before proceeding.

2. Remove paper from the standard bin, the trays, and the multipurpose feeder or manual feeder.
3. Using a soft brush, remove any dust, lint, and pieces of paper around the printer.
4. Using a damp, soft, lint-free cloth, wipe the following areas:

### **Warning—Potential Damage**

To avoid damaging the finish of the printer, do not use household cleaners or detergents.

- Control panel
  - Standard bin
  - Trays
  - Multipurpose feeder or manual feeder
  - Front, sides, and rear of the printer
5. Make sure that all areas of the printer are dry after cleaning.
  6. Connect the power cord to the electrical outlet, and then turn on the printer.

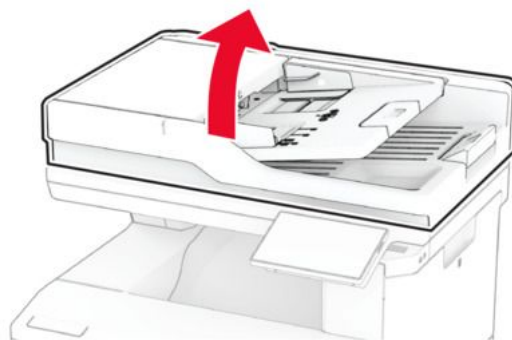


### **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY**

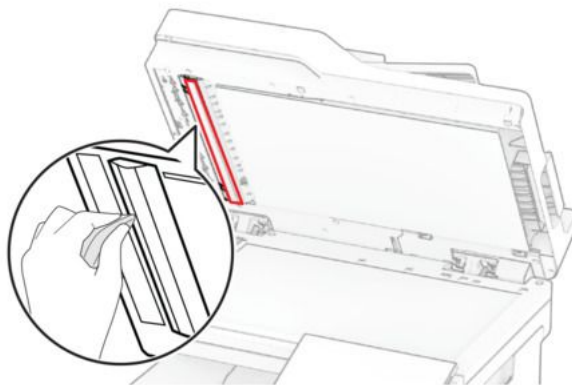
To avoid the risk of fire or electrical shock, connect the power cord to an appropriately rated and properly grounded electrical outlet that is near the product and easily accessible.

## Cleaning the scanner

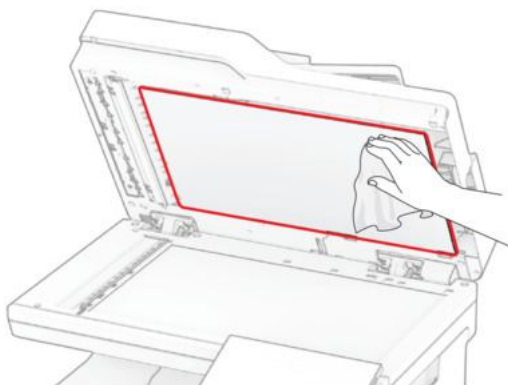
1. Open the scanner cover.



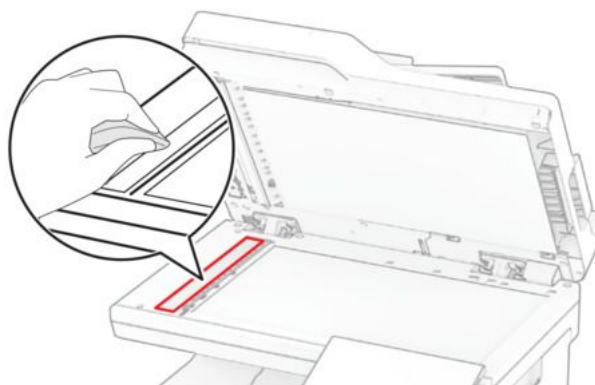
2. Using a damp, soft, lint-free cloth, wipe the following areas:
  - ADF glass pad



- Scanner glass pad



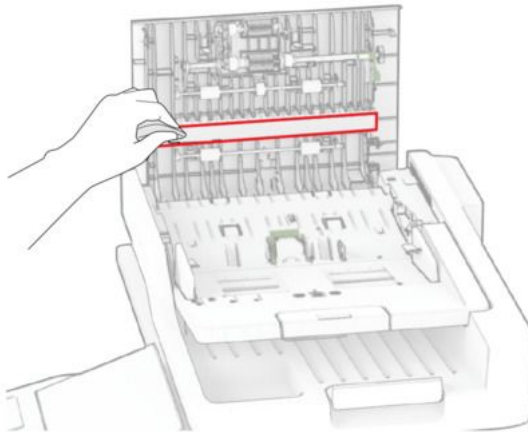
- ADF glass



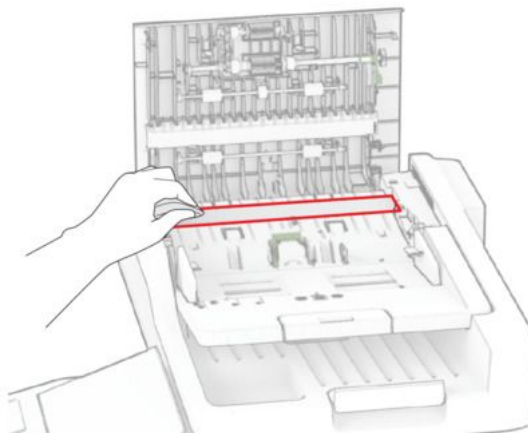
- Scanner glass



3. Close the scanner cover.
4. Open door C.
5. Using a damp, soft, lint-free cloth, wipe the following areas:
  - ADF glass pad in door C



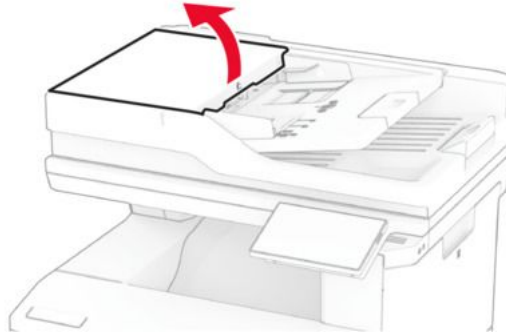
- ADF glass in door C



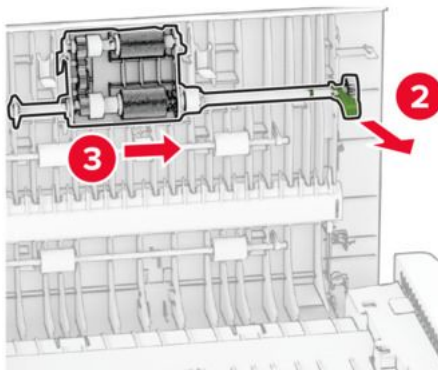
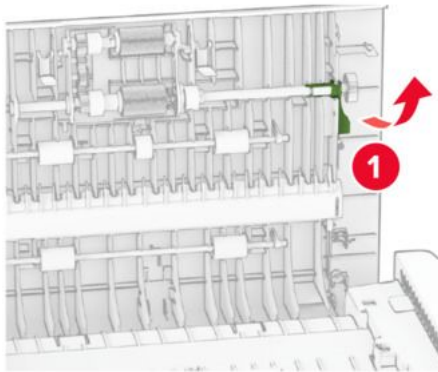
6. Close door C.

## Cleaning the ADF rollers

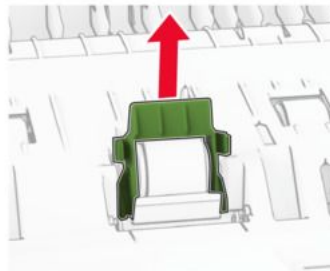
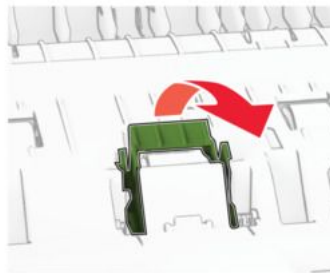
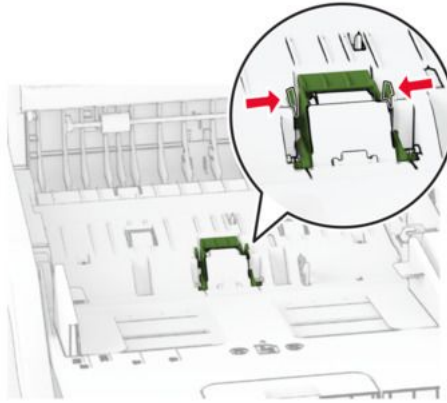
1. Open door C.



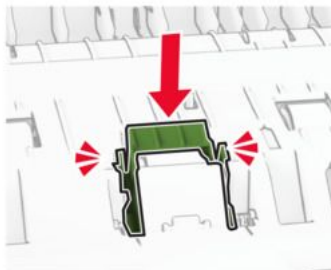
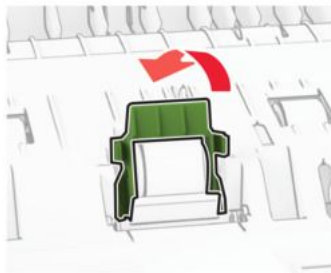
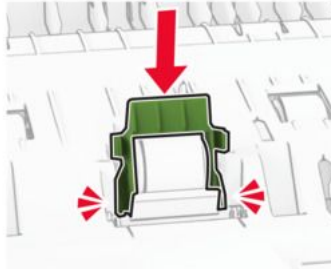
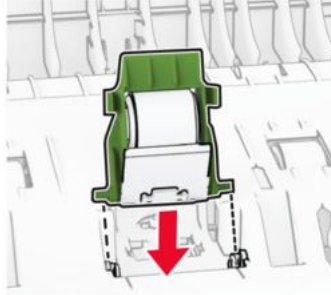
2. Remove the ADF pick roller.



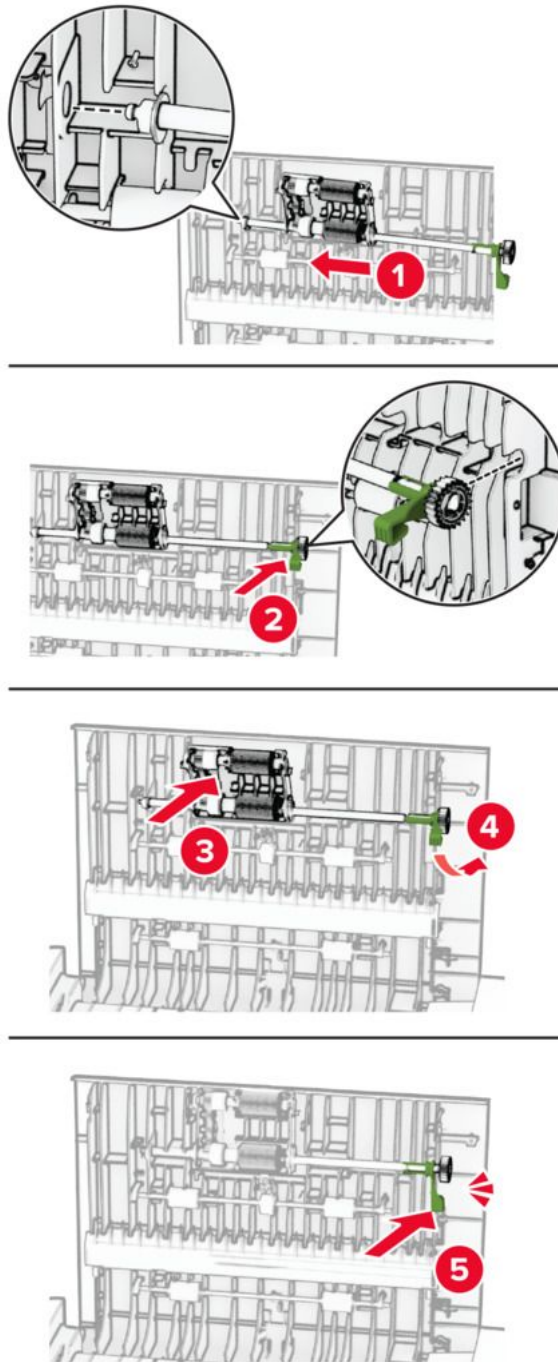
3. Remove the ADF separator roller.



4. Apply isopropyl alcohol to a soft, lint-free cloth, and then wipe the ADF pick roller and ADF separator roller.
5. Insert the ADF separator roller until it clicks into place.



6. Insert the ADF pick roller until it clicks into place.



7. Close door C.

## **Saving energy and paper**

### **Configuring the power save mode settings**

#### **Sleep mode**

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Device** › **Power Management** › **Timeouts** › **Sleep Mode**.
2. Set the amount of time that the printer stays idle before it enters **Sleep Mode**.



### Hibernate mode

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Device › Power Management › Timeouts › Hibernate Timeout**.
2. Set the amount of time that the printer stays idle before it enters Hibernate mode.

#### Notes

- For **Hibernate Timeout** to work, set **Hibernate Timeout on Connection to Hibernate**.
- The Embedded Web Server is disabled when the printer is in Hibernate mode.

## Adjusting the brightness of the display

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Device › Preferences**.
2. In the **Screen Brightness** menu, adjust the setting.

## Conserving supplies

- Print on both sides of the paper.

**Note:** Two-sided printing is the default setting in the printer.

- Print multiple pages on a single sheet of paper.
- Use the preview feature to see how the document looks like before printing it.
- Print one copy of the document to check its content and format for accuracy.

## Moving the printer to another location



#### CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY

If the printer weight is greater than 20 kg (44 lb), then it may require two or more people to lift it safely.



#### CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY

To avoid the risk of fire or electrical shock, use only the power cord provided with this product or the manufacturer's authorized replacement.



### **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY**

When moving the printer, follow these guidelines to avoid personal injury or printer damage:

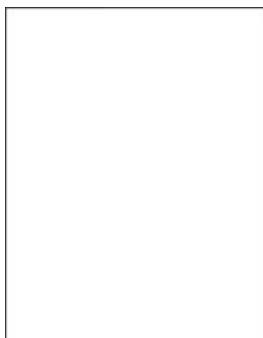
- Make sure that all doors and trays are closed.
- Turn off the printer, and then unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet.
- Disconnect all cords and cables from the printer.
- If the printer has separate floor-standing optional trays or output options attached to it, then disconnect them before moving the printer.
- If the printer has a caster base, then carefully roll it to the new location. Use caution when passing over thresholds and breaks in flooring.
- If the printer does not have a caster base but is configured with optional trays or output options, then remove the output options and lift the printer off the trays. Do not try to lift the printer and any options at the same time.
- Always use the handholds on the printer to lift it.
- Any cart used to move the printer must have a surface able to support the full footprint of the printer.
- Any cart used to move the hardware options must have a surface able to support the dimensions of the options.
- Keep the printer in an upright position.
- Avoid severe jarring movements.
- Make sure that your fingers are not under the printer when you set it down.
- Make sure that there is adequate clearance around the printer.

**Note:** Damage to the printer caused by improper moving is not covered by the printer warranty.

# Troubleshoot a problem

## Print quality problems

Find the image that resembles the print quality problem you are having, and then click the link below it to read problem-solving steps.



[Blank or white pages on page 295](#)



[Dark print on page 296](#)



[Ghost images on page 298](#)



[Gray or colored background on page 299](#)



[Incorrect margins on page 301](#)



[Light print on page 302](#)



[Missing colors on page 304](#)



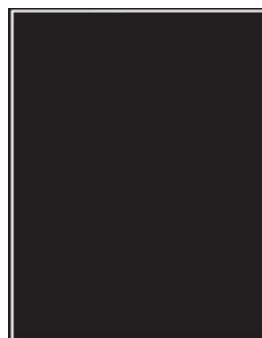
[Mottled print and dots on page 305](#)



[Paper curl on page 307](#)



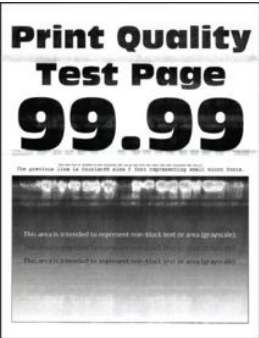
[Print crooked or skewed on page 309](#)



[Solid color or black images on page 310](#)



[Text or images cut off on page 311](#)

|                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                           |                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                            |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  <p>Toner easily rubs off on page 312</p>  |  <p>Uneven print density on page 313</p> |  <p>Horizontal dark lines on page 314</p> |  <p>Vertical dark lines on page 316</p> |
|  <p>Horizontal white lines on page 317</p> |  <p>Vertical white lines on page 319</p> |  <p>Repeating defects on page 320</p>     |                                                                                                                            |

## Printer error codes

| Error codes                | Error message                                                 | Solution                                                                                                                                  |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 8.01                       | Close all doors.                                              | Keep all doors closed unless performing maintenance.                                                                                      |
| 9.00                       | Printer had to restart. Last job may be incomplete.           | Touch <b>Continue</b> to clear the message and continue printing.                                                                         |
| 11.11, 11.21, 11.31, 11.41 | Load <source/> with <type/> <size/>.                          | Open the indicated tray, and then load paper. For more information, see <a href="#">Loading trays on page 73</a> .                        |
| 11.12, 11.22, 11.32, 11.42 | Load <source/> with <type/> <size/> <orientation/>.           |                                                                                                                                           |
| 11.81                      | Load <source/> with <type/> <size/>.                          | Adjust the paper guides, and then load paper. For more information, see <a href="#">Loading the manual feeder on page 75</a> .            |
| 11.82                      | Load <source/> with <type/> <size/> <orientation/>.           |                                                                                                                                           |
| 11.91                      | Load multipurpose feeder with <type/> <size/>.                | Open the multipurpose feeder, and then load paper. For more information, see <a href="#">Loading the multipurpose feeder on page 76</a> . |
| 11.92                      | Load multipurpose feeder with <type/> <size/> <orientation/>. |                                                                                                                                           |

| Error codes | Error message                                                 | Solution                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 12.11       | Change <source/> to <type/> <size/>.                          | Open the indicated tray, remove paper, and then load the correct paper type and size. For more information, see <a href="#">Loading trays on page 73</a> .                                                                                                                  |
| 12.12       | Change <source/> to <type/> <size/> <orientation/>.           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| 12.91       | Change multipurpose feeder to <type/> <size/>.                | Remove paper, and then load the correct paper type and size. For more information, see <a href="#">Loading the multipurpose feeder on page 76</a> .                                                                                                                         |
| 12.92       | Change multipurpose feeder to <type/> <size/> <orientation/>. |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| 29.08       | Remove packing material.                                      | <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Open door A.</li><li>2. Remove the red packing material behind the front door.</li><li>3. Open door B.</li><li>4. Remove the packing material near the toner cartridges.</li><li>5. Close door B, and then close door A.</li></ol> |

| Error codes                    | Error message                                         | Solution                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 31.35z                         | Reinstall missing or unresponsive waste toner bottle. | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Open door A.</li> </ol> <div> <b>Warning—<br/>Potential<br/>Damage</b><br/>           The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching it.         </div> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Open door B.</li> <li>3. Remove the right cover.</li> <li>4. Remove the waste toner bottle.</li> <li>5. Align, and then insert the waste toner bottle.</li> <li>6. Align, and then attach the right cover.</li> <li>7. Close door B, and then close door A.</li> </ol> |
| 31.40z, 31.41z, 31.42z, 31.43z | Reinstall missing or unresponsive [color] cartridge.  | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Open door B.</li> <li>2. Remove the cartridge.</li> <li>3. Insert the cartridge.</li> <li>4. Close door B.</li> </ol>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |

| Error codes                    | Error message                                                              | Solution                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 31.60z                         | Reinstall missing or unresponsive black imaging kit.                       | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Open door A.</li> </ol> <div> <b>Warning—Potential Damage</b><br/> The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching it. </div> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Open door B.</li> <li>3. Remove all toner cartridges.</li> <li>4. Remove the right cover.</li> <li>5. Remove the waste toner bottle.</li> <li>6. Pull out the imaging kit.</li> <li>7. Insert the imaging kit until it is fully seated.</li> <li>8. Align, and then insert the waste toner bottle.</li> <li>9. Align, and then attach the right cover.</li> <li>10. Insert the toner cartridges.</li> <li>11. Close door B, and then close door A.</li> </ol> |
| 31.65z                         | Reinstall missing, unplugged, or unresponsive black and color imaging kit. |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| 32.40z, 32.41z, 32.42z, 32.43z | Replace unsupported [color] cartridge.                                     | For more information, see <a href="#">Replacing a toner cartridge on page 237</a> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| 32.65z                         | Replace unsupported black and color imaging kit.                           | For more information, see <a href="#">Replacing an imaging kit on page 239</a> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| 33.40, 33.41, 33.42, 33.43     | Refilled regular [color] cartridge.                                        | See <a href="#">Refilled regular [color] cartridge on page 338</a> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |

| Error codes | Error message                                              | Solution                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 33.65       | Non-Lexmark black and color imaging kit, see User's Guide. | For more information, see <a href="#">Non-Lexmark supply</a> .                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| 37.1        | Insufficient memory to collate job.                        | Try one or more of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Touch <b>Continue</b> to print the part of the job that is stored and to begin collating the rest of the print job.</li><li>• Cancel the current print job.</li></ul>        |
| 37.3        | Insufficient memory, some held jobs were deleted.          | Touch <b>Continue</b> to clear the message and continue printing.                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| 38.1        | Memory full.                                               | Try one or more of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Touch <b>Cancel job</b> to clear the message.</li><li>• Print the document in several parts, or send it to another printer.</li><li>• Install more printer memory.</li></ul> |



| Error codes                    | Error message                                       | Solution                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 39.1                           | Complex page, some data may not have printed.       | <p>Try one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Touch <b>Continue</b> to clear the message and continue printing.</li> <li>• Cancel the current print job.</li> <li>• Install more printer memory.</li> <li>• Reduce the complexity and size of the print job before sending it to print again. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◦ Reduce the number of pages in the print job.</li> <li>◦ Reduce the number and size of any downloaded fonts.</li> <li>◦ Delete any unnecessary fonts or macros from the print job.</li> <li>◦ Reduce the number of graphics in the print job.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |
| 42.yy                          | Replace [color] cartridge, printer region mismatch. | For more information, see <a href="#">Replace cartridge, printer region mismatch on page 337</a> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| 43.40y, 43.41y, 43.42y, 43.43y | [Color] cartridge problem.                          | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Open door B.</li> <li>2. Remove the toner cartridge.</li> <li>3. Insert the toner cartridge.</li> <li>4. Close door B.</li> </ol> <p>If the problem persists, then replace the cartridge.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |

| Error codes                    | Error message                                                  | Solution                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 43.40z, 43.41z, 43.42z, 43.43z | Replace defective [color] cartridge.                           | For more information, see <a href="#">Replacing a toner cartridge on page 237</a> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| 55.1                           | Error reading USB drive.<br>Remove USB.                        | Remove the flash drive to continue.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| 55.2                           | Error reading USB hub.<br>Remove hub.                          | Remove the USB hub to continue.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| 58                             | Too many trays attached.<br>Only <x/> tray/s can be supported. | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Turn off the printer.</li> <li>2. Unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet, and then from the printer.</li> <li>3. Remove one or more trays.</li> <li>4. Connect the power cord to the electrical outlet, and then turn on the printer.</li> </ol> <div> </div> <div> <p><b>CAUTION</b><br/>—<br/><b>POTENTIAL INJURY</b></p> </div> <div> <p>To avoid the risk of fire or electrical shock, connect the power cord to an appropriately rated and properly grounded electrical outlet that is near the product and easily accessible.</p> </div> |

| Error codes | Error message          | Solution                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-------------|------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 59          | Incompatible tray [x]. | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Turn off the printer.</li> <li>2. Unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet, and then from the printer.</li> <li>3. Remove the indicated tray.</li> <li>4. Connect the power cord to the electrical outlet, and then turn on the printer.</li> </ol> <div>  <p><b>CAUTION</b><br/>—<br/><b>POTENTIAL INJURY</b><br/>To avoid the risk of fire or electrical shock, connect the power cord to an appropriately rated and properly grounded electrical outlet that is near the product and easily accessible.</p> </div> |
| 61          | Remove defective disk. | Replace the defective storage drive.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| 62          | Disk full.             | <p>Try one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Touch <b>Continue</b> to clear the message.</li> <li>• Delete fonts, macros, and other data stored in the intelligent storage drive.</li> <li>• Install an intelligent storage drive.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |

| Error codes | Error message                                                | Solution                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 63          | Format the disk.                                             | <p>Formatting now wipes all information from the storage drive.</p> <p>To format the disk, do the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. From the home screen, touch <b>Settings &gt; Device &gt; Maintenance &gt; Out of Service Erase</b>.</li> <li>2. Touch <b>Sanitize all information on hard disk</b> or <b>Erase Intelligent Storage Drive</b>, and then touch <b>ERASE</b>.</li> </ol> |
| 71.01       | Fax Station Name not set up. Contact system administrator.   | For more information, see <a href="#">Setting up the fax function using analog fax on page 47</a> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| 71.02       | Fax Station Number not set up. Contact system administrator. | For more information, see <a href="#">Setting up the fax function using analog fax on page 47</a> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| 71.03       | No analog phone line connected to modem, fax is disabled.    | Check the connection and the line for a signal. For more information, see <a href="#">Setting up fax using a standard telephone line</a> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| 71.06       | Unable to connect to HTTPS Fax Server.                       | Connection to HTTPS Fax Server is disconnected. Check the Internet connection of the printer.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| 71.12       | Memory full, cannot print faxes.                             | Touch <b>Print All</b> to print as many of the faxes as have been saved.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| 71.13       | Memory full. Cannot send faxes.                              | <p>Try one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Continue and try sending the fax again.</li> <li>• Scan the original document one page at a time, dial the fax number, and then scan the document.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                  |

| Error codes         | Error message                                               | Solution                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|---------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 71.4                | Incorrect printer time.                                     | To set the correct printer time, do the following: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. From the home screen, touch <b>Settings &gt; Device &gt; Preferences</b>.</li> <li>2. Touch <b>Date and Time</b>, and then set the correct time.</li> </ol>                                                                                                 |
| 72.01               | Email SMTP server not set up. Contact system administrator. | Try either of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Set up your email function. For more information, see <a href="#">Configuring the email SMTP settings on page 54</a>.</li> <li>• Disable the error message. For more information, see <a href="#">Disabling the “SMTP server not set up” error message on page 340</a>.</li> </ul> |
| 80.11               | Maintenance kit low.                                        | Touch <b>Continue</b> to clear the message.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| 80.21               | Maintenance kit very low.                                   | Touch <b>Continue</b> to clear the message.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| 84.01, 84.09        | Black and color imaging kit nearly low.                     | Touch <b>Continue</b> to clear the message.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| 84.11, 84.19        | Black and color imaging kit low.                            | Touch <b>Continue</b> to clear the message.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| 84.21, 84.23, 84.29 | Black and color imaging kit very low.                       | Touch <b>Continue</b> to clear the message.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| 84.31, 84.33        | Replace [color] imaging kit, recommended life exceeded.     | For more information, see <a href="#">Replacing an imaging kit on page 239</a> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| 84.41, 84.43, 84.48 | Replace [color] imaging kit to resume printing.             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| 88.00, 88.08, 88.09 | [Color] cartridge nearly low.                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| 88.10, 88.18, 88.19 | [Color] cartridge low.                                      | Touch <b>Continue</b> to clear the message.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| 88.20, 88.28, 88.29 | [Color] cartridge very low.                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |

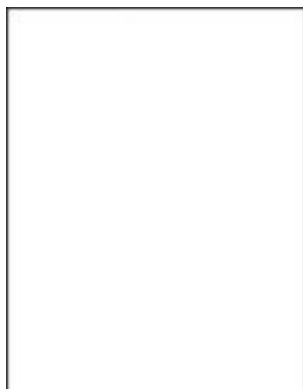
| Error codes                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Error message                                             | Solution                                                                                     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 88.30, 88.37, 88.38                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Replace [color] cartridge, <num/> estimated pages remain. | For more information, see <a href="#">Replacing a toner cartridge on page 237</a> .          |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Replace [color] cartridge.                                |                                                                                              |
| 88.40, 88.47, 88.48                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Replace [color] cartridge, 0 pages remain.                |                                                                                              |
| 200.02, 200.03, 200.05, 200.06, 200.12, 200.13, 200.15, 200.16, 200.22, 200.23, 200.25, 200.32, 200.33, 200.35, 200.43, 200.45, 200.91, 200.99, 202.03, 202.04, 202.05, 202.13, 202.14, 202.15, 202.23, 202.24, 202.25, 202.33, 202.34, 202.35, 202.43, 202.44, 202.45, 202.91, 232.02, 232.03, 232.05, 232.12, 232.13, 232.15, 232.22, 232.23, 232.25, 232.32, 232.33, 232.35, 232.42, 232.43, 232.45, 232.92, 232.93, 232.95, 241.91                                                                                                                                                                         | Paper jam, [jam header]. [xxx.yy]                         | For more information, see <a href="#">Paper jam in door A on page 328</a> .                  |
| 241.05, 241.82, 241.83, 241.84, 241.91, 242.05, 242.06, 242.21, 242.22, 242.25, 242.26, 242.31, 242.32, 242.33, 242.35, 242.36, 242.43, 242.45, 242.70, 242.72, 242.91, 242.92, 242.93, 242.95, 243.31, 243.32, 243.35, 243.36, 243.41, 243.42, 243.43, 243.45, 243.70, 243.71, 243.72, 243.73, 243.74, 243.75, 243.76, 243.80, 243.81, 243.82, 243.83, 243.84, 243.85, 243.86, 243.91, 243.92, 243.93, 243.95, 243.96, 243.97, 244.45, 244.46, 244.70, 244.71, 244.72, 244.73, 244.74, 244.75, 244.76, 244.80, 244.81, 244.82, 244.83, 244.84, 244.85, 244.86, 244.91, 244.92, 244.93, 244.95, 244.96, 244.97 | Paper jam, [jam header]. [xxx.yy]                         | For more information, see <a href="#">Paper jam in trays on page 332</a> .                   |
| 242.05                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Paper jam, [jam header]. [xxx.yy]                         | For more information, see <a href="#">Paper jam in the multipurpose feeder on page 334</a> . |
| 251.xx                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Paper jam, [jam header]. [xxx.yy]                         | For more information, see <a href="#">Paper jam in the manual feeder on page 333</a> .       |

| Error codes                                                                                                                    | Error message                               | Solution                                                                                           |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 200.16, 241.8y                                                                                                                 | Paper loading error, [jam header]. [xxx.yy] | For more information, see <a href="#">Paper jam in trays on page 332</a> .                         |
| 280.11, 280.13, 280.15, 280.91, 280.93, 280.95, 284.11, 284.13, 284.15, 284.91, 284.93, 284.95, 295.01, 680.10, 680.20, 680.40 | Scanner jam. [xxx.yy]                       | For more information, see <a href="#">Paper jam in the automatic document feeder on page 327</a> . |

## Printing problems

### Print quality is poor

#### Blank or white pages



**Note:** Before solving the problem, print the Print Quality Test Pages. From the home screen, touch **Settings > Troubleshooting > Print Quality Test Pages**.

1. Perform the following tests:
  - a. Check if the printer is using a genuine and supported Lexmark toner cartridge.

**Note:** If the cartridge is not supported, then install a supported one.

- b. Print the document.

Is the printer printing blank or white pages?

- **Yes:**  
Go to the next step.
- **No:**  
The problem is solved.

2. Perform the following tests:

- a. Remove the imaging kit.

### **Warning—Potential Damage**

Do not expose the imaging kit to direct light for more than 10 minutes. Extended exposure to light may cause print quality problems.

### **Warning—Potential Damage**

Do not touch the photoconductor drum under the imaging kit. Doing so may affect the quality of future print jobs.

- b. Insert the imaging kit.
- c. Print the document.

Is the printer printing blank or white pages?

- **Yes:**  
Contact [customer support](#).
- **No:**  
The problem is solved.

## Dark print



**Note:** Before solving the problem, print the quality sample pages to determine the missing color. From the home screen, touch **Settings > Troubleshooting > Print Quality Test Pages**.

1. Perform the following tests:
  - a. Perform Color Adjust.

From the home screen, touch **Settings > Print > Quality > Advanced Imaging > Color Adjust**.

- b. Print the document.

Is the print too dark?



- **Yes:**  
Go to the next step.
  - **No:**  
The problem is solved.
2. Perform the following tests:
    - a. Depending on your operating system, reduce the toner darkness from the Printing Preferences or Print dialog.

**Note:** You can also change the settings on the printer control panel. From the home screen, touch **Settings > Print > Quality > Toner Darkness**.

- b. Print the document.

Is the print too dark?

- **Yes:**  
Go to the next step.
  - **No:**  
The problem is solved.
3. Perform the following tests:
    - a. Depending on your operating system, specify the paper type from the Printing Preferences or Print dialog.

### Notes

- Make sure that the settings match the paper loaded in the tray.
- You can also change the settings on the printer control panel. From the home screen, touch **Settings > Paper > Tray Configuration > Paper Size/Type**.

- b. Print the document.

Is the print too dark?

- **Yes:**  
Go to the next step.
  - **No:**  
Go to step 6.
4. Make sure that the paper has no texture or rough finishes.

Are you printing on textured or rough paper?

- **Yes:**  
Go to the next step.
  - **No:**  
Go to step 6.
5. Perform the following tests:
    - a. Replace textured or rough paper with plain paper.
    - b. Print the document.

Is the print too dark?

- **Yes:**  
Go to the next step.
  - **No:**  
The problem is solved.
6. Perform the following tests:
- a. Load paper from a fresh package.

**Note:** Paper absorbs moisture due to high humidity. Store paper in its original wrapper until you are ready to use it.

- b. Print the document.

Is the print too dark?

- **Yes:**  
Contact [customer support](#).
- **No:**  
The problem is solved.

## Ghost images



**Note:** Before solving the problem, print the Print Quality Test Pages. From the home screen, touch **Settings > Troubleshooting > Print Quality Test Pages**.

1. Perform the following tests:
- a. Load the tray with the correct paper type and weight.
  - b. Print the document.
- Do ghost images appear on prints?
- **Yes:**  
Go to the next step.
  - **No:**  
The problem is solved.
2. Perform the following tests:
- a. Depending on your operating system, specify the paper type from the Printing Preferences or Print dialog.

### Notes

- Make sure that the setting matches the paper loaded in the tray.
- You can also change the setting on the printer control panel. From the home screen, touch **Settings > Paper > Tray Configuration > Paper Size/Type**.

- b. Print the document.

Do ghost images appear on prints?

- **Yes:**  
Go to the next step.
  - **No:**  
The problem is solved.
3. Perform the following tests:
    - a. Perform Color Adjust.  
  
From the home screen, touch **Settings > Print > Quality > Advanced Imaging > Color Adjust**.
    - b. Print the document.  
  
Do ghost images appear on prints?
      - **Yes:**  
Contact [customer support](#).
      - **No:**  
The problem is solved.

## Gray or colored background



**Note:** Before solving the problem, print the Print Quality Test Pages. From the home screen, touch **Settings > Troubleshooting > Print Quality Test Pages**.

1. Perform the following tests:
  - a. Depending on your operating system, increase toner darkness from the Printing Preferences or Print dialog.

**Note:** You can also change the setting on the printer control panel. From the home screen, touch **Settings > Print > Quality > Toner Darkness**.

- b. Print the document.

Does gray or colored background appear on prints?

- **Yes:**  
Go to the next step.
  - **No:**  
The problem is solved.
2. Perform the following tests:
    - a. Perform Color Adjust.  
  
From the home screen, touch **Settings > Print > Quality > Advanced Imaging > Color Adjust**.
    - b. Print the document.
- Does gray or colored background appear on prints?
- **Yes:**  
Go to the next step.
  - **No:**  
The problem is solved.
3. Perform the following tests:
    - a. Remove the imaging kit.

**Warning—Potential Damage**

Do not expose the imaging kit to direct light for more than 10 minutes. Extended exposure to light may cause print quality problems.

**Warning—Potential Damage**

Do not touch the photoconductor drum under the imaging kit. Doing so may affect the quality of future print jobs.

- b. Insert the imaging kit.
- c. Print the document.

Does gray or colored background appear on prints?

- **Yes:**  
Contact [customer support](#).
- **No:**  
The problem is solved.

## Incorrect margins



**Note:** Before solving the problem, print the Print Quality Test Pages. From the home screen, touch **Settings > Troubleshooting > Print Quality Test Pages**.

1. Perform the following tests:
  - a. Adjust the paper guides in the tray to the correct position for the paper loaded.
  - b. Print the document.

Are the margins correct?

- **Yes:**  
The problem is solved.
- **No:**  
Go to the next step.

2. Perform the following tests:
  - a. Depending on your operating system, specify the paper size from the Printing Preferences or Print dialog.

### Notes

- Make sure that the setting matches the paper loaded.
- You can also change the setting on the printer control panel. From the home screen, touch **Settings > Paper > Tray Configuration > Paper Size/Type**.

- b. Print the document.

Are the margins correct?

- **Yes:**  
The problem is solved.
- **No:**  
Contact [customer support](#).

### Light print



**Note:** Before solving the problem, print the Print Quality Test Pages. From the home screen, touch **Settings > Troubleshooting > Print Quality Test Pages**.

1. Perform the following tests:

a. Perform Color Adjust.

From the home screen, touch **Settings > Print > Quality > Advanced Imaging > Color Adjust**.

b. Print the document.

Is the print light?

◦ **Yes:**

Go to the next step.

◦ **No:**

The problem is solved.

2. Perform the following tests:

a. Depending on your operating system, increase toner darkness from the Printing Preferences or Print dialog.

**Note:** You can also change the setting on the printer control panel. From the home screen, touch **Settings > Print > Quality > Toner Darkness**.

b. Print the document.

Is the print light?

◦ **Yes:**

Go to the next step.

◦ **No:**

The problem is solved.

3. Perform the following tests:

a. Turn off Color Saver.

From the home screen, touch **Settings > Print > Quality > Color Saver**.

b. Print the document.

Is the print light?

- **Yes:**  
Go to the next step.
- **No:**  
The problem is solved.

4. Perform the following tests:

- a. Depending on your operating system, specify the paper type from the Printing Preferences or Print dialog.

### Notes

- Make sure that the setting matches the paper loaded.
- You can also change the setting on the printer control panel. From the home screen, touch **Settings > Paper > Tray Configuration > Paper Size/Type**.

- b. Print the document.

Is the print light?

- **Yes:**  
Go to the next step.
- **No:**  
The problem is solved.

5. Check if paper has texture or rough finishes.

Are you printing on textured or rough paper?

- **Yes:**  
Go to the next step.
- **No:**  
Go to step 7.

6. Perform the following tests:

- a. Replace textured or rough paper with plain paper.
- b. Print the document.

Is the print light?

- **Yes:**  
Go to the next step.
- **No:**  
The problem is solved.

7. Perform the following tests:

- a. Load paper from a fresh package.

**Note:** Paper absorbs moisture due to high humidity. Store paper in its original wrapper until you are ready to use it.

- b. Print the document.

Is the print light?

- **Yes:**  
Go to the next step.
  - **No:**  
The problem is solved.
8. Perform the following tests:
- a. Remove the imaging kit.

### **Warning—Potential Damage**

Do not expose the imaging kit to direct light for more than 10 minutes. Extended exposure to light may cause print quality problems.

### **Warning—Potential Damage**

Do not touch the photoconductor drum under the imaging kit. Doing so may affect the quality of future print jobs.

- b. Insert the imaging kit.
- c. Print the document.

Is the print too light?

- **Yes:**  
Contact [customer support](#).
- **No:**  
The problem is solved.

## Missing colors



**Note:** Before solving the problem, print the Print Quality Test Pages. From the home screen, touch **Settings > Troubleshooting > Print Quality Test Pages**.

1. Perform the following tests:
- a. Remove the imaging kit.



### **Warning—Potential Damage**

Do not expose the imaging kit to direct light for more than 10 minutes. Extended exposure to light may cause print quality problems.

### **Warning—Potential Damage**

Do not touch the photoconductor drum under the imaging kit. Doing so may affect the quality of future print jobs.

- b. Insert the imaging kit.
- c. Print the document.

Are some colors missing on print?

- **Yes:**  
Contact [customer support](#).
- **No:**  
The problem is solved.

## Mottled print and dots



**Note:** Before solving the problem, print the Print Quality Test Pages. From the home screen, touch **Settings > Troubleshooting > Print Quality Test Pages**.

1. Check the printer for leaked toner contamination.

Is the printer free of leaked toner?

- **Yes:**  
Go to the next step.
- **No:**  
Contact [customer support](#).

2. Perform the following tests:

- a. From the home screen, touch **Settings > Paper > Tray Configuration > Paper Size/Type**.

- b. Check if the paper size and paper type settings match the paper loaded.

**Note:** Make sure that the paper does not have texture or rough finishes.

Do the settings match?

- **Yes:**  
Go to step 4.
  - **No:**  
Go to the next step.
3. Perform the following tests:
    - a. Depending on your operating system, specify the paper size and paper type from the Printing Preferences or Print dialog.

### Notes

- Make sure that the settings match the paper loaded in the tray.
- You can also change the settings on the printer control panel. From the home screen, touch **Settings > Paper > Tray Configuration > Paper Size/Type**.

- b. Print the document.

Is the print mottled?

- **Yes:**  
Go to the next step.
  - **No:**  
The problem is solved.
4. Perform the following tests:
    - a. Load paper from a fresh package.

**Note:** Paper absorbs moisture due to high humidity. Store paper in its original wrapper until you are ready to use it.

- b. Print the document.

Is the print mottled?

- **Yes:**  
Go to the next step.
  - **No:**  
The problem is solved.
5. Perform the following tests:
    - a. Remove the imaging kit.

### **Warning—Potential Damage**

Do not expose the imaging kit to direct light for more than 10 minutes. Extended exposure to light may cause print quality problems.

### **Warning—Potential Damage**

Do not touch the photoconductor drum under the imaging kit. Doing so may affect the quality of future print jobs.

- b. Insert the imaging kit.
- c. Print the document.

Is the print mottled?

- **Yes:**  
Contact [customer support](#).
- **No:**  
The problem is solved.

## Paper curl



**Note:** Before solving the problem, print the Print Quality Test Pages. From the home screen, touch **Settings > Troubleshooting > Print Quality Test Pages**.

1. Perform the following tests:
  - a. Adjust the guides in the tray to the correct position for the paper loaded.
  - b. Print the document.

Is the paper curled?

- **Yes:**  
Go to the next step.
- **No:**  
The problem is solved.

2. Perform the following tests:

- a. Depending on your operating system, specify the paper type from the Printing Preferences or Print dialog.

### Notes

- Make sure that the setting matches the paper loaded.
- You can also change the setting on the printer control panel. From the home screen, touch **Settings > Paper > Tray Configuration > Paper Size/Type**.

- b. Print the document.

Is the paper curled?

- **Yes:**  
Go to the next step.
- **No:**  
The problem is solved.

3. Perform the following tests:

- a. Remove paper, flip it over, and then reload paper.
- b. Print the document.

Is the paper curled?

- **Yes:**  
Go to the next step.
- **No:**  
The problem is solved.

4. Perform the following tests:

- a. Load paper from a fresh package.

**Note:** Paper absorbs moisture due to high humidity. Store paper in its original wrapper until you are ready to use it.

- b. Print the document.

Is the paper curled?

- **Yes:**  
Contact [customer support](#).
- **No:**  
The problem is solved.

### Print crooked or skewed



**Note:** Before solving the problem, print the Print Quality Test Pages. From the home screen, touch **Settings > Troubleshooting > Print Quality Test Pages**.

1. Perform the following tests:

- a. Pull out the tray.
- b. Remove the paper, and then load paper from a fresh package.

**Note:** Paper absorbs moisture due to high humidity. Store paper in its original wrapper until you are ready to use it.

- c. Squeeze and slide the paper guides to the correct position for the size of the paper you are loading.
- d. Insert the tray.
- e. Print the document.

Is the print crooked or skewed?

- **Yes:**  
Go to the next step.
- **No:**  
The problem is solved.

2. Perform the following tests:

- a. Check if you are printing on a supported paper.
- b. Print the document.

Is the print crooked or skewed?

- **Yes:**  
Contact [customer support](#).
- **No:**  
The problem is solved.

## Solid color or black images



**Note:** Before solving the problem, print the Print Quality Test Pages. From the home screen, touch **Settings > Troubleshooting > Print Quality Test Pages**.

1. Perform the following tests:
  - a. Remove the imaging kit.

**Warning—Potential Damage**

Do not expose the imaging kit to direct light for more than 10 minutes. Extended exposure to light may cause print quality problems.

**Warning—Potential Damage**

Do not touch the photoconductor drum under the imaging kit. Doing so may affect the quality of future print jobs.

- b. Insert the imaging kit.
  - c. Print the document.

Is the printer printing solid color or black images?

- **Yes:**  
Contact [customer support](#).
- **No:**  
The problem is solved.

## Text or images cut off



**Note:** Before solving the problem, print the Print Quality Test Pages. From the home screen, touch **Settings > Troubleshooting > Print Quality Test Pages**.

1. Perform the following tests:
  - a. Adjust the paper guides in the tray to the correct position for the paper loaded.
  - b. Print the document.

Is the text or image clipped?

- **Yes:**  
Go to the next step.
- **No:**  
The problem is solved.

2. Perform the following tests:
  - a. Depending on your operating system, specify the paper size from the Printing Preferences or Print dialog.

### Notes

- Make sure that the setting matches the paper loaded in the tray.
- You can also change the setting on the printer control panel. From the home screen, touch **Settings > Paper > Tray Configuration > Paper Size/Type**.

- b. Print the document.

Is the text or image clipped?

- **Yes:**  
Go to the next step.
- **No:**  
The problem is solved.

3. Perform the following tests:
  - a. Remove the imaging kit.

### **Warning—Potential Damage**

Do not expose the imaging kit to direct light for more than 10 minutes. Extended exposure to light may cause print quality problems.

### **Warning—Potential Damage**

Do not touch the photoconductor drum under the imaging kit. Doing so may affect the quality of future print jobs.

- b. Insert the imaging kit.
- c. Print the document.

Is the text or image clipped?

- **Yes:**  
Contact [customer support](#).
- **No:**  
The problem is solved.

## Toner easily rubs off



**Note:** Before solving the problem, print the Print Quality Test Pages. From the home screen, touch **Settings > Troubleshooting > Print Quality Test Pages**.

1. Perform the following tests:
  - a. Depending on your operating system, specify the paper type from the Printing Preferences or Print dialog.



### Notes

- Make sure that the setting matches the paper loaded.
- You can also change the setting on the printer control panel. From the home screen, touch **Settings** > **Paper** > **Tray Configuration** > **Paper Size/Type** .

b. Print the document.

Does the toner rub off?

- **Yes:**  
Contact [customer support](#).
- **No:**  
The problem is solved.

## Uneven print density



**Note:** Before solving the problem, print the Print Quality Test Pages. From the home screen, touch **Settings** > **Troubleshooting** > **Print Quality Test Pages**.

1. Perform the following tests:
  - a. Remove the imaging kit.

### Warning—Potential Damage

Do not expose the imaging kit to direct light for more than 10 minutes. Extended exposure to light may cause print quality problems.

### Warning—Potential Damage

Do not touch the photoconductor drum under the imaging kit. Doing so may affect the quality of future print jobs.

- b. Insert the imaging kit.
- c. Print the document.

Is the print density uneven?

- **Yes:**  
Contact [customer support](#).
- **No:**  
The problem is solved.

## Horizontal dark lines



### Notes

- Before solving the problem, print the Print Quality Test Pages. From the home screen, touch **Settings > Troubleshooting > Print Quality Test Pages**.
- If horizontal dark lines keep appearing on the prints, then see the **Repeating defects** topic.

1. Perform the following tests:

- a. Depending on your operating system, specify the paper type from the Printing Preferences or Print dialog.

### Notes

- Make sure that the setting matches the paper loaded.
- You can also change the setting on the printer control panel. From the home screen, touch **Settings > Paper > Tray Configuration > Paper Size/Type**.

- b. Print the document.

Do horizontal dark lines appear on prints?

- **Yes:**  
Go to the next step.
- **No:**  
The problem is solved.

2. Perform the following tests:
  - a. Load paper from a fresh package.

**Note:** Paper absorbs moisture due to high humidity. Store paper in its original wrapper until you use it.

- b. Print the document.

Do horizontal dark lines appear on prints?

- **Yes:**  
Go to the next step.
  - **No:**  
The problem is solved.
3. Perform the following tests:
    - a. Remove the imaging kit.

**Warning—Potential Damage**

Do not expose the imaging kit to direct light for more than 10 minutes. Extended exposure to light may cause print quality problems.

**Warning—Potential Damage**

Do not touch the photoconductor drum under the imaging kit. Doing so may affect the quality of future print jobs.

- b. Insert the imaging kit.
  - c. Print the document.

Do horizontal dark lines appear on prints?

- **Yes:**  
Contact [customer support](#).
- **No:**  
The problem is solved.

## Vertical dark lines



**Note:** Before solving the problem, print the Print Quality Test Pages. From the home screen, touch **Settings > Troubleshooting > Print Quality Test Pages**.

1. Perform the following tests:
  - a. Depending on your operating system, specify the paper type from the Printing Preferences or Print dialog.

### Notes

- Make sure that the setting matches the paper loaded in the tray.
- You can also change the setting on the printer control panel. From the home screen, touch **Settings > Paper > Tray Configuration > Paper Size/Type**.

- b. Print the document.

Do vertical dark lines appear on prints?

- **Yes:**  
Go to the next step.
- **No:**  
The problem is solved.

2. Perform the following tests:
  - a. Load paper from a fresh package.

**Note:** Paper absorbs moisture due to high humidity. Store paper in its original wrapper until you use it.

- b. Print the document.

Do vertical dark lines appear on prints?

- **Yes:**  
Go to the next step.
- **No:**

The problem is solved.

3. Perform the following tests:
  - a. Remove the imaging kit.

### **Warning—Potential Damage**

Do not expose the imaging kit to direct light for more than 10 minutes. Extended exposure to light may cause print quality problems.

### **Warning—Potential Damage**

Do not touch the photoconductor drum under the imaging kit. Doing so may affect the quality of future print jobs.

- b. Insert the imaging kit.
  - c. Print the document.

Do vertical dark lines appear on prints?

- **Yes:**  
Contact [customer support](#).
- **No:**  
The problem is solved.

## Horizontal white lines



### Notes

- Before solving the problem, print the Print Quality Test Pages. From the home screen, touch **Settings > Troubleshooting > Print Quality Test Pages**.
- If horizontal white lines keep appearing on the prints, then see the **Repeating defects** topic.

1. Perform the following tests:

- a. Depending on your operating system, specify the paper type from the Printing Preferences or Print dialog.

### Notes

- Make sure that the setting matches the paper loaded in the tray.
- You can also change the setting on the printer control panel. From the home screen, touch **Settings > Paper > Tray Configuration > Paper Size/Type**.

- b. Print the document.

Do horizontal white lines appear on prints?

- **Yes:**  
Go to the next step.
  - **No:**  
The problem is solved.
2. Perform the following tests:
    - a. Load the specified paper source with the recommended paper type.
    - b. Print the document.

Do horizontal white lines appear on prints?

- **Yes:**  
Go to the next step.
  - **No:**  
The problem is solved.
3. Perform the following tests:
    - a. Remove the imaging kit.

### Warning—Potential Damage

Do not expose the imaging kit to direct light for more than 10 minutes. Extended exposure to light may cause print quality problems.

### Warning—Potential Damage

Do not touch the photoconductor drum under the imaging kit. Doing so may affect the quality of future print jobs.

- b. Insert the imaging kit.
- c. Print the document.

Do horizontal white lines appear on prints?

- **Yes:**  
Contact [customer support](#).
- **No:**  
The problem is solved.

## Vertical white lines



**Note:** Before solving the problem, print the Print Quality Test Pages. From the home screen, touch **Settings > Troubleshooting > Print Quality Test Pages**.

1. Perform the following tests:
  - a. Depending on your operating system, specify the paper type from the Printing Preferences or Print dialog.

### Notes

- Make sure that the setting matches the paper loaded in the tray.
- You can also change the setting on the printer control panel. From the home screen, touch **Settings > Paper > Tray Configuration > Paper Size/Type**.

- b. Print the document.

Do vertical white lines appear on prints?

- **Yes:**  
Go to the next step.
- **No:**  
The problem is solved.

2. Perform the following tests:
  - a. Load the specified paper source with the recommended paper type.
  - b. Print the document.

Do vertical white lines appear on prints?

- **Yes:**  
Go to the next step.
- **No:**  
The problem is solved.

3. Perform the following tests:
  - a. Remove the imaging kit.

### Warning—Potential Damage

Do not expose the imaging kit to direct light for more than 10 minutes. Extended exposure to light may cause print quality problems.

### Warning—Potential Damage

Do not touch the photoconductor drum under the imaging kit. Doing so may affect the quality of future print jobs.

- b. Insert the imaging kit.
- c. Print the document.

Do vertical white lines appear on prints?

- **Yes:**  
Contact [customer support](#).
- **No:**  
The problem is solved.

## Repeating defects



**Note:** Before solving the problem, print the quality sample pages to determine the cause of the repeating defects. From the home screen, touch **Settings > Troubleshooting > Print Quality Test Pages**.

1. Perform the following tests:
  - a. Using the Maintenance Defect Ruler, measure the distance between the repeating defects on the affected color page.
  - b. If the measurement matches the values for the imaging kit, then replace the imaging kit. If the measurement matches the values for the transfer module or fuser, then contact customer support or your service representative.

### Imaging kit

- 94.5 mm (3.72 in.)



- 29.9 mm (1.18 in.)
- 23.2 mm (0.91 in.)

### Transfer module

- 37.7 mm (1.48 in.)
- 78.5 mm (3.09 in.)
- 55 mm (2.17 in.)
- 28.3 mm (1.11 in.)

### Fuser

- 79.8 mm (3.14 in.)
- 94.3 mm (3.71 in.)

c. Print the Print Quality Test Pages.

Do the defects still appear?

- **Yes:**  
Take note of the distance, and then contact [customer support](#) or your service representative.
- **No:**  
The problem is solved.

## Print jobs do not print

### Try one or more of the following:

- From the document that you are trying to print, open the Printing Preferences or Print dialog, and then check if the correct printer is selected.
- Check if the printer is on, and then resolve any error messages that appear on the display.
- Check if the ports are working and if the cables are securely connected to the computer and the printer. For more information, see the setup documentation that came with the printer.
- Turn off the printer, wait for about 10 seconds, and then turn on the printer.
- Remove, and then reinstall the print driver.

If the problem persists, then contact [customer support](#).

## Confidential and other held documents do not print

### Try one or more of the following:

- From the control panel, check if the documents appear in the **Held Jobs** list.

**Note:** If the documents are not listed, then print the documents using the Print and Hold options.

- Resolve possible formatting errors or invalid data in the print job.
  - Delete the print job, and then send it again.

- For PDF files, generate a new file, and then print the document.
- If you are printing from the Internet, then the printer may be reading the multiple job titles as duplicates.
  - For Windows users, make sure to select **Keep duplicate documents** in the Printing Preferences or Print dialog.
  - For Macintosh users, name each job differently.
- Delete some held jobs to free up printer memory.
- Install more printer memory.

If the problem persists, then contact [customer support](#).

## Job prints from the wrong tray or on the wrong paper

Try one or more of the following:

- Make sure that you are printing on the correct paper.
- Depending on your operating system, specify the paper size and paper type from the Printing Preferences or Print dialog. Make sure that the settings match the paper loaded.

**Note:** You can also change the setting on the printer control panel. Navigate to **Settings > Paper > Tray Configuration > Paper Size/Type**.

- Check if the trays are linked. For more information, see [Linking trays on page 79](#).

If the problem persists, then contact [customer support](#).

## Slow printing

Try one or more of the following:

- Make sure that the printer cable is securely connected to the printer, computer, print server, option, and other network device.
- Make sure that the printer is not in **Quiet Mode**.

From the control panel, navigate to **Settings > Device > Maintenance > Configuration Menu > Device Operations > Quiet Mode**.

- Specify the resolution of the document that you want to print.
  1. Depending on your operating system, access the Printing Preferences or Print dialog.
  2. Set the resolution to **4800 CQ**.

**Note:** You can also change the setting on the control panel. Navigate to **Settings > Print > Quality > Print Resolution**.

- Depending on your operating system, specify the paper type from the Printing Preferences or Print dialog.

### Notes

- You can also change the setting on the control panel. Navigate to **Settings › Paper › Tray Configuration › Paper Size/Type**.
- Heavier paper print more slowly.
- Paper that is narrower than letter, A4, and legal may print more slowly.

- Make sure that the printer settings for texture and weight match the paper being loaded.

From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Paper › Media Configuration › Media Type Setup**.

**Note:** Rough paper texture and heavy paper weight may print more slowly.

- Remove held jobs.
- Make sure that the printer is not overheating.

### Notes

- Allow the printer to cool down after a long print job.
- Observe the recommended ambient temperature for the printer. For more information, see [Selecting a location for the printer on page 28](#).

If the problem persists, then contact [customer support](#).

## | The printer is not responding

Try one or more of the following:

- Check if the power cord is connected to the electrical outlet.



### CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY

To avoid the risk of fire or electrical shock, connect the power cord to an appropriately rated and properly grounded electrical outlet that is near the product and easily accessible.

- Make sure that the electrical outlet is not turned off by a switch or breaker.
- Check if the printer is on.
- Make sure that the printer is not in Sleep or Hibernate Mode.
- Make sure that the cables connecting the printer and computer are connected to the correct ports.
- Turn off the printer, install the hardware options, and then turn on the printer. For more information, see the documentation that came with the option.
- Install the correct print driver.
- Turn off the printer, wait for about 10 seconds, and then turn on the printer.

If the problem persists, then contact [customer support](#).

## Unable to read flash drive

Try one or more of the following:

- Make sure that the printer is not busy processing multiple jobs.
- Make sure that the flash drive is inserted into the front USB port.

**Note:** The flash drive does not work when it is inserted into the rear USB port.

- Make sure that the flash drive is supported. For more information, see [Printing from a flash drive on page 107](#).
- Remove, and then insert the flash drive.

If the problem persists, then contact [customer support](#).

## Enabling the USB port

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Network/Ports** › **USB**.
2. Select **Enable USB Port**.

## Indicator light is alternating between blue and blinking red

A communication issue has occurred between the controller board and the control panel card.

1. Turn off the printer.
2. Unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet, and then wait for 10 seconds.
3. Connect the power cord to the electrical outlet.



### **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY**

To avoid the risk of fire or electrical shock, connect the power cord to an appropriately rated and properly grounded electrical outlet that is near the product and easily accessible.

4. Turn on the printer.

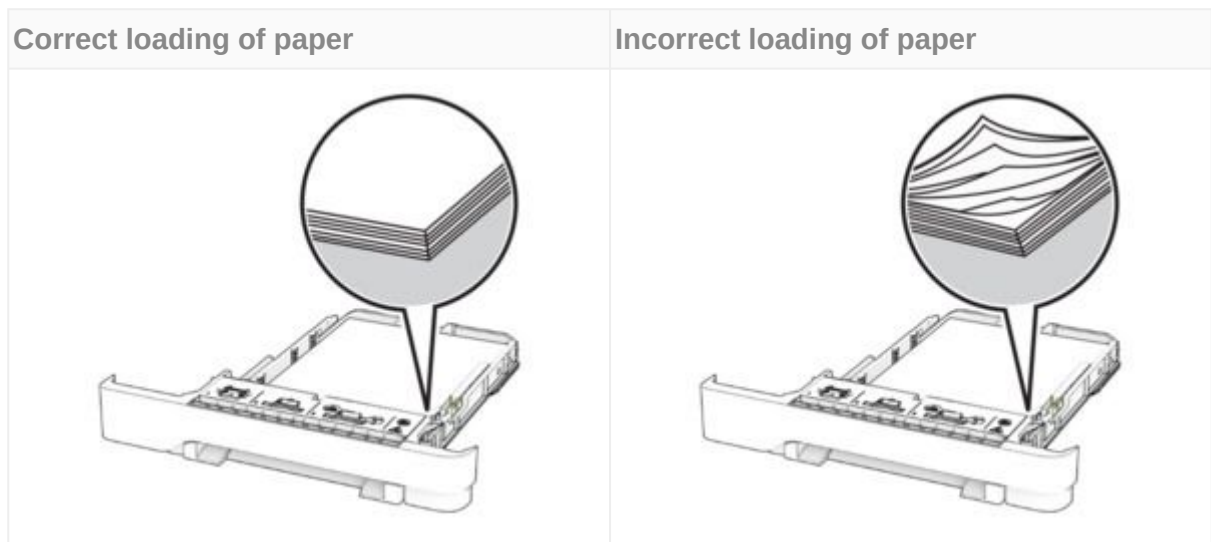
If the problem persists, then contact [customer support](#).

## Clearing jams

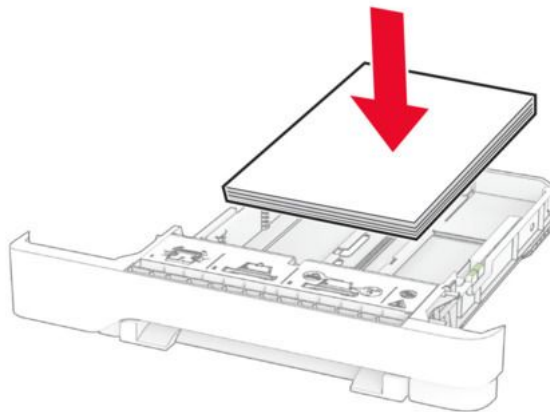
### Avoiding jams

#### Load paper properly

- Make sure that the paper lies flat in the tray.



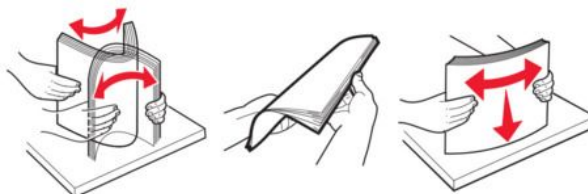
- Do not load or remove a tray while the printer is printing.
- Do not load too much paper. Make sure that the stack height is below the maximum fill line.
- Do not slide paper into the tray. Load paper as shown in the illustration.



- Make sure that the paper guides are positioned correctly and are not pressing tightly against the paper or envelopes.
- Push the tray firmly into the printer after loading paper.

### Use recommended paper

- Use only recommended paper or specialty paper.
- Do not load paper that is wrinkled, creased, damp, bent, or curled.
- Flex, fan, and align the paper edges before loading.

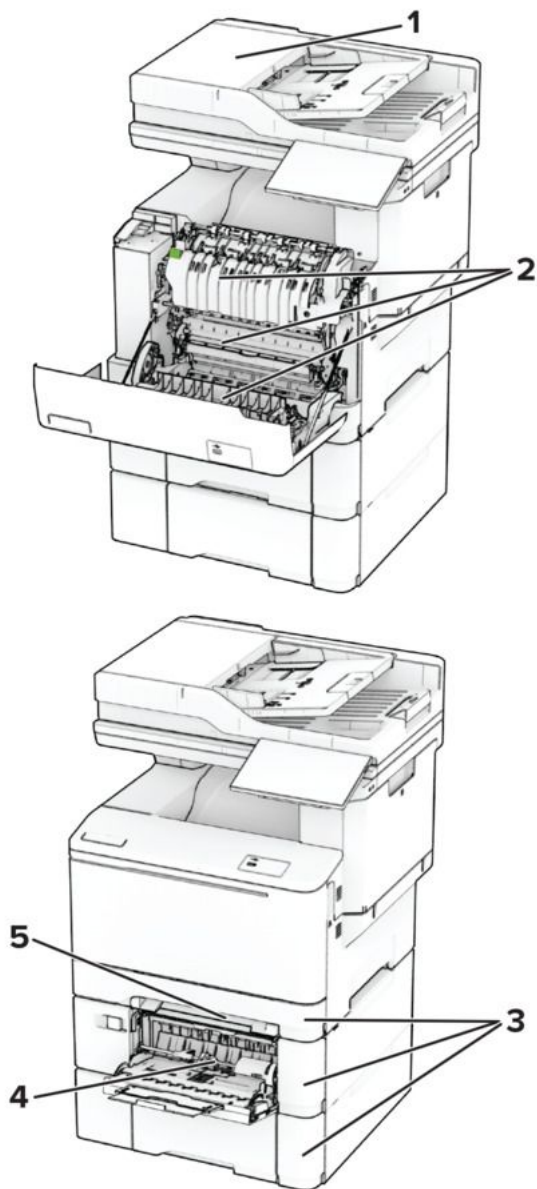


- Do not use paper that has been cut or trimmed by hand.
- Do not mix paper sizes, weights, or types in the same tray.
- Make sure that the paper size and type are set correctly on the computer or printer control panel.
- Store paper according to manufacturer recommendations.

# Identifying jam locations

## Notes

- When Jam Assist is set to On, the printer flushes blank pages or pages with partial prints after a jammed page has been cleared. Check your printed output for blank pages.
- When Jam Recovery is set to On or Auto, the printer reprints jammed pages.



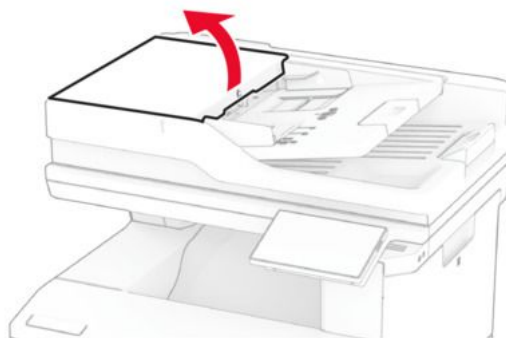
|   | Jam locations             |
|---|---------------------------|
| 1 | Automatic document feeder |
| 2 | Door A                    |
| 3 | Trays                     |

|   | Jam locations       |
|---|---------------------|
| 4 | Multipurpose feeder |
| 5 | Manual feeder       |

## Paper jam in the automatic document feeder

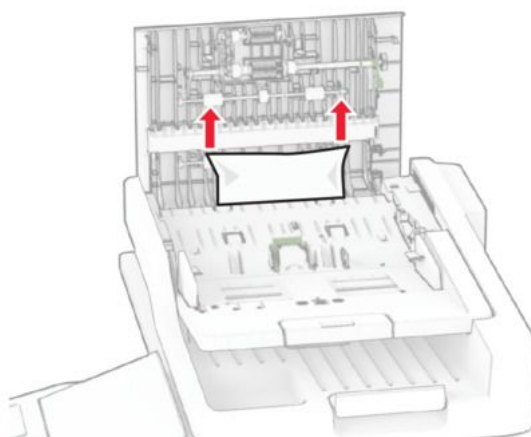
### Paper jam under the ADF top cover

1. Remove all original documents from the ADF tray.
2. Open door C.



3. Remove the jammed paper.

**Note:** Make sure that all paper fragments are removed.

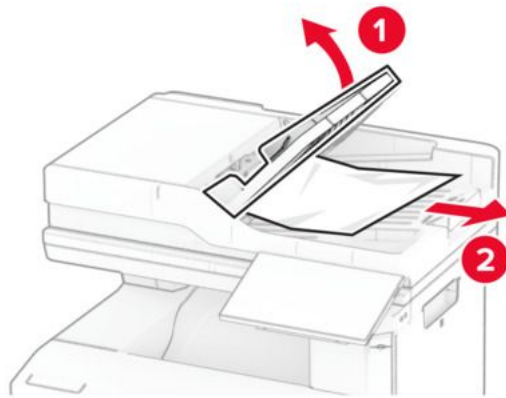


4. Close door C.

### Paper jam under the ADF output bin

1. Remove all original documents from the ADF tray.
2. Lift the ADF tray, and then remove the jammed paper.

**Note:** Make sure that all paper fragments are removed.



3. Place the ADF tray back into place.

## Paper jam in door A

### Paper jam below the fuser

1. Open door A.



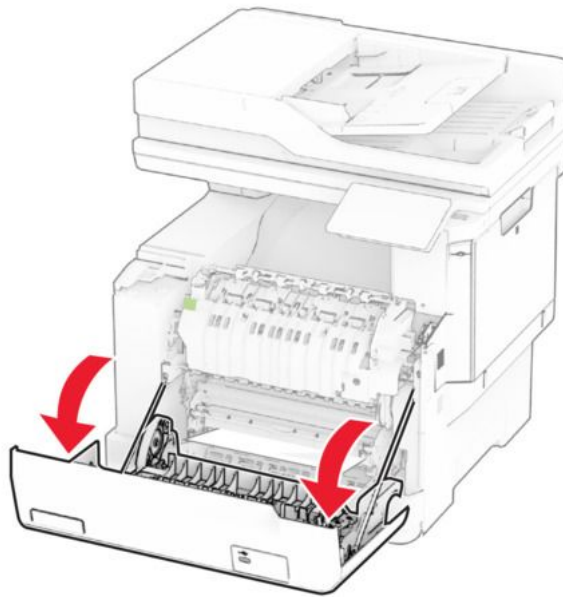
#### **CAUTION—HOT SURFACE**

The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching it.

#### **Warning—Potential Damage**

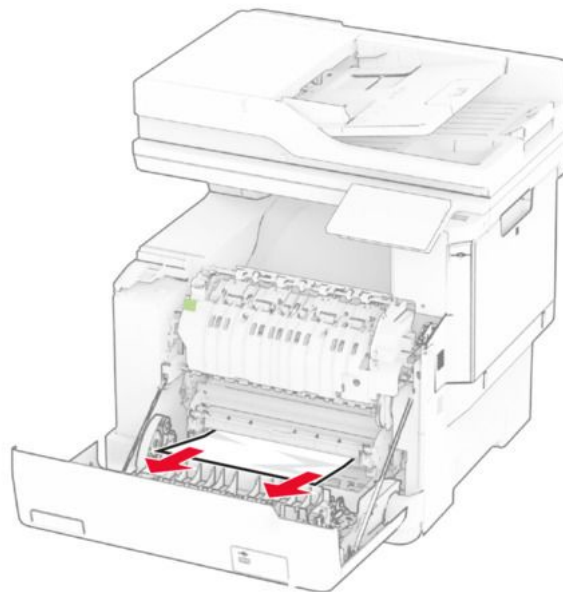
To prevent damage from electrostatic discharge, touch any exposed metal frame of the printer before accessing or touching interior areas of the printer.





2. Remove the jammed paper.

**Note:** Make sure that all paper fragments are removed.



3. Close door A.

### Paper jam in the fuser

1. Open door A.

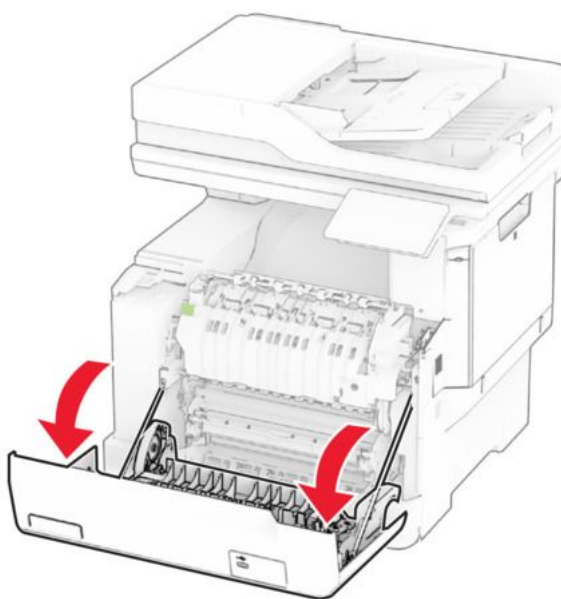


### **CAUTION—HOT SURFACE**

The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching it.

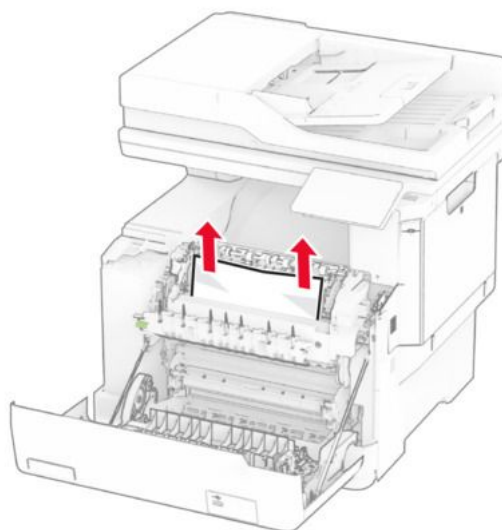
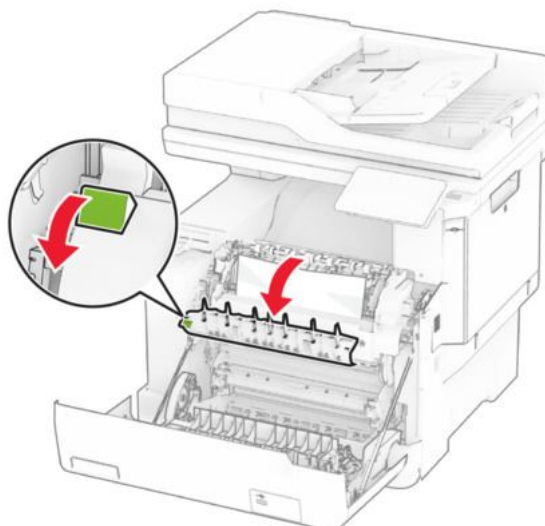
### **Warning—Potential Damage**

To prevent damage from electrostatic discharge, touch any exposed metal frame of the printer before accessing or touching interior areas of the printer.



2. Open the fuser access door, and then remove the jammed paper.

**Note:** Make sure that all paper fragments are removed.



3. Close door A.

### Paper jam in the duplex unit

1. Open door A.

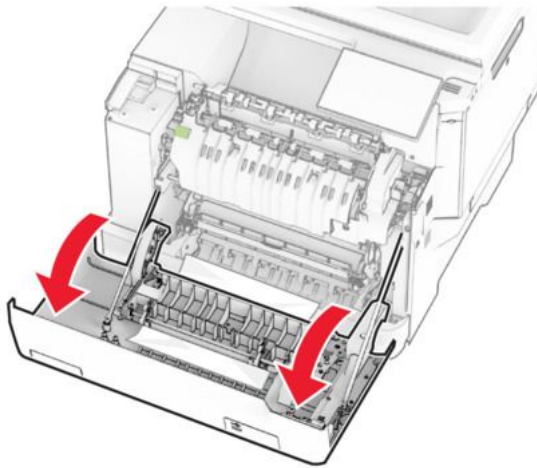


#### **CAUTION—HOT SURFACE**

The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching it.

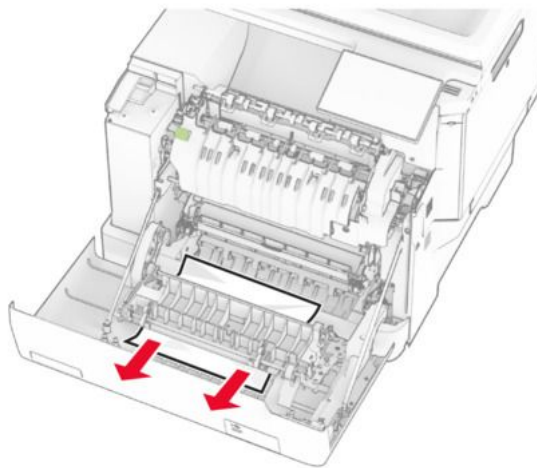
#### **Warning—Potential Damage**

To prevent damage from electrostatic discharge, touch any exposed metal frame of the printer before accessing or touching interior areas of the printer.



2. Remove the jammed paper.

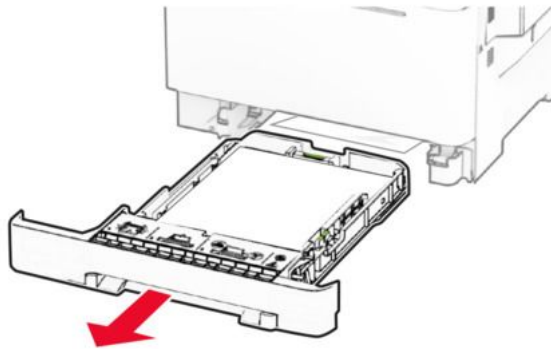
**Note:** Make sure that all paper fragments are removed.



3. Close door A.

## Paper jam in trays

1. Remove the tray.

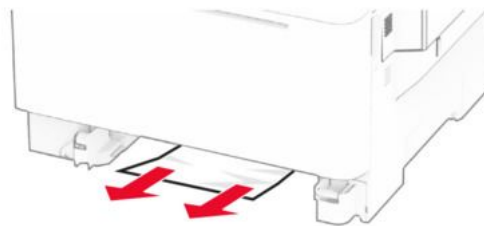


### **Warning—Potential Damage**

A sensor inside the optional tray is easily damaged by static electricity. Touch a metal surface before removing the jammed paper in the tray.

2. Remove the jammed paper.

**Note:** Make sure that all paper fragments are removed.

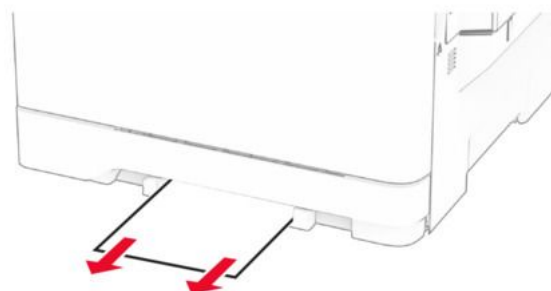


3. Insert the tray.

## Paper jam in the manual feeder

Remove the jammed paper.

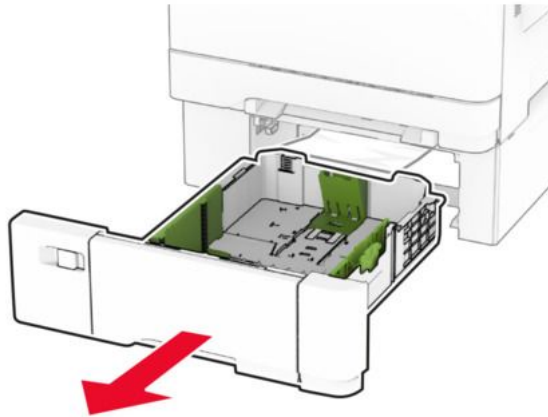
**Note:** Make sure that all paper fragments are removed.



## Paper jam in the multipurpose feeder

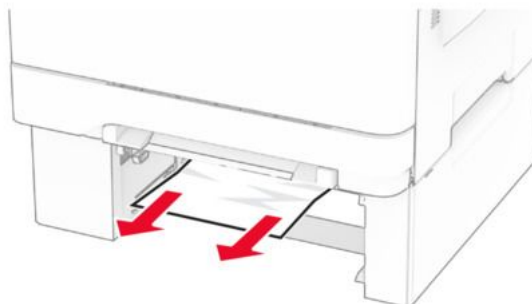
**Note:** The multipurpose feeder is available only if the optional 650-sheet duo tray is installed.

1. Remove paper from the multipurpose feeder, and then close it.
2. Remove the tray.



3. Remove the jammed paper.

**Note:** Make sure that all paper fragments are removed.



4. Insert the tray.
5. Open the multipurpose feeder, and then reload paper.

## Network connection problems

### Cannot open Embedded Web Server

Try one or more of the following:

- Make sure that the printer is on.
- Make sure that the printer and the computer are connected to the same network.

- Make sure that the printer IP address is correct.

**Note:** You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.

- Make sure that you installed a supported browser.
  - Microsoft Edge
  - Safari version 6 or later
  - Google Chrome™ version 32 or later
  - Mozilla Firefox version 24 or later
- Check if the network connection is working.

**Note:** If the connection is not working, then contact your administrator.

- Make sure that the cable connections to the printer and print server are secure. For more information, see the documentation that came with the print server.
- Check if the web proxy servers are disabled.

**Note:** If the servers are disabled, then contact your administrator.

If the problem persists, then contact [customer support](#).

## Cannot connect the printer to the Wi-Fi network

Try one or more of the following:

- From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Network/Ports › Network Overview › Active Adapter**, and then select **Auto**.
- Make sure that the printer is connected to the correct Wi-Fi network. For more information, see [Connecting the printer to a Wi-Fi network on page 98](#).

**Note:** Some routers may share the default Wi-Fi name.

- Make sure that you entered the correct network password.

**Note:** Take note of the spaces, numbers, and capitalization in the password.

- Make sure that the correct wireless security mode is selected. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Network/Ports › Wireless › Wireless Security Mode**.

If the problem persists, then contact [customer support](#).

## Hardware options problems

### Cannot detect internal option

Try one or more of the following:

- Turn off the printer, wait for about 10 seconds, and then turn on the printer.
- Print the **Menu Settings Page**, and then check if the internal option appears in the Installed Features list. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings > Reports > Menu Settings Page**.
- Check if the internal option is installed properly into the controller board.
  1. Turn off the printer, and then unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet.
  2. Make sure that the internal option is installed into the appropriate connector on the controller board.
  3. Connect the power cord to the electrical outlet, and then turn on the printer.



#### CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY

To avoid the risk of fire or electrical shock, connect the power cord to an appropriately rated and properly grounded electrical outlet that is near the product and easily accessible.

- Check if the internal option is available in the print driver.

**Note:** If necessary, manually add the internal option in the print driver to make it available for print jobs. For more information, see [Adding available options in the print driver on page 82](#).

If the problem persists, then contact [customer support](#).

### Defective flash detected

Try one or more of the following:

- Replace the defective flash memory.
- Select **Continue** to ignore the message and continue printing.
- Cancel the current print job.

If the problem persists, then contact [customer support](#).

### Not enough free space in flash memory for resources

Try one or more of the following:

- Select **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.
- Delete fonts, macros, and other data that are stored in the flash memory.



**Note:** Downloaded fonts and macros that are not previously stored in the flash memory are deleted.

- Install a storage drive.

If the problem persists, then contact [customer support](#).

## Red light on the convenience stapler

Try one or more of the following:

- Close the staple access door.
- Remove the loose staples.

**Note:** After removing loose staples, two priming cycles are required before stapling. Insert a stack of paper into the stapler three times. The stapling starts at the third insertion.

- Replace the staple cartridge.

## Issues with supplies

### Replace cartridge, printer region mismatch

To correct this problem, purchase a cartridge with the correct region that matches the printer region, or purchase a worldwide cartridge.

- The first number in the message after 42 indicates the region of the printer.
- The second number in the message after 42 indicates the region of the cartridge.

| Region                                                                             | Region code |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| Worldwide or Undefined region                                                      | 0           |
| North America (United States, Canada),<br>Australia, New Zealand                   | 1           |
| European Union, Iceland, Liechtenstein,<br>Norway, Switzerland, and United Kingdom | 2           |
| Asia Pacific                                                                       | 3           |
| Latin America, Mexico, and Puerto Rico                                             | 4           |
| Rest of Europe, Middle East, Africa                                                | 5           |
| Invalid region                                                                     | 9           |

### Notes

- To find the printer and toner cartridge region codes, print the Print Quality Test Pages. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Troubleshooting** › **Print Quality Test Pages**.

## Refilled regular *[color]* cartridge

The printer has detected a Lexmark Regular cartridge that has been refilled with non-genuine toner by a party other than Lexmark.

Select **OK** to continue.

All printer component life indicators are designed to function with Lexmark supplies and parts and may deliver unpredictable results when using supplies or parts in your Lexmark printer that are remanufactured by parties other than Lexmark.

For more information, see the printer statement of limited warranty.

## Non-Lexmark supply

The printer has detected a non-Lexmark supply or part installed in the printer.

Your Lexmark printer is designed to function best with genuine Lexmark supplies and parts. Use of third-party supplies or parts may affect the performance, reliability, or life of the printer and its imaging components.

All life indicators are designed to function with Lexmark supplies and parts and may deliver unpredictable results if third-party supplies or parts are used. Imaging component usage beyond the intended life may damage your Lexmark printer or associated components.

### Warning—Potential Damage

Use of third-party supplies or parts can affect warranty coverage. Damage caused by the use of third-party supplies or parts may not be covered by the warranty.

To accept any and all of these risks and to proceed with the use of non-genuine supplies or parts in your printer, touch and hold the error message on the display using two fingers for 15 seconds. When a confirmation dialog box appears, touch **Continue**.

If you do not want to accept these risks, then remove the third-party supply or part from your printer and install a genuine Lexmark supply or part. For more information, see [Using genuine Lexmark parts and supplies on page 233](#).

If the printer does not print after clearing the error message, then reset the supply usage counter.

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Device** › **Maintenance** › **Configuration Menu** › **Supply Usage And Counters**.
2. Select the part or supply that you want to reset, and then select **Start**.
3. Read the warning message, and then select **Continue**.
4. Using two fingers, touch the display for 15 seconds to clear the message.

**Note:** If you are unable to reset the supply usage counters, then return the supply item to the place of purchase.

# Paper feed problems

## Envelope seals when printing

Try one or more of the following:

- Use an envelope that has been stored in a dry environment.

**Note:** Printing on envelopes with high moisture content can seal the flaps.

- Make sure that the paper type is set to **Envelope**. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Paper** › **Tray Configuration** › **Paper Size/Type**.

If the problem persists, then contact [customer support](#).

## Collated printing does not work

Try one or more of the following:

- From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Print** › **Layout** › **Collate**, and then select **On [1,2,1,2,1,2]**.
- From the document that you are trying to print, open the Printing Preferences or Print dialog, and then select **Collate**.
- Reduce the number of pages to print.

If the problem persists, then contact [customer support](#).

## Tray linking does not work

Try one or more of the following:

- Make sure that the linked trays contain the same paper size, orientation, and paper type.
- Make sure that the paper guides are positioned correctly.
- Set the paper size and paper type to match the paper loaded in the linked trays. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Paper** › **Tray Configuration** › **Paper Size/Type**.
- Make sure that **Tray Linking** is set to **Automatic**. For more information, see [Linking trays on page 79](#).

If the problem persists, then contact [customer support](#).

## Paper frequently jams

Try one or more of the following:

- Check if the paper is loaded correctly.

### Notes

- Make sure that the paper guides are positioned correctly.
- Make sure that the stack height is below the maximum fill line.
- Make sure to print on the recommended paper size and paper type.

- Set the correct paper size and paper type. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Paper › Tray Configuration › Paper Size/Type**.
- Load paper from a fresh package.

**Note:** Paper absorbs moisture due to high humidity. Store the paper in its original wrapper until you are ready to use it.

If the problem persists, then contact [customer support](#).

## Jammed pages are not reprinted

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Device › Notifications › Jam Content Recovery**.
2. In the **Jam Recovery** menu, select **On** or **Auto**.

If the problem persists, then contact [customer support](#).

## Emailing problems

### Disabling the “SMTP server not set up” error message

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Email › Email Setup**.
2. Set **Disable “SMTP server not set up” error** to **On**.

To prevent the error from happening again, do one or more of the following:

- Update the printer firmware. For more information, see the **Printer firmware instructions** section.
- Configure the email SMTP settings. For more information, see [Configuring the email SMTP settings on page 54](#).

## Cannot send emails

Try one more of the following:

- Make sure that the email SMTP settings are configured correctly. For more information, see [Configuring the email SMTP settings on page 54](#).
- Make sure that the printer is connected to a network and the network is connected to the Internet.

If the problem persists, then contact [customer support](#).

# Faxing problems

## Caller ID is not shown

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Fax › Fax Setup › Fax Receive Settings › Admin Controls**.
2. Set **Enable Caller ID** to **On**.

If the problem persists, then contact [customer support](#).

## Cannot send or receive faxes using analog fax

Try one or more of the following:

- Resolve any error messages that appear on the display.
- Make sure that the cable connections for the telephone, handset, or answering machine are secure.
- Check for a dial tone.
  - Call the fax number to check if it is working properly.
  - If you are using the On Hook Dial feature, then turn up the volume to check if you hear a dial tone.
- Check the telephone wall jack.
  1. Connect the analog telephone directly to the wall jack.
  2. Listen for a dial tone.
  3. If you do not hear a dial tone, then use a different telephone cable.
  4. If you still do not hear a dial tone, then connect the analog telephone to a different wall jack.
  5. If you hear a dial tone, then connect the printer to that wall jack.
- Check if the printer is connected to an analog phone service or to the correct digital connector.
  - If you are using an Integrated Services for Digital Network (ISDN) telephone service, then connect to an analog telephone port of an ISDN terminal adapter. For more information, contact your ISDN provider.
  - If you are using DSL, then connect to a DSL filter or router that supports analog use. For more information, contact your DSL provider.
  - If you are using a private branch exchange (PBX) telephone service, then make sure that you are connecting to an analog connection on the PBX. If none exists, then consider installing an analog telephone line for the fax machine.
- Temporarily disconnect other equipment and disable other telephone services.
  1. Disconnect other equipment (such as answering machines, computers, modems, or telephone line splitters) between the printer and the telephone line.
  2. Disable call waiting and voice mail. For more information, contact your telephone company.
- Scan the original document one page at a time.

If the problem persists, then contact [customer support](#).

## Can receive but not send faxes using analog fax

Try one or more of the following:

- Load an original document into the ADF tray or on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 16](#).
- Set up the shortcut number properly.
  - Check if the shortcut number is set for the telephone number that you want to dial.
  - Dial the telephone number manually.

If the problem persists, then contact [customer support](#).

## Can send but not receive faxes using analog fax

Try one or more of the following:

- Make sure that the paper source is not empty.
- Check the ring count delay settings. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Fax** › **Fax Setup** › **Fax Receive Settings** › **Rings to Answer**.
- If the printer is printing blank pages, then see [Blank or white pages on page 295](#).

If the problem persists, then contact [customer support](#).

## Cannot set up etherFAX

Try one or more of the following:

- Check the printer connectivity.
  1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Reports** › **Network** › **Network Setup Page**.
  2. Check the network status on the printed page.
- Make sure that the printer is connected to a network and the network is connected to the Internet.
- Make sure that etherFAX is set up correctly. For more information, see [Setting up the fax function using etherFAX on page 48](#).

If the problem persists, then go to <https://www.etherfax.net/lexmark>.

## Cannot send or receive faxes using etherFAX

Try one or more of the following:

- Make sure that the printer is connected to a network and the network is connected to the Internet.
- Make sure that etherFAX is set up correctly. For more information, see [Setting up the fax function using etherFAX on page 48](#).
- Split large documents into smaller file sizes.

If the problem persists, then go to <https://www.etherfax.net/lexmark>.

### Poor fax print quality

Try one or more of the following:

- Resolve any print quality defects.
  1. Print the **Test Quality Pages**. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Troubleshooting › Print Quality Test Pages**.
  2. Correct any print quality defects. For more information, see the **Print quality is poor** section.
- If you are using an analog fax, then decrease the incoming fax transmission speed.
  1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Fax › Fax Setup › Fax Receive Settings › Admin Controls**.
  2. In the **Max Speed** menu, select a lower transmission speed.

If the problem persists, then contact [customer support](#).

### Missing information on the fax cover page

1. Turn off the printer, wait for about 10 seconds, and then turn on the printer.
2. Send or retrieve the fax.

If the problem persists, then contact [customer support](#).

### Cannot send the fax cover page from the computer

Try one or more of the following:

- Make sure that the print driver is updated. For more information, go to [www.lexmark.com/downloads](http://www.lexmark.com/downloads).
- Clear the **Always display settings prior to faxing** setting.
  1. From the document that you are trying to fax, open the **Print** dialog.
  2. Select the printer, and then click **Properties**, **Preferences**, **Options**, or **Setup**.
  3. Click **Fax**, and then clear the **Always display settings prior to faxing** setting.

If the problem persists, then contact [customer support](#).

## | Scanning problems

### Cannot scan to a computer

Try one or more of the following:

- Perform a copy job. If the job failed, then turn off the printer, wait for about 10 seconds, and then turn on the printer.
- Check the printer connectivity.
  1. Print the **Network Setup Page**. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Reports › Network**, and then select **Network Setup Page**.

2. Check the first section of the page and confirm if the status is connected.
- Make sure that the printer and the computer are connected to the same network.

If the problem persists, then contact [customer support](#).

## Cannot scan to a network folder

Try one or more of the following:

- Create a network folder shortcut, and then scan a document using the shortcut. For more information, see [Scanning to a network folder on page 121](#).
- Make sure that the network folder path and format are correct. For example, `//server_hostname/foldername/path`, where `server_hostname` is a fully qualified domain (FQDN) or IP address.
- Make sure that you have a write access permission to the network folder.
- Update the network folder shortcut.

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

### Notes

- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

2. Click **Shortcuts**, and then select a shortcut.

**Note:** If you have multiple shortcut types, then select **Network Folder**.

3. In the **Share Path** field, type the network folder path. For example, `//server_hostname/foldername/path`.

**Note:** Always use forward slashes when typing the share path.

4. From the **Authentication** menu, select your authentication method.

**Note:** If **Authentication** is set to “**Use assigned username and password**,” then in the Username and Password fields, type your credentials.

5. Click **Save**.
- Make sure that the printer and the network folder are connected to the same network.

If the problem persists, then contact [customer support](#).



## Partial copies of document or photo

Try one or more of the following:

- Make sure that the document or photo is loaded facedown on the upper left corner of the scanner glass.
- Match the paper size setting and the paper loaded in the tray.

If the problem persists, then contact [customer support](#).

## Poor copy quality

Try one or more of the following:

- Clean the scanner glass and the ADF glass with a damp, soft, lint-free cloth.

**Note:** If your printer has a second ADF glass inside the ADF, then also clean that glass. For more information, see [Cleaning the scanner on page 274](#).

- Make sure that the document or photo is loaded facedown on the upper left corner of the scanner glass.
- Check the quality of the original document or photo and adjust the scan quality settings accordingly.

If the problem persists, then contact [customer support](#).

## Vertical dark streaks on output when scanning from the ADF



Clean the scanner glass and the ADF glass with a damp, soft, lint-free cloth.

**Note:** If your printer has a second ADF glass inside the ADF, then also clean that glass. For more information, see [Cleaning the scanner on page 274](#).

Do vertical streaks appear on scanned documents?

- **Yes:**

Contact [customer support](#).

- **No:**

The problem is solved.

1.

## Jagged image or text when scanning from the ADF

1. Load 50 sheets of clean, plain paper into the ADF.

**Note:** The plain paper helps clean or remove dust and other coatings from the ADF feed rollers.

2. From the control panel, swipe right to the control center, and then select .
3. Load an original document into the ADF tray or on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 16](#).
4. Scan the document.

If the problem persists, then contact [customer support](#).

## Scan job was not successful

Try one or more of the following:

- Make sure that the Ethernet or USB cable is securely connected to the computer and the printer.
- Check the file that you want to scan, and make sure that:
  - The file name is not already used in the destination folder.
  - The document or photo that you want to scan is not open in another application.
- Make sure that the **Append time stamp** or the **Overwrite existing file** check box is selected in the destination configuration settings.

If the problem persists, then contact [customer support](#).

## Scanner does not close

1. Remove obstructions that keep the scanner cover open.
2. Close the scanner.

If the problem persists, then contact [customer support](#).

## Scanning takes too long or freezes the computer

1. Close all applications that are interfering with the scan.
2. Scan the document again.

If the problem persists, then contact [customer support](#).

## Scanner does not respond

Try one or more of the following:

- Check if the power cord is connected properly to the printer and the electrical outlet.



### CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY

To avoid the risk of fire or electrical shock, connect the power cord to an appropriately rated and properly grounded electrical outlet that is near the product and easily accessible.

- Check if the printer is turned on, and then resolve any error messages that appear on the display.
- Turn off the printer, wait for about 10 seconds, and then turn on the printer.

If the problem persists, then contact [customer support](#).

## Adjusting scanner registration

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Device › Maintenance › Configuration Menu › Scanner Configuration › Scanner Manual Registration**.
2. In the **Print Quick Test** menu, select **Start**.
3. Place the test page on the scanner glass, and then select **Flatbed Registration**.
4. In the **Copy Quick Test** menu, select **Start**.
5. Compare the test page with the original document.

**Note:** If the margins of the test page are different from the original document, then adjust the **Left Margin** and **Top Margin** settings.

6. Repeat [step 4](#) and [step 5](#) until the margins of the **Copy Quick Test** page closely match the original document.

## Adjusting ADF registration

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Device › Maintenance › Configuration Menu › Scanner Configuration › Scanner Manual Registration**.
2. In the **Print Quick Test** menu, select **Start**.
3. Place the test page on the ADF tray.
4. Select **Front ADF Registration** or **Rear ADF Registration**.

### Notes

- To align **Front ADF Registration**, place the test page faceup, short edge first into the ADF.
- To align **Rear ADF Registration**, place the test page facedown, short edge first into the ADF.

5. In the **Copy Quick Test** menu, select **Start**.
6. Compare the test page with the original document.

**Note:** If the margins of the test page are different from the original document, then adjust the **Horizontal Adjust** and **Top Margin** settings.

7. Repeat [step 5](#) and [step 6](#) until the margins of the **Copy Quick Test** page closely match the original document.

## | Color quality problems

### Modifying the colors in printed output

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Print** › **Quality** › **Advanced Imaging** › **Color Correction**.
2. In the **Color Correction** menu, select **Manual**.
3. In the **Color Correction Content** menu, select the appropriate color conversion setting.

| Object type                                                   | Color conversion tables                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>RGB Image</b><br><b>RGB Text</b><br><b>RGB Graphics</b>    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◦ <b>Vivid</b>—Produces brighter, more saturated colors and can be applied to all incoming color formats.</li> <li>◦ <b>sRGB Display</b>—Produces an output that approximates the colors shown on a computer monitor. Black toner usage is optimized for printing photographs.</li> <li>◦ <b>Display-True Black</b>—Produces an output that approximates the colors shown on a computer monitor. This setting uses only black toner to create all levels of neutral gray.</li> <li>◦ <b>sRGB Vivid</b>—Provides an increased color saturation for the sRGB Display color correction. Black toner usage is optimized for printing business graphics.</li> <li>◦ <b>Off</b></li> </ul> |
| <b>CMYK Image</b><br><b>CMYK Text</b><br><b>CMYK Graphics</b> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>◦ <b>US CMYK</b>—Applies color correction to approximate the Specifications for Web Offset Publishing (SWOP) color output.</li> <li>◦ <b>Euro CMYK</b>—Applies color correction to approximate Euroscale color output.</li> <li>◦ <b>Vivid CMYK</b>—Increases the color saturation of the US CMYK color correction setting.</li> <li>◦ <b>Off</b></li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |

## FAQ about color printing

### What is RGB color?

RGB color is a method of describing colors by indicating the amount of red, green, or blue used to produce a certain color. Red, green, and blue light can be added in various amounts to produce a large range of colors observed in nature. Computer screens, scanners, and digital cameras use this method to display colors.

### What is CMYK color?

CMYK color is a method of describing colors by indicating the amount of cyan, magenta, yellow, and black used to reproduce a particular color. Cyan, magenta, yellow, and black inks or toners can be printed in various amounts to produce a large range of colors

observed in nature. Printing presses, inkjet printers, and color laser printers create colors in this manner.

### How is color specified in a document to be printed?

Software programs are used to specify and modify the document color using RGB or CMYK color combinations. For more information, see the software program Help topics.

### How does the printer know what color to print?

When printing a document, information describing the type and color of each object is sent to the printer and is passed through color conversion tables. Color is translated into the appropriate amounts of cyan, magenta, yellow, and black toner used to produce the color you want. The object information determines the application of color conversion tables. For example, it is possible to apply one type of color conversion table to text while applying a different color conversion table to photographic images.

### What is manual color correction?

When manual color correction is enabled, the printer employs user-selected color conversion tables to process objects. Manual color correction settings are specific to the type of object being printed (text, graphics, or images). It is also specific to how the color of the object is specified in the software program (RGB or CMYK combinations). To apply a different color conversion table manually, see [Modifying the colors in printed output on page 348](#).

If the software program does not specify colors with RGB or CMYK combinations, then manual color correction is not useful. It is also not effective if the software program or the computer operating system controls the adjustment of colors. In most situations, setting the Color Correction to Auto generates preferred colors for the documents.

### How can I match a particular color (such as a corporate logo)?

From the printer Quality menu, nine types of Color Samples sets are available. These sets are also available from the Color Samples page of the Embedded Web Server. Selecting any sample set generates multiple-page prints consisting of hundreds of colored boxes. Each box contains a CMYK or RGB combination, depending on the table selected. The observed color of each box is obtained by passing the CMYK or RGB combination labeled on the box through the selected color conversion table.

By examining Color Samples sets, you can identify the box with color closest to the color being matched. The color combination labeled on the box can then be used for modifying the color of the object in a software program. For more information, see the software program Help topics. Manual color correction may be necessary to use the selected color conversion table for the particular object.

Selecting which Color Samples set to use for a particular color-matching problem depends on:

- The Color Correction setting being used (Auto, Off, or Manual)
- The type of object being printed (text, graphics, or images)

- How the color of the object is specified in the software program (RGB or CMYK combinations)

If the software program does not specify colors with RGB or CMYK combinations, then the Color Samples pages are not useful. Additionally, some software programs adjust the RGB or CMYK combinations specified in the program through color management. In these situations, the printed color may not be an exact match of the Color Samples pages.

## The print appears tinted

Try one or more of the following:

- From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Print › Quality › Advanced Imaging**, and then select **Color Adjust**.
- From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Print › Quality › Advanced Imaging**, select **Color Balance**, and then adjust the settings.

If the problem persists, then contact [customer support](#).

## Contacting customer support

Before contacting customer support, make sure to have the following information:

- Printer problem
- Error message
- Printer model type and serial number

Go to <https://support.lexmark.com> to receive email or chat support, or browse through the library of manuals, support documentation, drivers, and other downloads. Technical support via telephone is also available. In the U.S. or Canada, call 1-800-539-6275. For other countries or regions, go to [www.lexmark.com/supportdirectory](http://www.lexmark.com/supportdirectory).

## Recycle and dispose

### | Recycling Lexmark products

To return Lexmark products for recycling:

1. Go to [www.lexmark.com/recycle](http://www.lexmark.com/recycle).
2. Select your country or region.
3. Select a recycling program.
4. Follow the instructions on the screen.

### | Recycling Lexmark packaging

Lexmark continually strives to minimize packaging. Less packaging helps to ensure that Lexmark printers are transported in the most efficient and environmentally sensitive manner and that there is less packaging to dispose of. These efficiencies result in fewer greenhouse emissions, energy savings, and natural resource savings. Lexmark also offers recycling of packaging components in some countries or regions. For more information, go to [www.lexmark.com/recycle](http://www.lexmark.com/recycle), and then choose your country or region. Information on available packaging recycling programs is included with the information on product recycling.

Lexmark cartons are 100% recyclable where corrugated recycling facilities exist. Facilities may not exist in your area.

The foam used in Lexmark packaging is recyclable where foam recycling facilities exist. Facilities may not exist in your area.

When you return a cartridge to Lexmark, you can reuse the box that the cartridge came in. Lexmark recycles the box.



# Notices

## Product information

Product name:

Lexmark CX532adwe, Lexmark CX635adwe, Lexmark XC2335, Lexmark XC2342 MFPs  
Machine type:

7531

Models:

276, 286, 289, 676, 686, 689

## Edition and legal notices

### Edition notices

September 2025

**The following paragraph does not apply to any country where such provisions are inconsistent with local law:** LEXMARK INTERNATIONAL, INC., PROVIDES THIS PUBLICATION "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some states do not allow disclaimer of express or implied warranties in certain transactions; therefore, this statement may not apply to you.

This publication could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically made to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in later editions. Improvements or changes in the products or the programs described may be made at any time.

References in this publication to products, programs, or services do not imply that the manufacturer intends to make these available in all countries in which it operates. Any reference to a product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only that product, program, or service may be used. Any functionally equivalent product, program, or service that does not infringe any existing intellectual property right may be used instead. Evaluation and verification of operation in conjunction with other products, programs, or services, except those expressly designated by the manufacturer, are the user's responsibility.

For Lexmark technical support, go to <https://support.lexmark.com>.

For information on Lexmark's privacy policy governing the use of this product, go to [www.lexmark.com/privacy](http://www.lexmark.com/privacy).

For information on supplies and downloads, go to [www.lexmark.com](http://www.lexmark.com).

© 2023 Lexmark International, Inc.

**All rights reserved.**

## GOVERNMENT END USERS

The Software Program and any related documentation are "Commercial Items," as that term is defined in 48 C.F.R. 2.101, "Computer Software" and "Commercial Computer Software Documentation," as such terms are used in 48 C.F.R. 12.212 or 48 C.F.R. 227.7202, as applicable. Consistent with 48 C.F.R. 12.212 or 48 C.F.R. 227.7202-1

through 227.7207-4, as applicable, the Commercial Computer Software and Commercial Software Documentation are licensed to the U.S. Government end users (a) only as Commercial Items and (b) with only those rights as are granted to all other end users pursuant to the terms and conditions herein.

## Trademarks

Lexmark, the Lexmark logo, and MarkNet are trademarks or registered trademarks of Lexmark International, Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.

Gmail, Android, Google Play, and Google Chrome are trademarks of Google LLC.

Macintosh, macOS, Safari, and AirPrint are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries. iCloud is a service mark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries. Use of the Works with Apple badge means that an accessory has been designed to work specifically with the technology identified in the badge and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards.

Microsoft, Microsoft 365, Microsoft Edge, Outlook, and Windows are trademarks of the Microsoft group of companies.

The Mopria™ word mark is a registered and/or unregistered trademark of Mopria Alliance, Inc. in the United States and other countries. Unauthorized use is strictly prohibited.

PCL® is a registered trademark of the Hewlett-Packard Company. PCL is Hewlett-Packard Company's designation of a set of printer commands (language) and functions included in its printer products. This printer is intended to be compatible with the PCL language. This means the printer recognizes PCL commands used in various application programs, and that the printer emulates the functions corresponding to the commands.

PostScript is a registered trademark of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.

Wi-Fi®, Wi-Fi Direct®, and Wi-Fi Protected Access® are registered trademarks of Wi-Fi Alliance®. WPA™, WPA2™, and Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ are trademarks of Wi-Fi Alliance®.

All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

## Licensing notices

All licensing notices associated with this product can be viewed from the CD:\NOTICES directory of the installation software CD.

## STATEMENT OF LIMITED WARRANTY FOR LEXMARK LASER PRINTERS, LEXMARK LED PRINTERS, AND LEXMARK MULTIFUNCTION LASER PRINTERS

### Lexmark International, Inc., Lexington, KY

This limited warranty applies to the United States and Canada. For customers outside the U.S., refer to the country-specific warranty information that came with your product.

This limited warranty applies to this product only if it was originally purchased for your use, and not for resale, from Lexmark or a Lexmark Remarketer, referred to in this statement as "Remarketer."

## Limited warranty

Lexmark warrants that this product:

—Is manufactured from new parts, or new and serviceable used parts, which perform like new parts

—Is, during normal use, free from defects in material and workmanship

If this product does not function as warranted during the warranty period, contact a Remarketer or Lexmark for repair or replacement (at Lexmark's option).

If this product is a feature or option, this statement applies only when that feature or option is used with the product for which it was intended. To obtain warranty service, you may be required to present the feature or option with the product.

If you transfer this product to another user, warranty service under the terms of this statement is available to that user for the remainder of the warranty period. You should transfer proof of original purchase and this statement to that user.

## Limited warranty service

The warranty period starts on the date of original purchase as shown on the purchase receipt and ends 12 months later provided that the warranty period for any supplies and for any maintenance items included with the printer shall end earlier if it, or its original contents, are substantially used up, depleted, or consumed. Fuser Units, Transfer/Transport Units, Paper Feed items, if any, and any other items for which a Maintenance Kit is available are substantially consumed when the printer displays a "Life Warning" or "Scheduled Maintenance" message for such item.

To obtain warranty service you may be required to present proof of original purchase. You may be required to deliver your product to the Remarketer or Lexmark, or ship it prepaid and suitably packaged to a Lexmark designated location. You are responsible for loss of, or damage to, a product in transit to the Remarketer or the Lexmark designated location.

When warranty service involves the exchange of a product or part, the item replaced becomes the property of the Remarketer or Lexmark. The replacement may be a new or repaired item.

The replacement item assumes the remaining warranty period of the original product.

Replacement is not available to you if the product you present for exchange is defaced, altered, in need of a repair not included in warranty service, damaged beyond repair, or if the product is not free of all legal obligations, restrictions, liens, and encumbrances.

As part of your warranty service and/or replacement, Lexmark may update the firmware in your printer to the latest version. Firmware updates may modify printer settings and cause counterfeit and/or unauthorized products, supplies, parts, materials (such as toners and inks), software, or interfaces to stop working. Authorized use of genuine Lexmark products will not be impacted.

Before you present this product for warranty service, remove all print cartridges, programs, data, and removable storage media (unless directed otherwise by Lexmark).

For further explanation of your warranty alternatives and the nearest Lexmark authorized servicer in your area contact Lexmark on the World Wide Web.

Remote technical support is provided for this product throughout its warranty period. For products no longer covered by a Lexmark warranty, technical support may not be available or only be available for a fee.

### Extent of limited warranty

Lexmark does not warrant uninterrupted or error-free operation of any product or the durability or longevity of prints produced by any product.

Warranty service does not include repair of failures caused by:

- Modification or unauthorized attachments
- Accidents, misuse, abuse or use inconsistent with Lexmark user's guides, manuals, instructions or guidance
- Unsuitable physical or operating environment
- Maintenance by anyone other than Lexmark or a Lexmark authorized servicer
- Operation of a product beyond the limit of its duty cycle
- Use of printing media outside of Lexmark specifications
- Refurbishment, repair, refilling or remanufacture by a third party of products, supplies or parts
- Products, supplies, parts, materials (such as toners and inks), software, or interfaces not furnished by Lexmark

**TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NEITHER LEXMARK NOR ITS THIRD PARTY SUPPLIERS OR REMARKETERS MAKE ANY OTHER WARRANTY OR CONDITION OF ANY KIND, WHETHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, WITH RESPECT TO THIS PRODUCT, AND SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIM THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, AND SATISFACTORY QUALITY. ANY WARRANTIES THAT MAY NOT BE DISCLAIMED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW ARE LIMITED IN DURATION TO THE WARRANTY PERIOD. NO WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, WILL APPLY AFTER THIS PERIOD. ALL INFORMATION, SPECIFICATIONS, PRICES, AND SERVICES ARE SUBJECT TO CHANGE AT ANY TIME WITHOUT NOTICE.**

### Limitation of liability

Your sole remedy under this limited warranty is set forth in this document. For any claim concerning performance or nonperformance of Lexmark or a Remarketer for this product under this limited warranty, you may recover actual damages up to the limit set forth in the following paragraph.

Lexmark's liability for actual damages from any cause whatsoever will be limited to the amount you paid for the product that caused the damages. This limitation of liability will not apply to claims by you for bodily injury or damage to real property or tangible personal property for which Lexmark is legally liable. **IN NO EVENT WILL LEXMARK BE LIABLE FOR ANY LOST PROFITS, LOST SAVINGS, INCIDENTAL DAMAGE, OR OTHER ECONOMIC OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES.** This is true even if you advise Lexmark

or a Remarketer of the possibility of such damages. Lexmark is not liable for any claim by you based on a third party claim.

This limitation of remedies also applies to claims against any Suppliers and Remarketers of Lexmark. Lexmark's and its Suppliers' and Remarketers' limitations of remedies are not cumulative. Such Suppliers and Remarketers are intended beneficiaries of this limitation.

Additional rights

Some states do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts, or do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so the limitations or exclusions contained above may not apply to you.

This limited warranty gives you specific legal rights. You may also have other rights that vary from state to state.

Specifications

Laser notice

The printer is certified in the U.S. to conform to the requirements of DHHS 21 CFR, Chapter I, Subchapter J for Class I (1) laser products, and elsewhere is certified as a Class 1 consumer laser product conforming to the requirements of IEC 60825-1:2014, EN 60825-1:2014+A11:2021, and EN 50689:2021.

Class I laser products are not considered to be hazardous. The laser system and printer are designed so there is never any human access to laser radiation above a Class I level during normal operation, user maintenance, or prescribed service conditions. The printer has a non-serviceable printhead assembly that contains a laser with the following specifications:

- Class: IIIb (3b) AlGaAs
- Nominal output power (milliwatts): 12
- Wavelength (nanometers): 770–800

Temperature information

|                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Operating temperature and relative humidity (RH) <sup>1</sup>     | 10 to 32.2°C (50 to 90°F) and 15 to 80% RH<br><br>15.6 to 32.2°C (60 to 90°F) and 8 to 80% RH<br><br>Maximum wet-bulb temperature <sup>2</sup> : 22.8°C (73°F)<br><br>Non-condensing environment |
| Printer / cartridge / imaging unit long-term storage <sup>2</sup> | 15.6 to 32.2°C (60 to 90°F) and 8 to 80% RH<br><br>Maximum wet-bulb temperature <sup>2</sup> : 22.8°C (73°F)                                                                                     |

|                                                                     |                            |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Printer / cartridge / imaging unit short-term shipping <sup>3</sup> | -40 to 40°C (-40 to 104°F) |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|

<sup>1</sup> In some cases, performance specifications (such as cartridge usage and first-page-out speed) must be measured at a standard office environment of approximately 22.2°C (72°F) and 45% RH.

<sup>2</sup> Supplies shelf life is approximately 2 years. This is based on storage in a standard office environment at 22°C (72°F) and 45% humidity.

<sup>3</sup> Wet-bulb temperature is determined by the air temperature and the relative humidity.

## Power requirements

The following nominal voltage ranges are supported in applicable countries or regions: 100–110 V / 50Hz, 110–127 V / 60Hz, and 220–240 V / 50Hz (not dual-voltage).

## Product power consumption

The following table documents the power consumption characteristics of the product.

**Note:** Some modes may not apply to your product.

| Mode       | Description                                                                           | Power consumption (Watts)                                                                                  |
|------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Printing   | The product is generating hard-copy output from electronic inputs.                    | One-sided: 518 (CX532, XC2335); 587 (CX635, XC2342)<br>Two-sided: 366 (CX532, XC2335); 402 (CX635, XC2342) |
| Copy       | The product is generating hard-copy output from hard-copy original documents.         | 549 (CX532, XC2335); 606 (CX635, XC2342)                                                                   |
| Scan       | The product is scanning hard-copy documents.                                          | 37.1                                                                                                       |
| Ready      | The product is waiting for a print job.                                               | 25.5 (CX532, XC2335); 29 (CX635, XC2342)                                                                   |
| Sleep Mode | The product is in a high-level energy-saving mode.                                    | 1.3                                                                                                        |
| Hibernate  | The product is in a low-level energy-saving mode.                                     | 0.2                                                                                                        |
| Off        | The product is plugged into an electrical outlet, but the power switch is turned off. | 0.2                                                                                                        |

The power consumption levels listed in the previous table represent time-averaged measurements. Instantaneous power draws may be substantially higher than the average. Values are subject to change. See [www.lexmark.com](http://www.lexmark.com) for current values.

## Sleep Mode

This product is designed with an energy-saving mode called **Sleep Mode**. The Sleep Mode saves energy by lowering power consumption during extended periods of inactivity. The Sleep Mode is automatically engaged after this product is not used for a specified period of time, called the **Sleep Mode Timeout**.

|                                                                   |    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Factory default Sleep Mode Timeout for this product (in minutes): | 15 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|----|

By using the configuration menus, the Sleep Mode Timeout can be modified between 1 minute and 120 minutes, or between 1 minute and 114 minutes, depending on the printer model. If the printer speed is less than or equal to 30 pages per minute, then you can set the timeout only up to 60 minutes or 54 minutes, depending on the printer model. Setting the Sleep Mode Timeout to a low value reduces energy consumption, but may increase the response time of the product. Setting the Sleep Mode Timeout to a high value maintains a fast response, but uses more energy.

Some models support a **Deep Sleep Mode**, which further reduces power consumption after longer periods of inactivity.

## Hibernate Mode

This product is designed with an ultra-low power operating mode called **Hibernate mode**. When operating in Hibernate Mode, all other systems and devices are powered down safely.

The Hibernate mode can be entered in any of the following methods:

- Using the Hibernate Timeout
- Using the Schedule Power modes

|                                                                                |        |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| Factory default Hibernate Timeout for this product in all countries or regions | 3 days |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|

The amount of time the printer waits after a job is printed before it enters Hibernate mode can be modified between one hour and one month.

### Notes on EPEAT-registered imaging equipment products:

- Standby power level occurs in Hibernate or Off mode.
- The product shall automatically power down to a standby power level of  $\leq 1$  W. The auto standby function (Hibernate or Off) shall be enabled at product shipment.

## Off mode

If this product has an off mode which still consumes a small amount of power, then to completely stop product power consumption, disconnect the power supply cord from the electrical outlet.



## Total energy usage

It is sometimes helpful to estimate the total product energy usage. Since power consumption claims are provided in power units of Watts, the power consumption should be multiplied by the time the product spends in each mode in order to calculate energy usage. The total product energy usage is the sum of each mode's energy usage.

## Environmental and sustainability notices

### Noise emission levels

The following measurements were made in accordance with ISO 7779 and reported in conformance with ISO 9296.

**Note:** Some modes may not apply to your product.

| 1-meter average sound pressure, dBA |                                                                                                        |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Printing                            | One-sided: 50 (CX532, XC2335); 53 (CX635, XC2342)<br>Two-sided: 52 (CX532, XC2335); 54 (CX635, XC2342) |
| Scanning                            | 51                                                                                                     |
| Copying                             | 54 (CX532, XC2335); 55 (CX635, XC2342)                                                                 |
| Ready                               | 14                                                                                                     |

Values are subject to change. See [www.lexmark.com](http://www.lexmark.com) for current values.

## Waste from Electrical and Electronic Equipment (WEEE) directive



The WEEE logo signifies specific recycling programs and procedures for electronic products in countries of the European Union. We encourage the recycling of our products. If you have further questions about recycling options, visit the Lexmark Web site at [www.lexmark.com](http://www.lexmark.com) for your local sales office phone number.



## India E-Waste notice



This product including components, consumables, parts and spares complies with the “India E-Waste Rules” and prohibits use of lead, mercury, hexavalent chromium, polybrominated biphenyls or polybrominated diphenyl ethers in concentrations exceeding 0.1% by weight and 0.01% by weight for cadmium, except for the exemption set in the Rule.

## Lithium-ion rechargeable battery



This product may contain a coin-cell, lithium-ion rechargeable battery, which should only be removed by a trained technician. Crossed-out wheeled bin means the product should not be discarded as unsorted waste but must be sent to separate collection facilities for recovery and recycling. In the event the battery is removed, do not dispose of the battery in your household waste. There may be separate collection systems for batteries in your local community, such as a battery-recycling drop-off location. The separate collection of waste batteries assures appropriate treatment of waste including reuse and recycling and prevents any potential negative effects on human health and environment. Please responsibly dispose of the batteries.

## Regulation (EU) 2023/1542

This product may contain a coin-cell lithium rechargeable battery. This battery complies with Regulation (EU) 2023/1542. Compliance is indicated by the CE marking:



This product may contain one of the following coin-cell batteries:

- Battery identification: Seiko Model Number MS621FE  
Manufacturer: Seiko Instruments Inc.  
  
Manufacturer address: 8, Nakase 1-chome, Mihama-ku, Chiba-shi, Chiba 261-8507, Japan
- Battery identification: Panasonic Model Number ML621  
Manufacturer: Panasonic Energy Co., Ltd.  
  
Manufacturer address: 1-1 Matsushita-cho, Moriguchi City, Osaka 570-8511, Japan
- Battery identification: FDK Model Number ML621  
Manufacturer: FDK Corporation  
  
Manufacturer address: Shibaura Crystal Shinagawa, 1-6-41 Konan, Minato-ku, Tokyo 108-8212 Japan

Environmental labeling for packaging

Per Commission Regulation Decision 97/129/EC Legislative Decree 152/2006, the product packaging may contain one or more of the following symbols.

|  |                                                                                 |
|--|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | This symbol indicates that the packaging may contain corrugated fiberboard.     |
|  | This symbol indicates that the packaging may contain non-corrugated fiberboard. |



This symbol indicates that the packaging may contain paper.

For more information, go to [www.lexmark.com/recycle](http://www.lexmark.com/recycle), and then choose your country or region. Information on available packaging recycling programs is included with the information on product recycling.

## Product disposal

Do not dispose of the printer or supplies in the same manner as normal household waste. Consult your local authorities for disposal and recycling options.

## Returning Lexmark cartridges for reuse or recycling

The Lexmark Cartridge Collection Program allows you to return used cartridges for free to Lexmark for reuse or recycling. One hundred percent of the empty cartridges returned to Lexmark are either reused or demanufactured for recycling. The boxes used to return the cartridges are also recycled.

To return Lexmark cartridges for reuse or recycling, do the following:

1. Go to [www.lexmark.com/recycle](http://www.lexmark.com/recycle).
2. Select your country or region.
3. Select **Lexmark Cartridge Collection Program**.
4. Follow the instructions on the screen.

## ENERGY STAR

Any Lexmark product bearing the ENERGY STAR® emblem on the product or on a start-up screen is certified to comply with Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) ENERGY STAR requirements as of the date of manufacture.



## **Notices for fax products**

### **Regulatory notices for telecommunication terminal equipment**

This section contains regulatory information pertaining to products that contain the analog facsimile card:

Lexmark Regulatory Type/Model Number:  
LEX-M03-002

### **Notice to users of the US telephone network: FCC requirements**

This equipment complies with Part 68 of the FCC rules and the requirements adopted by the Administrative Council for Terminal Attachments (ACTA). On the back of this equipment is a label that contains, among other information, a product identifier in the format US:AAAEQ##TXXXX. If requested, this number must be provided to your telephone company.

This equipment uses the RJ-11C Universal Service Order Code (USOC) jack. A plug and jack used to connect this equipment to the premises' wiring and telephone network must comply with the applicable FCC Part 68 rules and requirements adopted by the ACTA. Use a compliant telephone cord (RJ-11) that is 26 AWG or larger when connecting this product to the public switched telephone network. See your setup documentation for more information.

The Ringer Equivalence Number (REN) is used to determine the number of devices that may be connected to a telephone line. Excessive RENs on a telephone line may result in the devices not ringing in response to an incoming call. In most but not all areas, the sum of RENs should not exceed five (5.0). To be certain of the number of devices that may be connected to a line, as determined by the total RENs, contact your local telephone company. For products approved after July 23, 2001, the REN for this product is part of the product identifier that has the format US:AAAEQ##TXXXX. The digits represented by ## are the REN without a decimal point (for example, 03 is a REN of 0.3). For earlier products, the REN is shown separately on the label.

If this equipment causes harm to the telephone network, the telephone company will notify you in advance that temporary discontinuance of service may be required. If advance notice is not practical, the telephone company will notify the customer as soon as possible. You will also be advised of your right to file a complaint with the FCC.

The telephone company may make changes in its facilities, equipment, operations or procedures that could affect the operation of this equipment. If this happens, the telephone company will provide advance notice in order for you to make necessary modifications to maintain uninterrupted service.

If you experience trouble with this equipment, for repair or warranty information, contact Lexmark International, Inc. at [www.lexmark.com](http://www.lexmark.com) or your Lexmark representative. If the equipment is causing harm to the telephone network, the telephone company may request that you disconnect the equipment until the problem is resolved.

This equipment contains no user serviceable parts. For repair and warranty information, contact Lexmark International, Inc. See the previous paragraph for contact information. Connection to party line service is subject to state tariffs. Contact the state public utility commission, public service commission, or corporation commission for information.

If your home has specially wired alarm equipment connected to the telephone line, ensure the installation of this equipment does not disable your alarm equipment. If you have questions about what will disable alarm equipment, consult your telephone company or a qualified installer.

The Telephone Consumer Protection Act of 1991 makes it unlawful for any person to use a computer or other electronic device, including fax machines, to send any message unless said message clearly contains in a margin at the top or bottom of each transmitted page or

on the first page of the transmission, the date and time it is sent and an identification of the business or other entity, or other individual sending the message, and the telephone number of the sending machine or such business, other entity, or individual. (The telephone number provided may not be a 900 number or any other number for which charges exceed local or long-distance transmission charges.)  
See your user documentation in order to program this information into your fax machine.

## Notice to users of the Canadian telephone network

This product meets the applicable Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada technical specifications.

The Ringer Equivalence Number (REN) indicates the maximum number of devices allowed to be connected to a telephone interface. The termination of an interface may consist of any combination of devices subject only to the requirement that the sum of the RENs of all the devices not exceed five. The REN is located on the product label.  
This equipment uses CA11A telephone jacks.

## Avis réservé aux utilisateurs du réseau téléphonique du Canada

Ce produit est conforme aux spécifications techniques d'Innovation, Sciences et Développement économique Canada.

Le numéro REN (ringer equivalence number : numéro d'équivalence de sonnerie) indique le nombre maximum d'appareils pouvant être connectés à l'interface téléphonique. En bout de ligne, le nombre d'appareils qui peuvent être connectés n'est pas directement limité, mais la somme des REN de ces appareils ne doit pas dépasser cinq. Le numéro REN est indiqué sur l'étiquette produit.

Cet équipement utilise des prises de téléphone CA11A.

## Notice to users of the New Zealand telephone network

The following are special conditions for the Facsimile User Instructions. The grant of a telepermit for any item of terminal equipment indicates only that Spark has accepted that the item complies with minimum conditions for connection to its network. It indicates no endorsement of the product by Spark, nor does it provide any sort of warranty. Above all, it provides no assurance that any item will work correctly in all respects with another item of telepermitted equipment of a different make or model, nor does it imply that any product is compatible with all of Spark's network services.

This equipment shall not be set up to make automatic calls to the Spark "111" Emergency Service.

This equipment may not provide for the effective hand-over of a call to another device connected to the same line.

This equipment should not be used under any circumstances that may constitute a nuisance to other Spark customers.

This equipment is not capable, under all operating conditions, of correct operation at the higher speeds for which it is designed. Spark will accept no responsibility should difficulties arise in such circumstances.

The decadic (or pulse) dialing on this device is unsuitable for use on the Spark network in New Zealand.

For correct operation, the total of all the Ringer Equivalence Numbers (RENs) of all parallel devices connected to the same telephone line may not exceed 5. The REN of this device is located on the label.

This device uses an RJ-11C modular connector. Contact your point of purchase if a BT adapter is required. The Lexmark part number is 80D1873.

Some parameters required for compliance with Spark's telepermit requirements are dependent on the equipment associated with this device. The associated equipment shall be set to operate within the following limits for compliance to Spark's specifications:

- There shall be no more than 10 call attempts to the same number within any 30 minute period for any single manual call initiation, and
- The equipment shall go on-hook for a period of not less than 30 seconds between the end of one attempt and the beginning of the next call attempt.
- The equipment shall be set to ensure that automatic calls to different numbers are spaced such that there is not less than 5 seconds between the end of one call attempt and the beginning of another.

## Japanese telecom notice

The installed optional modem is in compliance with Japanese Telecommunication Law and has been Certified by JATE, with the following Certification Number:  
A18-0046001 or A11-0160001JP

|                                                                                    |                              |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
|  | Lexmark International, Inc.  |
|                                                                                    | LEX-M03-002                  |
|                                                                                    | A18-0046001 or A11-0160001JP |

## Using this product in Switzerland

This product requires a Swiss billing tone filter (Lexmark part number 80D1877) to be installed on any line which receives metering pulses in Switzerland.

## Utilisation de ce produit en Suisse

Cet appareil nécessite l'utilisation d'un filtre de tonalité de facturation suisse (n° de référence Lexmark : 80D1877) devant être installé sur toute ligne recevant des impulsions de comptage en Suisse.

## Verwendung dieses Produkts in der Schweiz

Für dieses Produkt muss ein schweizerischer Billing Tone Filter zur Zählzeichenübertragung (Lexmark Teilenummer 80D1877) für jede Leitung installiert werden, über die in der Schweiz Zeitsteuertakte übertragen werden.

### Uso del prodotto in Svizzera

Questo prodotto richiede un filtro toni Billing svizzero, (codice Lexmark 80D1877) da installare su tutte le linee che ricevono impulsi remoti in Svizzera.

## Notices for wireless products

### Regulatory notices for wireless products

This section contains regulatory information that applies only to wireless models. If in doubt as to whether your model is a wireless model, then see the "Wireless support" section or go to <http://support.lexmark.com>.

### Modular component notice

Wireless models contain one of the following modular components:  
Lexmark MarkNet N8450 / AzureWave AW-CM467-SUR; FCC ID:TLZ-CM467; IC:6100A-CM467  
To determine which modular components are installed in your particular product, refer to the labeling on your actual product.

### Exposure to radio frequency radiation

The radiated output power of this device is far below the radio frequency exposure limits of the FCC and other regulatory agencies. A minimum separation of 20 cm (8 inches) must be maintained between the antenna and any persons for this device to satisfy the RF exposure requirements of the FCC and other regulatory agencies.

### Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada

This device complies with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada license-exempt RSS standards. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

### Innovation, Sciences et Développement économique Canada

Cet appareil est conforme aux normes RSS exemptes de licence d'Innovation, Sciences et Développement économique Canada. Son fonctionnement est soumis aux deux conditions suivantes : (1) cet appareil ne doit pas causer d'interférences et (2) il doit accepter toutes les interférences, y compris les celles qui peuvent entraîner un fonctionnement indésirable.



## European Community (EC) directives conformity

This product is in conformity with the protection requirements of EC Council directive 2014/53/EU on the approximation and harmonization of the laws of the Member States relating to radio equipment.

The manufacturer of this product is: Lexmark International, Inc., 740 West New Circle Road, Lexington, KY, 40550 USA. The EEA/EU authorized representative is: Lexmark International Technology Hungária Kft., 8 Lechner Ödön fasor, Millennium Tower III, 1095 Budapest HUNGARY. Email: EU-Product-Safety@lexmark.com. The EEA/EU Importer is: Lexmark International Technology S.à.r.l. 20, Route de Pré-Bois, ICC Building, Bloc A, CH-1215 Genève, Switzerland. A declaration of conformity to the requirements of the Directives is available upon request from the Authorized Representative or may be obtained at [www.lexmark.com/en\\_us/about/regulatory-compliance/european-union-declaration-of-conformity.html](http://www.lexmark.com/en_us/about/regulatory-compliance/european-union-declaration-of-conformity.html).

Compliance is indicated by the CE marking:



## Restrictions

This radio equipment is restricted to indoor use only. Outdoor use is prohibited. This restriction applies to all the countries listed in the table below:

|    |    |    |    |    |         |    |    |    |
|----|----|----|----|----|---------|----|----|----|
|    |    |    |    |    |         |    |    |    |
| AT | BE | BG | CH | CY | CZ      | DE | DK | EE |
| EL | ES | FI | FR | HR | HU      | IE | IS | IT |
| LI | LT | LU | LV | MT | NL      | NO | PL | PT |
| RO | SE | SI | SK | TR | UK (NI) |    |    |    |

## EU and other countries statement of radio transmitter operational frequency bands and maximum RF power

This radio product transmits in either the 2.4GHz (2.412–2.472GHz in the EU) or 5GHz (5.15–5.35, 5.47–5.725GHz in the EU) bands. The maximum transmitter EIRP power output, including antenna gain, is ≤ 20dBm for both bands.

## United Kingdom (UK) conformity

This product is in conformity with the protection requirements of the Radio Equipment Regulations 2017.

The manufacturer of this product is: Lexmark International, Inc., 740 West New Circle Road, Lexington, KY, 40550 USA. The UK Importer is: Lexmark International Ltd, Building



Q1 Quantum Business Park, 60 Norden Road, Maidenhead, Berkshire, United Kingdom SL6 4AY. A declaration of conformity is available upon request from the UK Importer or may be obtained at [www.lexmark.com/en\\_us/about/regulatory-compliance/uk-declaration-of-conformity.html](http://www.lexmark.com/en_us/about/regulatory-compliance/uk-declaration-of-conformity.html).

Compliance is indicated by the UKCA marking:



## Restrictions or requirements in the UK

This radio equipment is restricted to indoor use only. Outdoor use is prohibited.

## UK statement of radio transmitter operational frequency bands and maximum RF power

This radio product transmits in either the 2.4GHz (2.412–2.472 GHz in the UK) or 5GHz (5.15–5.35, 5.47–5.725 in the UK) bands. The maximum transmitter EIRP power output, including antenna gain, is  $\leq 20\text{dBm}$  for both bands.

## Notice to users in Thailand

ประกาศถึงผู้ใช้ในประเทศไทย

This radiocommunication equipment has the electromagnetic field strength in compliance with the Safety Standard for the Use of Radiocommunication Equipment on Human Health announced by the National Telecommunications Commission.

เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมนี้มีระดับการแผ่คลื่นแม่เหล็กไฟฟ้าสอดคล้องตามมาตรฐานความปลอดภัยต่อสุขภาพของมนุษย์จากการใช้เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมที่คณะกรรมการกิจการโทรคมนาคมแห่งชาติประกาศกำหนด

  
**natcom.**

เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมนี้ ได้รับยกเว้น ไม่ต้องได้รับใบอนุญาตให้มี ใช้ซึ่งเครื่องวิทยุคมนาคม หรือตั้งสถานีวิทยุคมนาคมตามประกาศ กสทช. เรื่อง เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคม และสถานีวิทยุคมนาคมที่ได้รับยกเว้นไม่ต้องได้รับใบอนุญาตวิทยุคมนาคมตามพระราชบัญญัติวิทยุคมนาคม พ.ศ. 2498



**natcom.** | โทรคมนาคม  
กำกับดูแลเพื่อประชาชน  
Call Center 1200 (InSW5)

## **| Class A device notices**

### **Model-specific information**

The following information applies only to the CX635 (7531-686, 7531-676) and XC2342 (7531-686) printer models.

### **Federal Communications Commission (FCC) compliance information statement**

This product has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

The FCC Class A limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference, in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.

The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio or television interference caused by using other than recommended cables or by unauthorized changes or modifications to this equipment. Unauthorized changes or modifications could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

**Note:** To assure compliance with FCC regulations on electromagnetic interference for a Class A computing device, use a properly shielded and grounded cable such as Lexmark part number 1021231 for parallel attach or 1021294 for USB attach. Use of a substitute cable not properly shielded and grounded may result in a violation of FCC regulations.

Any questions regarding this compliance information statement should be directed to:  
Director of Lexmark Technology & Services

Lexmark International, Inc.

740 West New Circle Road

Lexington, KY 40550

Telephone: (859) 232-2000

Email: [regulatory@lexmark.com](mailto:regulatory@lexmark.com)

### **Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada compliance statement**

This Class A digital apparatus meets all requirements of the Canadian Interference-Causing Equipment Standard ICES-003.

## Avis de conformité aux normes de l'Innovation, Sciences et Développement économique Canada

Cet appareil numérique de classe A est conforme aux exigences de la norme canadienne relative aux équipements pouvant causer des interférences NMB-003.

### European Community (EC) directives conformity

This product is in conformity with the protection requirements of EC Council directives 2014/30/EU, 2014/35/EU, and 2011/65/EU as amended by (EU) 2015/863 on the approximation and harmonization of the laws of the Member States relating to electromagnetic compatibility, safety of electrical equipment designed for use within certain voltage limits, and on the restrictions of use of certain hazardous substances in electrical and electronic equipment.

The manufacturer of this product is: Lexmark International, Inc., 740 West New Circle Road, Lexington, KY, 40550 USA. The EEA/EU authorized representative is: Lexmark International Technology Hungária Kft., 8 Lechner Ödön fasor, Millennium Tower III, 1095 Budapest HUNGARY. Email: EU-Product-Safety@lexmark.com. The EEA/EU Importer is: Lexmark International Technology S.à.r.l. 20, Route de Pré-Bois, ICC Building, Bloc A, CH-1215 Genève, Switzerland. A declaration of conformity to the requirements of the Directives is available upon request from the Authorized Representative or may be obtained at [www.lexmark.com/en\\_us/about/regulatory-compliance/european-union-declaration-of-conformity.html](http://www.lexmark.com/en_us/about/regulatory-compliance/european-union-declaration-of-conformity.html).

This product satisfies the Class A limits of EN 55032 and safety requirements of EN 62368-1.

### United Kingdom (UK) conformity

This product is in conformity with the protection requirements of the Electromagnetic Compatibility Regulations 2016, the Electrical Equipment (Safety) Regulations 2016, and the Restriction of the Use of Certain Hazardous Substances in Electrical and Electronic Equipment Regulations 2012.

The manufacturer of this product is: Lexmark International, Inc., 740 West New Circle Road, Lexington, KY, 40550 USA. The UK Importer is: Lexmark International Ltd, Building Q1 Quantum Business Park, 60 Norden Road, Maidenhead, Berkshire, United Kingdom SL6 4AY. A declaration of conformity is available upon request from the UK Importer or may be obtained at [www.lexmark.com/en\\_us/about/regulatory-compliance/uk-declaration-of-conformity.html](http://www.lexmark.com/en_us/about/regulatory-compliance/uk-declaration-of-conformity.html).

This product satisfies the Class A limits of BS EN 55032 and safety requirements of BS EN 62368-1.

### Radio interference notice

#### Warning

This is a product that complies with the emission requirements of EN 55032 Class A limits and immunity requirements of EN 55035. This product is not intended to be used in residential/domestic environments.

This is a Class A product. In a domestic environment, this product may cause radio interference, in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures.

## **| Class B device notices**

### **Multiple model information**

The following information applies to the CX532 (7531-286, 7531-276) and XC2335 (7531-289) printer models.

### **Federal Communications Commission (FCC) compliance information statement**

This product has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

The FCC Class B limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult your point of purchase or service representative for additional suggestions.

The manufacturer is not responsible for radio or television interference caused by using other than recommended cables or by unauthorized changes or modifications to this equipment. Unauthorized changes or modifications could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

#### **Notes**

To assure compliance with FCC regulations on electromagnetic interference for a Class B computing device, use a properly shielded and grounded cable such as Lexmark part number 1021231 for parallel attach or 1021294 for USB attach. Use of a substitute cable not properly shielded and grounded may result in a violation of FCC regulations.

Any questions regarding this compliance information statement should be directed to:  
Director of Lexmark Technology & Services

Lexmark International, Inc.

740 West New Circle Road

Lexington, KY 40550

Telephone: (859) 232-2000

Email: [regulatory@lexmark.com](mailto:regulatory@lexmark.com)

## **Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada compliance statement**

This Class B digital apparatus meets all requirements of the Canadian Interference-Causing Equipment Standard ICES-003.

## **Avis de conformité aux normes de l'Innovation, Sciences et Développement économique Canada**

Cet appareil numérique de classe B est conforme aux exigences de la norme canadienne relative aux équipements pouvant causer des interférences NMB-003.

## **European Community (EC) directives conformity**

This product is in conformity with the protection requirements of EC Council directives 2014/30/EU, 2014/35/EU, 2009/125/EC, and 2011/65/EU as amended by (EU) 2015/863 on the approximation and harmonization of the laws of the Member States relating to electromagnetic compatibility, safety of electrical equipment designed for use within certain voltage limits, the ecodesign of energy-related products, and on the restrictions of use of certain hazardous substances in electrical and electronic equipment.

The manufacturer of this product is: Lexmark International, Inc., 740 West New Circle Road, Lexington, KY, 40550 USA. The EEA/EU authorized representative is: Lexmark International Technology Hungária Kft., 8 Lechner Ödön fasor, Millennium Tower III, 1095 Budapest HUNGARY. Email: [EU-Product-Safety@lexmark.com](mailto:EU-Product-Safety@lexmark.com). The EEA/EU Importer is: Lexmark International Technology S.à.r.l. 20, Route de Pré-Bois, ICC Building, Bloc A, CH-1215 Genève, Switzerland. A declaration of conformity to the requirements of the Directives is available upon request from the Authorized Representative or may be obtained at [www.lexmark.com/en\\_us/about/regulatory-compliance/european-union-declaration-of-conformity.html](http://www.lexmark.com/en_us/about/regulatory-compliance/european-union-declaration-of-conformity.html).

This product satisfies the Class B limits of EN 55032 and safety requirements of EN 62368-1.

## **United Kingdom (UK) conformity**

This product is in conformity with the protection requirements of the Electromagnetic Compatibility Regulations 2016, the Electrical Equipment (Safety) Regulations 2016, the Ecodesign for Energy-Related Products and Energy Information (Amendment) (EU Exit) Regulations 2019, and the Restriction of the Use of Certain Hazardous Substances in Electrical and Electronic Equipment Regulations 2012.

The manufacturer of this product is: Lexmark International, Inc., 740 West New Circle Road, Lexington, KY, 40550 USA. The UK Importer is: Lexmark International Ltd, Building Q1 Quantum Business Park, 60 Norden Road, Maidenhead, Berkshire, United Kingdom SL6 4AY. A declaration of conformity is available upon request from the UK Importer or may be obtained at [www.lexmark.com/en\\_us/about/regulatory-compliance/uk-declaration-of-conformity.html](http://www.lexmark.com/en_us/about/regulatory-compliance/uk-declaration-of-conformity.html).

This product satisfies the Class B limits of BS EN 55032 and safety requirements of BS EN 62368-1.

## Commission Regulation (EU) 2023/826

As part of this regulation, manufacturers are required to post information about the Off modes and Network Standby (“sleep”) modes of products, including the available network connections, the power consumption in sleep mode for each connection and the default timeout to sleep mode.

To view Lexmark's declarations of product sleep modes, go to [https://www.lexmark.com/en\\_us/legal/regulatory-compliance/EU\\_2023\\_826.html](https://www.lexmark.com/en_us/legal/regulatory-compliance/EU_2023_826.html).

## Other regulatory notices

### Static sensitivity notice



This symbol identifies static-sensitive parts. Do not touch the areas near these symbols without first touching a metal surface in an area away from the symbol.

To prevent damage from electrostatic discharge when performing maintenance tasks such as clearing paper jams or replacing supplies, touch any exposed metal frame of the printer before accessing or touching interior areas of the printer even if the symbol is not present.

### Applicability of Regulation (EU) 2019/2015 and (EU) 2019/2020

Per Commission Regulation (EU) 2019/2015 and (EU) 2019/2020, the light source contained within this product or its component is intended to be used for Image Capture or Image Projection only, and is not intended for use in other applications.

### The UK Product Security and Telecommunications Infrastructure Act 2022 (PSTI Act)—Summary Statement of Compliance

Lexmark International Inc., 740 West New Circle Road, Lexington, KY 40550 USA, declares that this product complies with the applicable security requirements in Schedule 1 of The Product Security and Telecommunications Infrastructure (Security Requirements for Relevant Connectable Products) Regulations 2023. The defined support period for this product can be found at the following web page: <https://www.lexmark.com/firmware-eos>. A copy of the Statement of Compliance is available for download at the following web page: [https://www.lexmark.com/en\\_us/about/regulatory-compliance/all-regulatory-docs.html](https://www.lexmark.com/en_us/about/regulatory-compliance/all-regulatory-docs.html).

## Thailand NBTC technical standards conformity statement

คำประกาศเรื่องการเป็นไปตามมาตรฐานทางเทคนิคของ กสทช. ประเทศไทย

This telecommunication equipment conforms to the technical standards or requirements of NBTC.

เครื่องโทรคมนาคมและอุปกรณ์นี้มีความสอดคล้องตามมาตรฐานหรือข้อกำหนดทางเทคนิคของ กสทช.

## **User's Guide**